green

CHASE & STUART'S CLASSICAL SERIES.

A

LATIN GRAMMAR:

M. Kellogg

BY

THOMAS CHASE, LTT.D., LL.D.,
PRESIDENT OF HAVERFORD COLLEGE.

PHILADELPHIA:
ELDREDGE & BROTHER,
No. 17 North Seventh Street.
1882.

CHASE & STUART'S CLASSICAL SERIES

—COMPRISES—

A FIRST LATIN BOOK,

A LATIN GRAMMAR,

A LATIN READER,

And Editions of all the Latin Authors usually read in Schools.

J. FAGAN & SON,
ELECTROTYPERS, PHILAD'A.

KEYSTONE PRESS OF Wm. J. DORNAN, PHILADELPHIA

PREFACE

THE author of this treatise has endeavored to state clearly and directly those facts of Grammar which a student of Latin most needs to know, and thus to conduct him by the surest path to a mastery of the language.. The discoveries of recent philological science have not been neglected, but care has been taken not to overlay and obscure the facts which form the proper subject of the book with a mass of matter belonging only to a treatise on Comparative Philology.

Unnecessary definitions have been avoided; the paradigms are set forth clearly, in distinct type; the rules of Syntax have been stated as simply as possible.

In Prosody, the views of the new school have been to a great extent adopted. One word of warning, however, is due, that the theory of irrational times should not be pressed so far as to destroy the variety which the introduction of different feet produced, in measures which would otherwise be monotonous. Horace says of the iambic trimeter,

> "Tardior ut paulo graviorque veniret ad aures,
> Spondeos stabiles in jura paterna recepit."

Perhaps the greatest merit of recent metrists is their recognition of the value of pauses, and of the fact that a single syllable by prolongation may stand for a whole foot.

No work on Grammar could be meritorious or complete, whose author was not greatly indebted to the labors of his predecessors. It gives me pleasure to acknowledge my obligation to the treatises of the great grammarians of Germany, and to Key, Kennedy, and Roby among the English.

Finally, this book is committed, not without confidence, to the judgment of the accomplished teachers of our land, and of the intelligent students whose happiness it will be to learn the great tongue of Rome under their guidance.

T. C.



CONTENTS

ORTHOGRAPHY.

ETYMOLOGY.

SYNTAX.

PROSODY.

APPENDIX.

LATIN GRAMMAR.

THE ALPHABET.

1. THE Latin Alphabet now in use has the same letters as the English, except that it has no W.

1. I and J were originally represented by one character, I, as were also U and V by V.

2. X and Y are found only in words derived from the Greek.

3. K is used chiefly in abbreviations, or as the initial letter of a few words, as *Kalendae*, *Karthago*.

4. Q always blends with U (V).

5. The letters have two forms: the **capital**, which alone was used in ancient times; and the **small**.

VOWELS AND CONSONANTS.

2. The vowels, *sounding by themselves*, are A, E, I, O, U, Y. The remaining letters are called consonants, as *sounding with* vowels.

1. The diphthongs are AE (Æ), OE (Œ), AU, EI, EU, and UI. The first three occur the most frequently.

2. AI, OI, and OU are found as diphthongs in early Latin, and YI in some Greek words (as Harpyia).

3. When two vowels meet, but are not to be taken as a diphthong, the mark of **diærĕsis** (..) is sometimes placed over the second; as, **poëta**, pronounced **po-ē-ta.**

4. The consonants are divided (as in the following table) into *labials*, *linguals* (or *lingual-dentals*), and *palatals* (or *gutturals*), according as they

are spoken principally with the lip, tongue, or palate; and into *surds* (or *hard*), *sonants* (or *soft*), and *nasal*, according to the mode of utterance.

	MUTES.		NASALS.
	Surd.	*Sonant.*	
LABIALS,	P	B	M
LINGUALS,	T	D	N
PALATALS,	C, K, Q	G	N

5. The surds and sonants in the above table are called *mutes;* L, M, N, and R are called *liquids;* F, (PH,) (TH,) H, S, and Z are called *fricatives* (or *spirants*); S and Z, *sibilants;* H, an *aspirate;* J, R, L, and V, *semi-vowels;* X (CS) and Z (DS), *double consonants.*

PRONUNCIATION.

3. By most nations Latin is pronounced substantially as words so spelled would be pronounced in the language of the nation itself; in America, however, at least three different methods are found:

I. *THE PROBABLE ANCIENT OR ROMAN METHOD,*

which attempts to give the pronunciation in use in the best ages of the living language. In it

a *long* is pronounced as *a* in *father*, **a** *short* with the *same* sound *shorter*, or as the *a* in *dogma;*
e *long* as *e* in *they;* **e** *short* as *e* in *set;*
i *long* as *i* in *machine;* **i** *short* as *i* in *sit;*
o *long* as *o* in *tone;* **o** *short* as *o* in *domestic;*
u *long* as *u* in *rude* (i. e., as *oo* in *too*); **u** *short* as *oo* in *boot;*
y like the French *u*, with the proper distinction as long or short;
ae and **ai** like *ai* in *aisle;*
au like *ow* in *owl;*
oe and **oi** nearly like *oi* in *spoil;*
ei as *ei* in *eight;*
eu like *ĕh-oo* rapidly spoken;
ui like the English word *we;*
j (i consonans) like *y* in *year*, but stronger;

v (u consonans) nearly like *w*, or more exactly like *ou* in the French word *oui;*
c always hard, as in *can;*
g always hard, as in *get;*
r should be trilled;
s always hard, as in *sin*, and never like *z* or *sh;*
t always hard, like *t* in *tin;*
x always hard, as in *axe;*
z nearly like *s* (or like *dz*);
gu and **su**, when making one syllable with the following vowel, like *gw, sw*, as in *lingua, suasor;*
qu as *qu* in English; before *u* like *k;*
bs like *ps;*
bt like *pt;*
ch like *k* followed by *h;*
i for *ji* in the compounds of *jacio* (as *eicit, reicit*), like *yi* (thus, *ē-yĭcit, rē-yĭcit*).

Letters not named in this table are sounded as in English.

1. In the imperial period AE acquired the sound of long E (*i. e.*, that of *e* in *they*).

2. If students find any difficulty in giving to Y the sound of the French *u*, it may be pronounced like I (*i. e.*, where long, as in *machine;* short, as in *sit*).

3. In some schools which use the Roman pronunciation Latin V is pronounced as in English.

II. *THE ENGLISH METHOD*,

in which words are spoken in accordance with the ordinary laws of regular English pronunciation, with a few special rules: viz., **es** at the end of a word is pronounced like the English word *ease;* **os** at the end of plural cases like *ose* in *dose;* **a** at the end of a word like the final *a* in *America* (or like *short a* in the Roman method); **ch** always like **k**, as in *Magna Charta* (kar-tăh); **ti** when followed by a vowel like **sh**, if the accent is on the preceding syllable, as *rátio*, pr. *rá-shĭ-o;* but the hard sound is retained (1) after *s, t*, and *x*, as in *justior*,

Attius, Sextius; (2) when the accent is on the *i*, as in *totíus;* (3) in the antique form of the infinitive passive of verbs, as *flectier;* and (4) in Greek words.

III. *THE CONTINENTAL METHOD*,

(inexactly so called), in which, in its most consistent form, the vowels are pronounced as in Italian (substantially as in the ancient method), and the consonants as in English (except that, immediately succeeding the accent, and before *i* followed by another vowel, **c** and **s** are sounded like *s* pure, and **t** as in *tin*, and not like *sh*).

4. Whatever system of pronunciation is adopted, proper names, in translating into English, should always take the English sound. Latin phrases used in ordinary speech, as **sine die, viva voce**, should also be pronounced in the English method.

Syllables.

5. In every Latin word there are as many **syllables** as there are separate vowels and diphthongs.

1. In printing and writing Latin, and in the Roman pronunciation, the following rules are observed in the **division of syllables**:

1. A single consonant between two vowels is joined to the second: as, **rŏ-sa**, *a rose*.

2. If several consonants come between two vowels, as many of them as can begin a word in Greek or Latin are joined to the latter: as, **pa-tris, a-cris, i-gnis, o-mnis, pun-ctus, pro-pter, po-sco, i-ste, ar-tus, sal-tus, men-sa.**

3. Evident and uncontracted compounds are divided into their component parts: as, **post-ea, res-publica**; but we write **vae-neo, ma-gnanimus.**

4. In the English method of pronunciation, English analogy is followed in the division of syllables.

Quantity.

6. **The Quantity** of syllables is short (˘), long (¯), or common (⏓, by preference long; ⏒, by preference short).

1. A syllable may be (1) short or long by nature: **ămās**; (2) short by nature, but long by position: **vīndēx**; (3) short by nature, but doubtful by position: **quădruplo.**

7. *GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY.*

1. When a short vowel stands before two or more consonants, or a double consonant, or the letter **j**, the syllable is counted *long by position.*

Exc. 1. A vowel naturally short before a **mute** followed by **l** or **r** is *common;* that is, in verse it may be either long or short.

Exc. 2. In the compounds of **jŭgŭm**, the vowel before J is short.

Exc. 3. H is regarded only as a breathing.

2. Diphthongs and contracted syllables are long.

3. One vowel before another vowel, or before **h**, is short.

4. Derivative and compound words follow the quantity of their primitives.

8. *RULES FOR FINAL SYLLABLES*

1. **a** final is short in declinable words, but long in others. It is also long in the ablative singular of nouns of the first declension.

2. **e** and **y** final are short; but **e** is long in the first and fifth declensions, and in adverbs derived from adjectives in **-us.**

3. **i** and **u** final are long.

4. **o** final is *variable,* but long in datives and ablatives.

5. The terminations **as, es,** and **os** are usually long.

6. The terminations **is, us,** and **ys** are usually short; but **us** in the genitive singular, and nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, of the fourth declension is always long; also in words like **virtūs, virtūtis,** of the third declension.

7. When a word ends in **b, d, l, r,** or **t,** the final syllable is generally short.

8. When a word ends in **c** or **n,** the last syllable is generally long; but words like **carmĕn, carmĭnis,** have the **ĕn** short.

Accentuation.

9. The last syllable but one is called the *penult*, the syllable before it the *antepenult*.

In words of two syllables, the accent is on the first syllable: as, **hŏ́mo**. In words of three or more syllables, if the penult is long, it is accented; if the penult is short or common, the accent is on the antepenult: as, **ămī̂cŭs, Ōcĕ́ănŭs, tĕ́nēbrae.**

Exc.—In compounds of **făcio** in which the vowel is not changed, and in **contracted genitives** and **vocatives**, the accent remains on the penult: as, **benefắcis, ingĕ́ni, Vergĭ́li.**

10. Monosyllables have the circumflex accent (^) if the vowel is long by nature; otherwise, the acute accent ('): as, **ôs** (mouth), **môs, lêx, ós** (bone), **vír, dŭ́x.** The accent on the penult is a circumflex, if the vowel be long by nature and the last syllable short; otherwise, an acute: as, **mâtĕr, ínter, ámant.** The antepenult, if accented, takes always the acute. A syllable having the circumflex was dwelt upon by the voice longer than one which has only the acute. The accent *signs* are not used (as they are in Greek) in printing and writing Latin.

1. The sign of the circumflex is sometimes used also to indicate that a vowel is long (as **Româ**, abl.), or that a syllable is formed by contraction.

2. The sign of the grave accent is sometimes used to distinguish certain particles from other words of the same spelling: as, **quòd**, "because," or "that," from **quod**, "which."

11. The Enclitics (**quĕ, nĕ, vĕ,** etc.) add an accent to the last syllable of words which are accented on the antepenult, as **moéniắque, perículắve.** If the preceding word is a dissyllable, it has been the general custom in England and America to retain the accent on its first syllable if the last syllable is short, but drop that accent and place an accent on the last syllable if that syllable is long, or becomes long by position: as, **Rṓmăque, Rōmámque.**

1. The ancient grammarians, however, always place an accent on the syllable preceding the enclitic: as, **mĭhĭ́mĕt, mūsắquĕ, mūsâquĕ**; except when the proper meaning of the enclitic is lost or obscured, when it is treated as a part of the word: as, **ĭ́tăquĕ**, *therefore;* but **ĭtắquĕ**, *and so.* Yet they said **utrắquĕ** and **plērắquĕ**, to keep the accent of the masculine.

2. The enclitic may aid in giving length by position, as in the second syllable of **virumque.**

3. The enclitics are **quĕ, nĕ, vĕ, mĕt, cĕ, ptĕ, dŭm, quando, inde.**

Parts of Speech.

12. The parts of speech may be grouped in three classes: **Nouns,** including the Noun, Adjective, and Pronoun; **Verbs,** including the Finite Verb, Infinitives or Verbal Nouns, and Participles or Verbal Adjectives; and **Particles,** including the Adverb, the Preposition, the Conjunction, and the Interjection.

1. Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, and Verbs undergo changes in their terminations, called **Inflection.** Thus from the stem (§ 15) **mulier,** we have **mulier-is,** *woman's;* **mulier-es,** *women;* **mulier-um,** *women's;* from the stem **ama, ama-t,** *love-s;* **ama-sti,** *love-dst;* **ama-tus,** *love-d;* **ama-ns,** *lov-ing.*

The inflection of Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns is called **Declension;** that of Verbs, **Conjugation.**

Gender.

13. I. By natural gender the names and titles of male beings are masculine; those of female beings, feminine: as, masculine, **Căto; vĭr,** *a man;* **consŭl; ăriēs,** *a ram;* and feminine, **Jūliă; mŭliĕr,** *a woman;* **nūtrix,** *a nurse;* **vaccă,** *a cow.*

1. Many nouns denote both the male and the female, and are therefore called *common:* as, **săcerdōs,** *priest* or *priestess.* These are for the most part really adjectives.

2. Often the male and female are distinguished by different terminations: as, **ĕquŭs,** *horse;* **ĕquă,** *mare.*

3. Sometimes the natural gender of animals is forgotten for a fanciful gender. Thus **ănăs,** *duck,* **ăquĭlă,** *eagle,* **vulpēs,** *fox,* are feminine; **corvŭs,** *raven,* **passĕr,** *sparrow,* **piscĭs,** *fish,* are masculine. Such nouns are called *epicene, i.e.,* common to both genders. If the real gender is to be denoted, the words **mās** or **mascŭlŭs,** *male,* or **fēmĭnă,** *female,* are added.

II. Grammatical gender is determined partly by the meaning, partly by the termination.

1. Months, winds, and rivers are generally masculine.

The names of the months are really adjectives, agreeing with **mensĭs** (*month*), understood.

2. Countries, islands, and trees are generally feminine.

3. Nouns undeclined, as **fās**, *right;* other parts of speech, used for the time as nouns, as **scīrĕ tŭŭm**, *thy knowledge;* **hōc ipsŭm diū**, *this very* word "*diu;*" sentences used as nouns; and the produce of trees, are generally neuter.

Exceptions.—1. The following names of rivers are feminine: **Allĭă**, **Albŭlă**, **Mātrŏnă**, **Styx**, and **Lēthē**.

2. Names of countries ending in **-ŭm** or **-ă** (plur.) are neuter: as, **Lătĭŭm**, **Bactră**.

Pōntŭs, **Hellespontŭs**, **Isthmŭs**, are masculine.

3. Names of trees in **-ĕr** and **-ŭr** of the third declension are neuter: as, **sĭlĕr**, *an osier;* **rōbŭr**, *an oak;* those in **-ĕr**, of the second declension, are usually masculine, as are also many of those in **-ŭs**.

Numbers and Cases.

14. There are in Latin two numbers, the Singular and Plural; and six cases, viz.:

The Nominative, which names the *subject* of the verb, answering the question, Who? or What? As, **Quĭs dĕdĭt?** *who gave?* **Vĭr**, *a man.*

The Genitive, the case of possession or connection, answering the question, Whose? or Whereof? As, **Cūjŭs dōnŭm?** *whose gift?* **Vĭrī**, *a man's.*

The Dative, the case of remoter object, or personal interest, answering the question, To whom *or* what? For whom *or* what? As, **Cuī dătŭm?** *To whom given?* **Vĭrō**, *to a man.*

The Accusative, the case of direct object, answering the question, Whom? What? As, **Quĕm vĭdĕō?** *Whom see I?* **Vĭrŭm**, *A man.* It may also answer the questions, To what place? During what time? How far?

The Vocative, the case of direct address. As, **Vĭr**, *O man!* or *Thou man!*

The Ablative, which denotes means, source, circumstances, translated by the prepositions *with, in, from, by, at,* etc., and answering the questions, Wherewith? Whence? When? By, with, etc., whom *or* what? As, **Ā quō dătŭm?** *By whom given?* **Ā vĭrō**, *By a man.*

1. A seventh case, the **Locative**, is still found in a few words: as, **dŏmī**, *in the house, at home;* **hŭmī**, *on the ground.*

2. The Sanskrit has also an eighth case, the **Instrumental.**

3. The Nominative and Vocative are called **independent cases**; the other four, **dependent** or **oblique.**

Roots and Stems.

15. The endings of declension and conjugation are attached to the **Stem**, which is the fundamental part of the word.

1. The Stem of a Noun is usually seen on casting off *-rum* or *-um* from the Genitive Plural: as, **mensa-**, **dŏmĭno-**, **lĕon-**, **mări-**, **grădu-**, **dĭe-**.

2. The Stem of a Verb is shown in the Imperative Mood: as, **ăma-**, **audi-**, **mŏne.** But in the Third Conjugation **-ĕ** is cast off (for convenience): as, **reg-**; and in a Deponent Verb **-rĕ** or **-ĕre**: as, **fa-**, **re-**, **lab-**.

16. The **Root** (which is always a monosyllable) is that part which a word has in common with kindred words. Thus in the noun **stătio**, *standing*, **station-** is the Stem, but **sta-** (originally **stă**, sometimes **stā**) is the Root, as may be seen by comparing **stā-re**, **stă-tuo**, **stā-men**, **stā-tūra**, **stātim**, *to stand*, *stablish*, *standing-thread* (*i. e.*, warp), *standing-height*, *instantly.* A root may be used as a stem, or the stem may contain the root with alterations or additions.

Declension of Nouns.

17. Latin nouns have five Declensions, known by the endings of their Genitives:

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
Gen. Sing.	**ae**	**ī**	**ĭs**	**ūs**	**ĕi**
Gen. Plur.	**ārŭm**	**ōrŭm**	**ŭm** or **ĭŭm**	**ŭŭm**	**ērŭm**

1. In Neuter Nouns the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative are the same in each Number, severally; and in the Plural they end in **ă.**

2. The Vocative of Latin words is the same as the Nominative, except in the Singular of the Second Declension.

3. The Dative and Ablative Plural are always the same.

18. Table of Endings of Latin Nouns in the Five Declensions.

	I.	II.		III.	IV.		V.
				Singular.			
NOM.	ă	ŭs, ĕr, ĭr, ŭm		(various endings.)	ŭs	ū	ēs
GEN.	æ	ī	ī	ĭs	ūs	ūs (ū)	ĕ̄ī
DAT.	æ	ō	ō	ī	uī	ū (uī)	ĕ̄ī
ACC.	ăm	ŭm	ŭm	ĕm, ĭm (neut. like nom.)	ŭm	ū	ĕm
VOC.	ă	ĕ (ī), ēr, ĭr, ŭm		*like nom.*	ŭs	ū	ēs
ABL.	ā	ō	ō	ĕ, ī	ū	ū	ē
(*Loc.*)	*æ* (*āī*)	*ī*	*ī*	*ī, ĕ*			
				Plural.			
NOM.	æ	ī	ă	ēs (īs), ă, iă	ūs	uă	ēs
GEN.	ārŭm	ōrŭm	ōrŭm	ŭm, iŭm	uŭm	uŭm	ērŭm
DAT.	īs (ābŭs)	īs	īs	ĭbŭs	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs)	ĭbŭs	ēbŭs
ACC.	ās	ōs	ă	ēs (īs), ă, iă	ūs	uă	ēs
VOC.	æ	ī	ă	*like nom.*	ūs	uă	ēs
ABL.	īs (ābŭs)	īs	īs	ĭbŭs	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs)	ĭbŭs	ēbŭs
(*Loc.*)	*īs*	*īs*	*īs*				

THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Ă- *STEMS.*

19. The First Declension contains Latin Nouns, mostly Feminine, with Nominative in **ă**; and a few Greek words, chiefly Proper Names, in **ās**, **ēs**, Masculine, and **ē** Feminine.

Those in **a** are thus declined:

	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	mens**ă**, *a table.*	mens**ae**, *tables.*
GEN.	mens**ae**, *of a table.*	mens**ārŭm**, *of tables.*
DAT.	mens**ae**, *to* or *for a table.*	mens**īs**, *to* or *for tables.*
ACC.	mens**ăm**, *a table.*	mens**ās**, *tables.*
VOC.	mens**ă**, *O table* or *thou table!*	mens**ae**, *O tables* or *ye tables!*
ABL.	mens**ā**, *by*, *with*, or *from a table.*	mens**īs**, *by*, *with*, or *from tables.*

Note.—As there is no Article in Latin, **mensă** may be translated *table*, *a table*, or *the table*, according to the context.

1. In this way are declined also the adjectives and participles in **a** (fem.): as, **magnă**, *great;* **pictă**, *painted;* **mensă rŏtundă**, *a round table;* **mensae rŏtundae**, *of a round table.*

2. An old genitive and dative in **āī** are sometimes found in inscriptions and in the poets: as, **aulāi**, *of a hall;* **ăquāi**, *of water.*

3. An old genitive in **ās** remains in **pătĕr fămĭliās**, *the father of a family;* **mātĕr fămĭliās**, **fīliŭs fămĭliās**.

4. The genitive plural is found in **-ūm** rather than **-ārŭm** in (1) patronymics in **-des**, as, **Aenĕădēs**, **Aenĕădūm**; (2) many names of tribes or people, as **Lăpĭthae**, **Lăpĭthūm**; (3) compounds of **cŏl-** or **gĕn-**, in poetry, as **caelicŏlă**, **caelĭcŏlūm**, **terrĭgĕnă**, **terrĭgĕnūm**; (4) and in **amphŏrūm**, from **amphŏră**, and **drachmūm**, from **drachmă**, when used with numerals: as, **terna millia amphŏrūm**, 3000 *amphors;* **millĕ drachmūm**, *a thousand drachms.*

5. The locative case of **mīlĭtĭă** and names of towns ends in the singular in **ae** (for **āī**), in the plural in **īs**: as, **mīlĭtĭae**, *at the wars;* **Rōmae**, *at Rome;* **Ăthēnīs**, *at Athens.*

6. The dative and ablative plural of **deă**, *goddess*, and **fīliă**, *daughter*, end often in **-ābŭs**, to distinguish them from the like cases of corresponding masculine names of the second declension. So sometimes **nātă**, **ănĭmă**, **lībertă**, **conservă**, **dŏmĭnă**, **ĕră**, **mīmă**, **nymphă**, **ăsĭnă**, **ĕquă**, **mūla**.

7. Stems in **-ia** sometimes have **-īs** in the dative and ablative plural instead of **-ĭīs**. Thus **grātĭīs**, *for thanks*, is ordinarily written **grātīs**.

8. The exceptions to the rule that Latin nouns of the first declension are feminine are mostly from natural gender; thus **agrĭcŏlă**, *a farmer*, **naută**, *a sailor*, are masculine. Names of rivers in **a** are masculine, according to the general rule; but **Alliă**, **Albŭlă**, and **Matrŏnă** are feminine. **Hadriă**, *the Adriatic Sea*, is masculine.

20. *GREEK NOUNS.*

	Aenēas, m.	**Anchīses**, m.	**Cybĕle**, f.
NOM.	Aenēās,	Anchīsēs,	Cўbĕlē,
GEN.	Aenēae,	Anchīsae,	Cўbĕlēs *or* Cўbĕlāe,
DAT.	Aenēae,	Anchīsae,	Cўbĕlae,
ACC.	Aenēān *or* Aenēăm,	Anchīsēn *or* Anchīsăm,	Cўbĕlēn
VOC.	Aenēā,	Anchīsē *or* Anchīsā (ă),	Cўbĕlē,
ABL.	Aenēā.	Anchīsā.	Cўbĕlē *or* Cўbĕlā.

1. The plural of Greek nouns of the first declension, when used, follows that of **mensă**.

THE SECOND DECLENSION.

Ŏ- STEMS.

21. The Second Declension contains Latin Nouns in **ŭs, ĕr,** and **ĭr,** mostly Masculine, and **ŭm,** Neuter, and Greek Nouns in **os,** Masculine, and **on,** Neuter.

1. The nominative adds **s** or **m** to the stem, the characteristic **ŏ** being generally weakened to **ŭ**.

2. Some stems in **-ĕro** drop **o**, rejecting **s**: as, **puer** for **puĕros**, **tener** for **tenĕros**; and stems in which **-ro** follows a mute or **f**, drop **o**, reject **s**, and insert **e** before **r**; as, **magister** for **magistrŏs**, **niger** for **nigrŏs**.

Dominus, *a lord,* m.

	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	dŏmĭnŭs, *lord.*	dŏmĭnī, *lords.*
GEN.	dŏmĭnī, *of a lord.*	dŏmĭnōrum, *of lords.*
DAT.	dŏmĭnō, *to* or *for a lord.*	dŏmĭnīs, *to* or *for lords.*
ACC.	dŏmĭnŭm, *lord.*	dŏmĭnōs, *lords.*
VOC.	dōmĭnĕ, *O lord.*	dŏmĭnī, *O lords.*
ABL.	dŏmĭnō, *by, with,* or *from a lord.*	dŏmĭnīs, *by, with,* or *from lords.*

Puer, *a boy,* m.

	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	pŭĕr, *boy.*	pŭĕrī, *boys.*
GEN.	pŭĕrī, *of a boy.*	pŭĕrōrŭm, *of boys.*
DAT.	pŭĕrō, *to* or *for a boy.*	pŭĕrīs, *to* or *for boys.*
ACC.	pŭĕrŭm, *boy.*	pŭĕrōs, *boys.*
VOC.	pŭĕr, *O boy.*	pŭĕrī, *O boys.*
ABL.	pŭĕrō, *by, with,* or *from a boy.*	pŭĕrīs, *by, with,* or *from boys.*

Ager, *a field,* m. — **Vir,** *a man,* m.

	Ager Singular.	Ager Plural.	Vir Singular.	Vir Plural.
NOM.	ăgĕr,	ăgrī,	vĭr,	vĭrī,
GEN.	ăgrī,	ăgrōrŭm,	vĭrī,	vĭrōrŭm,
DAT.	ăgrō,	ăgrīs,	vĭrō,	vĭrīs,
ACC.	ăgrŭm,	ăgrōs,	vĭrŭm,	vĭrōs,
VOC.	ăgĕr,	ăgrī,	vĭr,	vĭrī,
ABL.	ăgrō.	ăgrīs.	vĭrō.	vĭrīs.

Fĭlĭŭs, *a son*, m.			**Bellum**, *war*, n.	
	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	fĭlĭŭs,	fĭlĭī,	bellŭm,	bellă,
Gen.	fĭlī *or* fĭlĭī,	fĭlĭōrŭm,	bellī,	bellōrŭm,
Dat.	fĭlĭō,	fĭlĭīs,	bellō,	bellīs,
Acc.	fĭlĭŭm,	fĭlĭōs,	bellŭm,	bellă,
Voc.	fĭlī,	fĭlĭī,	bellŭm,	bellă,
Abl.	fĭlĭō.	fĭlĭīs.	bellō.	bellīs.

22. For the sake of brevity, the declension of neuters may be given as follows:

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom., Acc., and Voc.	bellŭm,	bellă,
Gen.	bellī,	bellōrum,
Dat. and Abl.	bellō.	bellīs.

23. The masculine form in **ŭs** of adjectives and participles of the second declension is declined like **dŏmĭnŭs**, the neuter in **ŭm** like **bellŭm**; the masculine of most adjectives in **ĕr** of the second declension is declined like **ăgĕr**, that of the rest like **pŭĕr**. Thus **horrĭdŭs** (masc.), **horrĭdŭm** (neut.), *dreadful;* **pĭgĕr** (masc.), **pĭgrŭm** (neut.), *lazy;* **mĭsĕr** (masc.), **mĭsĕrŭm** (neut.), *wretched;* **horrĭdă bellă**, *dreadful wars;* **pŭĕrīs pigrīs**, *to lazy boys;* **dŏmĭnī mĭsĕrī**, *of a wretched lord.*

Note.—The masc. of the adj. **sătŭr**, *full*, is the only word in the second declension ending in **-ŭr**.

1. Like **pŭĕr** are declined (1) **ădultĕr**, **gĕnĕr**, **Lībĕr**, **lībĕrī** (children), **sŏcĕr**, **vespĕr**, sometimes **Mulcĭbĕr**; (2) words ending in **fĕr** and **gĕr** from **fĕro** and **gĕro**: as, **signĭfĕr**, **armĭgĕr**; (3) **Celtībērī** and **Ibērī** (plural).

2. The endings **ŏs**, **ŏm**, were used even to the Augustan age after **v**, **u**, **qu**: as, **servŏs**, **equŏs** (or **ĕcŭs**).

3. Proper names in **-ĭŭs**, also **fīlĭŭs**, *son*, and **gĕnĭŭs**, *familiar spirit*, contract the vocative into **ī**: as, **Claudī**, **Vergĭlī**. So **mĕŭs**, *my*, in the vocative sing. masc., as **mī fīlī**, *my son.*

Pompēī (*O Pompēius*) is further contracted by Horace into **Pompēī**; so **Vultēī**, *O Vultēius.*

Foreign proper names in **īus** do not contract the vocative: as, **Darīĕ**, *O Darīus!*

4. The genitive singular of nouns having -ĭŭs, -ĭŭm in the nominative, was contracted into i till the Augustan age, and is so written by Vergil (except in two instances) and Horace.

Propertius and Ovid are the first who wrote constantly **ii**, which then became the usual form: but Manilius, Persius, and Martial prefer **i**.

5. The genitive plural in **ūm** for **ōrŭm** appears in (1) names of coins, weights, measures, and trades: nummus, sestertius, medimnus, modius, talentum, jugerum, stadium, faber: so **dēnūm tălentūm, praefectŭs făbrūm,** (fabrōrŭm is also found); (2) in some names of people: **Argīvūm (ōm),** *of the Argives;* **Dănăūm,** *of the Dánaäns.* Poets often use it in words of short penult, and in numeral and compound adjectives; as, **vĭrūm,** for *virōrum;* **magnănĭmūm Rŭtŭlūm.**

6. A contracted dative and ablative plural is found; as, **Grāīs,** from **Grāĭŭs; dīs,** from **dĕŭs.**

7. **Pĕlăgŭs,** *sea,* **vīrŭs,** *poison,* being neuter, have acc. and voc. the same as the nom. **Vulgŭs,** *common people,* is generally neuter, but sometimes masculine. **Pĕlăgŭs** has a Greek plural, **pĕlăgē; vīrŭs** and **vulgŭs** have no plural.

8. The locative form in the second declension ends in the singular in **ī**, in the plural in **īs**: as, **bellī,** *at war;* **hŭmī,** *on the ground;* **vespĕrī,** *at evening;* **Cŏrinthī,** *at Corinth;* **Veĭīs,** *at Veii.*

9. Dĕŭs, *a god*, is thus declined:

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	dĕŭs,	dĕī, dĭī, *or* dĭ,
Gen.	dĕī,	dĕōrŭm,
Dat.	dĕō,	dĕīs, dĭīs, *or* dīs,
Acc.	dĕŭm,	dĕōs,
Voc.	dĕŭs,	dĕī, dĭī, *or* dī,
Abl.	dĕō.	dĕīs, dĭīs, *or* dīs.

Note.—In poetry, and in solemn religious forms (as treaties, etc.), the voc. sing. of other words in **-ŭs** is sometimes like the nominative: as, **audī tū, pŏpŭlŭs Albānŭs,** *hear thou, people of Alba!*

24. Exceptions in Gender.—Names of towns, and many names of trees, plants, and gems are **feminine**: as, **Cŏrinthŭs,** Corinth: **pōpŭlŭs,** a poplar tree; **smaragdŭs,** an emerald. Feminine also are **alvŭs,** paunch; **cŏlŭs,** distaff; **hŭmŭs,** ground, and **vannŭs,** a winnowing-fan: and some Greek words, of which the most frequent are **Arctŭs** (*ŏs*), the Great Bear; **ătŏmus,** an atom; **carbăsŭs,** fine flax, a linen curtain, etc. (the pl. **carbăsă** is neuter); **diălectŭs,** dialect, and **phărŭs,** light-house. For the **neuter,** see § **23, 7.**

25. *GREEK NOUNS.*

	Dēlŏs, f.	Andrŏgeos, m.	Ilion (or Ilium), n.
Nom.	Dēlŏs,	Andrŏgĕōs,	Ilĭŏn,
Gen.	Dēlī,	Andrŏgĕō *or* ī,	Ilĭī,
Dat.	Dēlō,	Andrŏgĕō,	Ilĭō,
Acc.	Dēlŏn *or* Dēlŭm,	Andrŏgĕō *or* ōn,	Ilĭŏn,
Voc.	Dēlĕ,	Andrŏgĕōs,	Ilĭŏn,
Abl.	Dēlō.	Andrŏgĕō.	Ilĭō.

1. The Greek genitive plural **ōn** is sometimes found: as, **Gĕorgĭcōn,** *of the Georgics;* **Phĭlaenōn,** *of the Philæni.* Other plural forms are the same as in Latin nouns.

The Third Declension.

26. *CONSONANT STEMS AND Ĭ- STEMS.*

1. The Consonant-Nouns, with few exceptions, have more syllables in the Genitive than in the Nominative Singular. Nouns thus increasing in the Genitive are called **Imparisyllables.**

2. The **I-** Nouns have, for the most part, the same number of syllables in the Genitive as in the Nominative. Nouns not increasing in the Genitive are called **Parisyllables.**

3. In the consonant stems the final stem consonant is in most cases preceded by a vowel, and this vowel is generally short.

4. A very large proportion of the **i-** stems have the syllable which precedes the **i** long.

5. Most of the **i- nouns** have not more than two syllables in the genitive singular.

CONSONANT NOUNS.

Jūdex, c., *a judge.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	jūdex,* *a judge.*	jūdĭcēs, *judges.*
Gen.	jūdĭcĭs, *of a judge.*	jūdĭcŭm, *of judges.*
Dat.	jūdĭcī, *to* or *for a judge.*	jūdĭcĭbŭs, *to* or *for judges.*
Acc.	jūdicĕm, *a judge.*	jūdĭcēs, *judges.*
Voc.	jūdex, *thou judge.*	jūdĭcēs, *O judges,* or *ye judges.*
Abl.	jūdĭcĕ, *by, with,* or *from a judge.*	jūdĭcĭbŭs, *by, with,* or *from judges.*

* x standing for cs.

	Rēx, m., *a king.*	**Aetās**, f., *age.*	**Cŏmĕs**, c., *a companion.*	**Pēs**, m., *a foot.*
		Singular.		
Nom.	rēx,	aetās,	cŏmĕs,	pēs,
Gen.	rēgĭs,	aetātĭs,	cŏmĭtĭs,	pĕdĭs,
Dat.	rēgī,	aetātī,	cŏmĭtī,	pĕdī,
Acc.	rēgĕm,	aetātĕm,	cŏmĭtĕm,	pĕdĕm,
Voc.	rēx,	aetās,	cŏmĕs,	pēs,
Abl.	rēgĕ.	aetātĕ.	cŏmĭtĕ.	pĕdĕ.
		Plural.		
Nom.	rēgēs,	aetātēs,	cŏmĭtēs,	pĕdēs,
Gen.	rēgŭm,	aetātŭm (ium),	cŏmĭtŭm,	pĕdŭm,
Dat.	rēgĭbŭs,	aetātĭbŭs,	cŏmĭtĭbŭs,	pĕdĭbŭs,
Acc.	rēgēs,	aetātēs,	cŏmĭtēs,	pĕdēs,
Voc.	rēgēs,	aetātēs (īs),	cŏmĭtēs,	pĕdēs,
Abl.	rēgĭbŭs.	aetātĭbŭs.	cŏmĭtĭbŭs.	pĕdĭbŭs.

	Princeps, c., *a chief.*	**Lĕō**, m., *a lion.*	**Virgō**, f., *a virgin.*	**Pătĕr**, m., *a father.*
		Singular.		
Nom.	princeps,	lĕō,	virgō,	pătĕr,
Gen.	princĭpĭs,	lĕōnĭs,	virgĭnĭs,	pā̆trĭs,
Dat.	princĭpī,	lĕōnī,	virgĭnī,	pā̆trī,
Acc.	princĭpĕm,	lĕōnĕm,	virgĭnĕm,	pā̆trĕm,
Voc.	princeps,	lĕō,	virgō,	pătĕr,
Abl.	princĭpĕ.	lĕōnĕ.	virgĭnĕ.	pā̆trĕ.
		Plural.		
Nom.	princĭpēs,	lĕōnēs,	virgĭnēs,	pā̆trēs,
Gen.	princĭpŭm,	lĕōnŭm,	virgĭnŭm,	pā̆trŭm,
Dat.	princĭpĭbŭs,	lĕōnĭbŭs,	virgĭnĭbŭs,	pā̆trĭbŭs,
Acc.	princĭpēs,	lĕōnēs,	virgĭnēs,	pā̆trēs,
Voc.	princĭpēs,	lĕōnēs,	virgĭnēs,	pā̆trēs,
Abl.	princĭpĭbŭs.	lĕōnĭbŭs.	virgĭnĭbŭs.	pā̆trĭbŭs.

	Căpŭt, n., *a head.*	**Nōmĕn**, n., *a name.*	**Ŏpŭs**, n., *work.*	**Corpŭs**, n., *a body.*
		Singular.		
Nom.	căpŭt,	nōmĕn,	ŏpŭs,	corpŭs,
Gen.	căpĭtĭs,	nōmĭnĭs,	ŏpĕrĭs,	corpŏrĭs,
Dat.	căpĭtī,	nōmĭnī,	ŏpĕrī,	corpŏrī,
Acc.	căpŭt,	nōmĕn,	ŏpŭs,	corpŭs,
Voc.	căpŭt,	nōmĕn,	ŏpŭs,	corpŭs,
Abl.	căpĭtĕ.	nōmĭnĕ.	ŏpĕrĕ.	corpŏrĕ.
		Plural.		
Nom.	căpĭtă,	nōmĭnă,	ŏpĕră,	corpŏră,
Gen.	căpĭtŭm,	nōmĭnŭm,	ŏpĕrŭm,	corpŏrŭm,
Dat.	căpĭtĭbŭs,	nōmĭnĭbŭs,	ŏpĕrĭbŭs,	corpŏrĭbŭs,
Acc.	căpĭtă,	nōmĭnă,	ŏpĕră,	corpŏră,
Voc.	căpĭtă,	nōmĭnă,	ŏpĕră,	corpŏră,
Abl.	căpĭtĭbŭs.	nōmĭnĭbŭs.	ŏpĕrĭbŭs.	corpŏrĭbŭs.

Note.—For the sake of brevity, the declension of neuters may be given as follows:

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom., Acc., and Voc.	căpŭt,	Nom., Acc., and Voc.	căpĭtă,
Gen.	căpĭtĭs,	Gen.	căpĭtŭm,
Dat.	căpĭtī,	Dat. and Abl.	căpĭtĭbŭs.
Abl.	căpĭtĕ.		

I- NOUNS.

	Tussĭs, f., *a cough.*	**Clāvĭs**, f., *a key.*	**Imbĕr**, m., *a shower.*
		Singular.	
Nom.	tussĭs,	clāvĭs,	imbĕr,
Gen.	tussĭs,	clāvĭs,	imbrĭs,
Dat.	tussī,	clāvi,	imbrī,
Acc.	tussĭm,	clāvĕm *or* clāvĭm,	imbrĕm,
Voc.	tussĭs,	clāvĭs,	imbĕr,
Abl.	tussī.	clāvĕ *or* clāvī.	imbrĕ *or* imbrī.

Plural.

Nom.	tussēs,	clāvēs,	imbrēs,
Gen.	tussiŭm,	clāviŭm,	imbriŭm,
Dat.	tussĭbŭs,	clāvĭbŭs,	imbrĭbŭs,
Acc.	tussēs (īs),	clāvēs (īs),	imbrēs (īs),
Voc.	tussēs,	clāvēs,	imbrēs,
Abl.	tussĭbŭs.	clāvĭbŭs.	imbrĭbŭs.

	Ŏvĭs, f., *a sheep.*	**Nūbēs**, f., *a cloud.*	**Dens**, m., *a tooth.*

Singular.

Nom.	ŏvĭs,	nūbēs,	dens,
Gen.	ŏvĭs,	nūbĭs,	dentĭs,
Dat.	ŏvī,	nūbī,	dentī,
Acc.	ŏvĕm,	nūbĕm,	dentĕm,
Voc.	ŏvĭs,	nūbēs,	dens,
Abl.	ŏvĕ.	nūbĕ.	dentĕ.

Plural.

Nom.	ŏvēs,	nūbēs,	dentēs,
Gen.	ŏviŭm,	nūbiŭm,	dentiŭm,
Dat.	ŏvĭbŭs,	nūbĭbŭs,	dentĭbŭs,
Acc.	ŏvēs *or* ŏvīs,	nūbēs *or* nūbīs,	dentēs *or* dentīs,
Voc.	ŏvēs,	nūbēs,	dentēs,
Abl.	ŏvĭbŭs.	nūbĭbŭs.	dentĭbŭs.

	Rētĕ, n., *a net.*	**Ănĭmăl**, n., *an animal.*	**Mărĕ**, n., *the sea.*	**Ŏs**, n., *a bone.*

Singular.

Nom.	rētĕ,	ănĭmăl,	mărĕ,	ŏs,
Gen.	rētĭs,	ănĭmālĭs,	mărĭs,	ossĭs,
Dat.	rētī,	ănĭmālī,	mărī,	ossī,
Acc.	rētĕ,	ănĭmăl,	mărĕ,	ŏs,
Voc.	rētĕ,	ănĭmăl,	mărĕ,	ŏs,
Abl.	rētī (ĕ).	ănĭmālī.	mărī (ĕ).	ossĕ.

Plural.

Nom.	rētiă,	ănĭmālĭa,	mărĭa,	ossă,
Gen.	rētiŭm,	ănĭmāliŭm,	măriŭm,	ossiŭm,
Dat.	rētĭbŭs,	ănĭmālĭbŭs,	mărĭbŭs,	ossĭbŭs,
Acc.	rētiă,	ănĭmālĭă,	măriă,	ossă,
Voc.	rētiă,	ănĭmālĭă,	măriă,	ossă,
Abl.	rētĭbŭs.	ănĭmālĭbŭs.	mărĭbŭs.	ossĭbŭs.

27. For the sake of brevity, the declension of neuters may be given as follows:

Singular.

Nom., Acc., Voc.	ŏs,	ănĭmăl,	mărĕ,
Gen.	ossĭs,	ănĭmālĭs,	mărĭs,
Dat.	ossī,	ănĭmālī,	mărī,
Abl.	ossĕ.	ănĭmālī.	mărī (ĕ).

Plural.

Nom., Acc., Voc.	ossă,	ănĭmālĭă,	mărĭă,
Gen.	ossiŭm,	ănĭmāliŭm,	măriŭm,
Dat., Abl.	ossĭbŭs.	ănĭmālĭbŭs.	mărĭbŭs.

28. Adjectives and participles of the third declension are declined like nouns of similar terminations: as, **fēlīx, fēlīcĭs,** *happy;* **ămans, ămantĭs,** *loving;* **puĕrĭs fēlīcĭbŭs,** *for happy boys;* **patrĭs ămantĭs,** *of a loving father.*

29. *CASE TERMINATIONS.*

I. **The nominative singular** in masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension, except liquids, regularly adds **s** to the stem; but various modifications are introduced.

II. **The terminations of the genitive singular** in the third declension are as follows:

1. Nouns in **a** have their genitive in **ătis**: as, **poēma, poēmătis,** *a poem.* These nouns are neuter, and from the Greek.

2. Nouns in **e** change **e** into **is**: as, **sĕdīle, sĕdīlis,** *a seat.*

3. The nouns in i are Greek neuters. They are generally indeclinable, but some have the regular genitive in **is.** The compounds of **mĕli,** *honey,* have their genitive in **ĭtis**: as, **hydromĕli, hydromelĭtis,** *mead.*

4. Nouns in **o** have their genitive in **ōnis**: as, **pāvo, pavōnis,** *a peacock.*

Exc. 1.—Nouns in **do** and **go** have their genitive in **ĭnis**: as, **hirundo, hīrundĭnis,** *a swallow;* **imāgo, imagĭnis,** *a likeness.*

Exc. 2.—**Homo,** *a man;* **nemo,** *no man;* **turbo,** *a whirlwind;* and **Apollo** also have their genitive in **ĭnis.**

Exc. 3.—The following nouns in **do** and **go** have their genitive in **ōnis**; **praedo, cudo, udo, ligo, mango, spado, harpăgo, comĕdo, unĕdo.**

Exc. 4.—The names of peoples in **o** have generally **ŏnis** in the genitive: as, **Macĕdo, Macedŏnis.** But **o** is long in **Iōnes, Lacōnes, Nasamōnes, Suessōnes,** and **Vettōnes.**

Exc. 5.—**Caro,** *flesh,* has its genitive **carnis.** **Anio,** the name of a river, has **Aniēnis**; **Nerio,** the wife of Mars, has **Neriēnis.**

5. Nouns in **y** are Greek neuters, and form their genitive by adding **is, s,** or **os**: as, **misy, misўis** and **misys** or **misўos,** *vitriol.*

6. There are only two nouns in **c,** viz.: **lac, lactis,** and **ālēc, alēcis.**

7. Nouns in **l** add **is** in the genitive: as, **sol, solis,** *the sun.*

Note.—**Mel,** *honey,* and **fel,** *poison,* double the **l,** making **mellis, fellis.**

8. Nouns in **ĕn** have their genitive in **ĭnis**: as, **flūmĕn, flūmĭnis.**

9. Nouns in **ēn** add **is** in the genitive: as, **rēn, rēnis,** *kidney.*

10. Nouns in **r** add **is** in the genitive: as, **calcar, calcāris,** *a spur;* **nectar, nectăris,** *nectar;* **carcer, carcĕris,** *a prison.*

Exc. 1.—Nouns in **ter** drop **e** in the genitive: as, **păter, patris,** *father;* so also **imber,** *a shower,* and names of months in **ber.**

But **lăter, crātēr,** and **sōter** retain **e.**

Exc. 2.—**Lar** or **Lars** has for its genitive **Lartis**; **far, farris**; **hēpar, hepătis**; **iter, itinĕris** (from an old nominative); **Jupĭter, Jŏvis.**

Exc. 3.—**Ebur, fĕmur, jĕcur,** and **robur** have their genitive in **ŏris**: as, **ebŏris**; **fĕmur** has also **femĭnis,** and **jĕcur, jecinŏris, jocinŏris,** and **jocinĕris.**

Note.—Most nouns in **or** have **ōris**: as, **ămor, amōris,** *love.* But **arbor, ador, aequor, marmor,** and the adjective **memor** have **ŏris.** **Cor** has **cordis.**

11. Nouns in **as** have their genitive in **ātis**: as, **piĕtas, pietātis,** *dutiful affection.*

Exc. 1.—**Anas** has **anătis**; **as, assis**; **mas, măris**; **vas** (*a surety*), **vădis, vās** (*a vessel*), **vāsis.**

Exc. 2.—Greek masculines have **antis**: as, **Pallas,** the name of a warrior, **Pallantis**; feminines, **ădis,** as **Pallas,** a name of Minerva, **Pallădis**; and neuters, **ătis,** as, **artocrĕas, artocreătis.**

Arcas, *an Arcadian*, and **Nŏmas**, *a Numidian*, have **ădis**. **Mĕlas**, the name of a river, has **Melănis**.

12. Nouns in **es** have their genitive in **is**, **ĭtis**, **ĕtis**, or **ētis**: as, **rūpes**, **rupis**, *a rock;* **mīles**, **milĭtis**, *a soldier;* **păries**, **pariĕtis**, *a wall;* **quies**, **quiētis**, *rest.*

Exc. 1.—**Obses**, **praeses**, and the adjectives **deses** and **reses** have **ĭdis**; **pes** and its compounds have **ĕdis**; **heres** and **merces** have **ēdis**.

Exc. 2.—The genitive of **bes** is **bessis**; of **Ceres**, **Cerĕris**; of **pūbes** and **impūbes**, **pubĕris** and **impubĕris**. **Caeres** has **Caerĭtis** and **Caerētis**.

13. Nouns in **is** have their genitive the same as the nominative: as, **pānis**, **panis**, *bread.*

Exc. 1.—The following have **ĭdis**: **cassis**, **cuspis**, **lăpis**, and the Greek words **aegis** and **pyrămis**.

Exc. 2.—The following have **ītis**: **Dis**, **lis**, **Quiris**, and **Samnis**.

Exc. 3.—**Cĭnis** and **pulvis** have **ĕris**: as, **cinĕris**. **Cucŭmis** has **cucumĕris** and **cucŭmis**.

Exc. 4.—**Glis** has **glīris**; **pollis** (or **pollen**), **pollĭnis**; **sanguis** (or **sanguen**), **sanguĭnis**; **semis**, **semissis**.

Note.—Greek nouns in **is** have generally **is** or **ĭdis** in the genitive. **Chăris** has **Charĭtis**; **Salămis**, **Salamīnis**; **Sĭmŏis**, **Simoentis**.

14. Of nouns in **os**, some have **ōtis**: as, **nepos**, **nepōtis**, *a grandson*, and some **ōris**: as, **flos**, **flōris**, *a flower.*

Exc.—**Custos** has **custōdis**; **ŏs**, **ossis**; **bos**, **bŏvis**. The adjectives **compos** and **impos** have **ŏtis**. The Greek nouns **hērōs**, **Mīnōs**, and **Trōs** have **ōis**.

15. Nouns in **us** have their genitive in **ĕris** or **ŏris**: as, **lătus**, **latĕris**, *side;* **nĕmus**, **nemŏris**, *a grove.*

Exc. 1.—**Incus**, **pălus**, and **subscus** have **ūdis**; **pĕcus**, *a single head of cattle, a beast*, has **pecŭdis** (while **pĕcus**, **pecŏris** means *cattle* collectively); **tellus** has **tellūris**, and **Vĕnus**, **Venĕris**.

Exc. 2.—Monosyllables which have a long **u** have their genitive in **ūris**; as, **crūs**, *the leg.* **Grus** and **sus** have **uis**; the adjective **vĕtus**, **vetĕris**; and **intercus**, **intercŭtis**.

Exc. 3.—Some Greek proper names in **us** have **untis**: as, **Trăpĕzūs**. Compounds ending in **pūs** (πούς) have **pŏdis**: as, **tripus** and **Œdĭpus**; but the latter is sometimes, and **polўpūs** always, made in the second declension. **Rhūs** has **rhois** and **roris**.

16. Greek nouns in **ys** have the genitive in **yis**, contracted **ys**, or in the Greek form **yos**. A few, as **chlamys**, have **ўdis**.

17. The only nouns ending in **aes** are **aes**, **aeris**, and **praes**, **praedis**.

18. There are only two words in **aus**; **laus, laudis**, and **fraus, fraudis.**

19. Nouns in **ls, ns,** or **rs** have their genitive in **tis**: as, **puls, pultis**; **fons, fontis**; **pars, partis.** Nouns in **s, bs, ms,** or **ps** have their genitive in **is**: as, **urbs, urbis**; **hiem(p)s, hiĕmis**; **stirps, stirpis.**

Exc. 1.—**Frons, glans, juglans, lens,** and **librĭpens** have **dis**: as, **frondis. Tiryns** has **Tirynthis.**

Exc. 2.—**Gryps** has **grўphis.** Compounds in **ceps** (from **capio**) have **ĭpis,** as **princeps, princĭpis.** But **auceps** has **aucŭpis.**

Exc. 3.—Adjectives in **ceps,** derived from **caput,** have their genitive in **cĭpĭtis**: as, **anceps, ancipĭtis.**

20. Nouns in **t** have their genitive in **ĭtis.** They are **caput, capĭtis,** and its compounds, **occĭput** and **sincĭput.**

21. Nouns in **x** have their genitive in **cis** or **gis**: as, **vōx, vōcis,** *voice;* **lēx, lēgis,** *law.*

1. Latin nouns in **ax** have **ācis,** except **fax, făcis.** Most Greek nouns in **ax** have **ācis,** a few **ăcis**; Greek names of men in **nax** have **nactis**; as, **Astyănax, Astyanactis.**

2. Words in **ex** generally have **ĭcis**: as, **judex, judĭcis**; but **rex** and **lex** have **ēgis**; **aquĭlex, grex,** and **Lelex** have **ĕgis**; **nex, foenisex,** and the obsolete **prex** have **ĕcis**; **vervex** and **Myrmex, ēcis. Remex** has **remĭgis**; **senex, senis**; **supellex, suppellectĭlis.**

3. Nouns in **ix** have **īcis,** less frequently **ĭcis. Nix** has **nĭvis,** and **strix, strĭgis.**

4. The words in **ox** have **ōcis**; but **Cappădox** and the adjective **praecox** have **ŏcis. Nox** has **noctis**; **Allŏbrox, Allobrŏgis.**

5. **Crux, dux, nux,** and the adjective **trux** have the genitive in **ŭcis**; the **u** before **c** is long only in the genitive of **lux, lūcis,** and **Pollux, Pollūcis. Conjunx** (or **conjux**) has **conjŭgis**; the obsolete **frux** has **frūgis.**

6. The words in **yx** are Greek; the genitive may be **ўcis, ȳcis, ўgis, ȳgis,** or **ўchis.**

7. **Faex, faecis** is the only word ending in **aex**; the only word in **aux** is **faux, faucis.**

III. The **dative singular** had an old form in **ē,** retained in some phrases.

IV. The termination **-im** in the **accusative singular** is retained

1. *Always* in **ămussis, būris, rāvis, tussis, cŭcŭmis, sĭtis, vīs,** and the adverb **partim** (originally an accusative);

2. *For the most part,* but interchanging with **-em,** in **fĕbris, pelvis, puppis, restis, sĕcūris, turris**;

3. *Sometimes*, but more often changed to **-em**, in **clāvis**, **nāvis**, and **sēmentis**;

4. In some Greek nouns and names of rivers.

V. The termination -i in the **ablative singular** is retained.

1. In nouns which have **-im** in the accusative (**restī** is doubtful);

2. Often in **amnis**, **ăvis**, **axis**, **bīlis**, **bĭpennis**, **cănālis**, **cīvis**, **fustis**, **imber**, and (in certain formulas) in **ignis**;

3. In neuter nouns in **-e**, **-al**, and **-ar**; with the exception of **jŭbar**, **baccar**, and **nectar**, names of towns ending in ĕ, and sometimes **măre** and **rēte**;

4. In nouns in **-is** (-ālis, -āris, -īlis, -ensis), and names of months in **-is**, **-er**, which were originally adjectives; but such nouns often (**aedīlis** generally), and proper names of this kind almost always, have **e**. **Jŭvĕnis** has always **juvĕne**.

VI. The pure **locative** in **-ī** is found in such forms as **orbī**, **rūrī**, **Lacedaemŏnī**, **Tībŭrī**.

VII. The **nominative** and **accusative plural** of **neuter nouns** generally end in **a**; but nouns in **e**, **al**, and **ar**, have **ia**.

VIII. A **nominative plural** in **is** or **eis** occurs sometimes in Plautus and Lucretius.

IX. The **genitive plural** in **ium** is found

1. In parisyllabic nouns in **-es** and **-is**; except **cănis**, **jŭvĕnis**, **mensis**, **sēdēs**, **struēs**, **sŭbŏlēs**, **vātēs**, sometimes **ăpis**, and usually **vŏlŭcris**;

2. In **imber**, **linter**, **ūter**, **venter**, **sĕquester**, **Insŭber**;

3. In gentile nouns in **-as** and **-is**, as **Arpīnās**, **Quĭrīs** (but not in names of men; thus, **Maecēnātum**, *of Maecenases*);

4. In **dos**, **lis**, often in abstracts in **-tas**, as **cīvĭtas**, less frequently in abstracts in **-tus**, as **virtus**;

5. In **ars**, **as**, **dens**, **nox**, **ŏs**, **puls**, **sēmis**; most frequently in original participles in **-ns**, as **părens**, **săpiens**; in **fraus**, **frons**, **laus**; rarely in **compes**, **pălus**;

6. In **arx**, **falx**, **faux**, **merx**;

7. In **urbs**, **stirps**;

8. In **glis**, **vis**, **mas**, **lar**, **nix**, and sometimes in **lien**, **mus**, **rēnēs**.

X. Some plural words in **-ālia**, **-īlia**, **-āria**, follow the second declension in their genitive plural: as, **Compitali-orum**; **ancili-orum**.

XI. Nouns which have **-ium** in the genitive plural have in the classical period **-is** as well as **-es** in the **accusative plural.** A still older form in **-eis** occurs.

30. *RULES FOR GENDER.*

1. Concrete nouns in **-io** are **masculine**; as, **scorpio**, *a scorpion;* **pūgio**, *a dagger.*

2. Abstract and collective nouns in **-io** are **feminine**; as, **rătio**, *reason;* **lĕgio**, *a legion.*

3. Nouns in **-do** and **-go**, with the genitive in **-ĭnis**, are **feminine**: as, **magnĭtūdo**, *greatness;* **ĭmāgo**, *a likeness.*

4. Other nouns in **-o**, together with **ordo**, **cardo**, and **margo**, are **masculine.**

5. Nouns in **-ās -ātis**, **-ēs -ētis**, **-īs -ītis**, **-ōs -ōtis**, **-ūs -ūtis**, and **-ūs -ūdis**, are feminine.

6. Parisyllables in **-ēs** are **feminine.**

7. Parisyllables in **-is** are **feminine.** But the following are masculine: nouns ending in **-nis**; also **axis**, **būris**, **caulis**, **collis**, **ensis**, **fascis**, **follis**, **fustis**, **mensis**, **mūgĭlis**, **orbis**, **piscis**, **postis**, **sentis**, **torris**, **unguis**, **vectis**, **vermis.**

8. Nouns in **-ĭs -ĭdis** are **feminine**; except **lăpis**, masculine.

9. Nouns in **-ĭs -ĕris**, and **-ĭs -ĭnis** are **masculine.**

10. Nouns in **-ĕs -ĭtis** are **masculine**; except **merges**, feminine.

11. Nouns in **s with a consonant before it** are **feminine**; except **dens**, **fons**, **mons**, and **pons**, which are **masculine.**

12. Nouns in **x** are **feminine**; but **călix**, **fornix**, **grex**, and most in **-ex -ĭcis** and **-ix -ĭcis** are **masculine.**

13. Nouns in **-ōs -ōris**, **-ŏr -ōris**, **-ĕr -ris** are **masculine.**

14. Nouns in **-ĕr -ĕris**; **-ŏr -ŏris**; **-ŭr -ŭris** and **ŏris**; **-ŭs -ĕris** and **-ŏris**; **-ūs -ūris** (monosyllabic); **-ăl -ālis**; **-ăr -āris**; **-ĕ -is**; and **-ĕn -ĭnis** are **neuter.** But **arbor** is **feminine**; and **agger**, **carcer**, **furfur**, **lăter**, and **pecten**, are **masculine.**

15. The monosyllables **as**, **mus**, **ren**, **sol**, and **sal**, are **masculine**; **fraus**, **grus**, **laus**, **sus**, and **vis**, **feminine**; **aes**, **cor**, **far**, **fel**, **lac**, **mel**, **ōs**, **ŏs**, **vas**, and **ver**, **neuter.**

16. **Păriēs** and **pēs** are **masculine**; **ănăs**, **pĕcŭs**, **sĕgĕs**, and **tĕgĕs**, **feminine**; and **căput**, **neuter.**

Note 1.—Names of animals with neuter terminations are **masculine**: as, **lĕpŭs, lĕpŏris,** a hare.

Note 2.—Nouns derived from the Greek retain their original gender.

Note 3.—No rules of this kind can supersede the use of the Lexicon.

31. *NOUNS IRREGULAR IN DECLENSION.*

Note.—The stems of **bōs, grūs,** and **sūs** end in **u** (**v**). So the stem **Jŏv** in **Jūpĭter** (for **Jovpăter**).

	Bōs, m. or f., *ox* or *cow.*	**Jūpĭter,** m., *Jupiter.*	**Sūs,** m. or f., *a swine.*
		Singular.	
Nom.	bōs,	Jūpĭtĕr,	sūs,
Gen.	bŏvĭs,	Jŏvĭs,	sŭĭs,
Dat.	bŏvī,	Jŏvī,	sŭī,
Acc.	bŏvĕm,	Jŏvĕm,	sŭĕm,
Voc.	bōs,	Jūpĭtĕr,	sūs,
Abl.	bŏvĕ.	Jŏvĕ.	sŭĕ.
		Plural.	
Nom.	bŏvēs,		sŭēs,
Gen.	bŏŭm,		sŭŭm,
Dat.	būbŭs *or* bōbŭs,		sŭĭbŭs *or* sūbŭs,
Acc.	bŏvēs,		sŭēs,
Voc.	bŏvēs,		sŭēs,
Abl.	būbŭs *or* bōbŭs.		sŭĭbŭs *or* sūbŭs.

	Vīs, f., *strength.*	**Nix,** f., *snow.*	**Sĕnex,** c., *old man* or *woman.*
		Singular.	
Nom.	vīs,	nix,	sĕnex,
Gen.	(vīs, *rare*),	nĭvĭs,	sĕnĭs,
Dat.	(vī, *rare*),	nĭvī,	sĕnī,
Acc.	vĭm,	nĭvĕm,	sĕnĕm,
Voc.	(*wanting*),	nix,	sĕnex,
Abl.	vī.	nĭvĕ.	sĕnĕ.

	Plural.	
Nom. vīrēs,	nĭvēs,	sĕnēs,
Gen. vīriŭm,	nĭviŭm,	sĕnŭm,
Dat. vīrĭbŭs,	nĭvĭbŭs,	sĕnĭbŭs,
Acc. vīrēs,	nĭvēs,	sĕnēs,
Voc. vīrēs,	nĭvēs,	sĕnēs,
Abl. vīrĭbŭs.	nĭvĭbŭs.	sĕnĭbŭs.

32. *GREEK NOUNS.*

Tēthȳs, f.	Atreus, m.	Sōcrătēs, m.	Achillēs, m.
Nom. Tēthȳs,	Atreūs,	Sōcrătēs,	Achillēs *or* Achilleūs,
Gen. Tēthȳĭs *or* Tēthȳŏs,	Atrĕī (ei) *or* Atrĕŏs,	Socrătī *or* Socratĭs,	Achillĭs, -ī *or* Achillĕŏs,-ĕī,
Dat. Tēthȳī,	Atrĕō (eo),	Socrătī,	Achillī *or* Achillēī,
Acc. Tēthȳm *or* Tēthȳn,	Atreŭm *or* Atrĕă,	Socrătĕm *or* Socrătēn,	Achillĕm, -ēn *or* Achillĕă,
Voc. Tēthȳ,	Atreu,	Socrătēs *or* Socrătē,	Achillē,-ēs *or* Achilleu,
Abl. Tēthȳĕ.	Atrĕō (eo).	Socrăte,	Achillĕ *or* Achillī.

Hērōs, m., *hero.*		Tigrĭs, *a tiger.*	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Nom. hērōs,	hērōĕs,	tigrĭs,	tigrēs,
Gen. hērōĭs,	hērōŭm,	tigrĭs *or* tigrĭdĭs,	tigriŭm,
Dat. hērōī,	hērōĭbŭs (ĭsĭn),	tigrī (tigrĭdĭ),	tigrĭbŭs,
Acc. hērōĕm *or* hērōă,	hērōĕs, -ăs,	tigrim *or* tigrin,	tigrēs *or* tigrĭdas,
Voc. hērōs,	hērōĕs,	tigrĭs,	tigrēs,
Abl. hērōĕ.	hērōĭbŭs (ĭsĭn).	tigrĕ *or* tigrĭdĕ.	tigrĭbŭs.

33. Many Greek nouns of the third declension prefer the gen. in -ī (as of the second declension) to that in -ĭs: as, **Pericles**, gen. **Periclī** (rather than **Periclis**).

1. The Greek gen. in -ŏs, the acc. in -ă, the nom. plur. in ĕs, ē, and the acc. plur. in -ăs, ē, are often preferred to the Latin terminations.

2. As the Greek gen. plur. in -ōn is sometimes found in the second declension, so is that in -eōn in the third: as, **Metamorphoseōn**, *of the Metamorphōses.*

3. In poetry, the dat. and abl. plur. sometimes end in -sĭ, before vowels -sĭn.

The Fourth Declension.

U- STEMS.

34. Nouns of the Fourth Declension end in **us**, Masculine or Feminine, and **u**, Neuter. They are thus declined:

Grădŭs, m., *a step*. | **Gĕnū**, n., *knee*.

	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	grădŭs,	**grădūs**,	**gĕnū**,	**gĕnŭă**,
Gen.	grădūs,	**grădŭŭm**,	**gĕnūs**,	**gĕnŭŭm**,
Dat.	grăduī,	**grădĭbŭs**,	**gĕnū**,	**gĕnĭbŭs**,
Acc.	grădŭm,	**grădūs**,	**gĕnū**,	**gĕnŭă**,
Voc.	grădŭs,	**grădūs**,	**gĕnū**,	**gĕnŭă**,
Abl.	grădū.	**grădĭbŭs**.	**gĕnū**.	**gĕnĭbŭs**.

1. Several nouns of this declension have also forms belonging to the second: as, **caestŭs**, abl. plur. **caestĭbŭs** and **caestīs**.

Dŏmŭs, *a house*, f., is thus declined:

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	dŏmŭs,	dŏmūs,
Gen.	dŏmūs,	dŏmŭŭm *or* dŏmōrŭm,
Loc.	dŏmī (rarely dŏmŭī),	
Dat.	dŏmŭī (rarely dŏmō),	dŏmĭbŭs,
Acc.	dŏmŭm,	dŏmōs *or* dŏmūs,
Voc.	dŏmŭs,	dŏmūs,
Abl.	dŏmō (rarely dŏmū).	dŏmĭbŭs.

2. Many **u** stems in the earlier Latin had the genitive singular in **i**: as, **sĕnātŭs**, gen. **sĕnātī**.

3. The dative in **ui** is often contracted into **ū**: as, **parce mĕtū**, Verg.

4. The dative and ablative plural in **ŭbus** is retained always by **ăcus**, **arcus**, and **trĭbus**; usually by **artus**, **lăcus**, **partus**, **portus**, **spĕcus**, and **vĕru**; and sometimes by **gĕnu**, **tŏnĭtrus**, and **Quinquātrūs**.

5. Most nouns of this declension in **us** are **masculine**; but the following are **feminine**: **ăcus**, **dŏmus**, **mănus**, **portĭcus**,

trĭbus, Idūs (plural), **Quinquātrūs** (plural); and words denoting females or plants. **Spĕcus**, m., is rarely feminine.

THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

E- STEMS.

35. Nouns of the Fifth Declension end in **ēs**, and are of the Feminine Gender.

They are thus declined:

	Diēs, c., *a day.*	**Rēs**, f., *a thing.*	**Fĭdēs**, f., *faith.*
		Singular.	
NOM.	**diēs,**	**rēs,**	**fĭdēs,**
GEN.	**diēī,**	**rĕī,**	**fĭdĕī,**
DAT.	**diēī,**	**rĕī,**	**fĭdĕī,**
ACC.	**diĕm,**	**rĕm,**	**fĭdĕm,**
VOC.	**diēs,**	**rēs,**	**fĭdēs,**
ABL.	**diē.**	**rē.**	**fĭdē.**
		Plural.	
NOM.	**diēs,**	**rēs,**	(no plural.)
GEN.	**diērŭm,**	**rērŭm,**	
DAT.	**diēbŭs,**	**rēbŭs,**	
ACC.	**diēs,**	**rēs,**	
VOC.	**diēs,**	**rēs,**	
ABL.	**diēbŭs.**	**rēbŭs.**	

1. **Diēs** and **rēs** are the only nouns of the fifth declension which have all the cases in both numbers.

2. In the termination **ei** of the genitive and dative, **e** is long after **i**, as, **prōgĕniēi**; but short, in the classical period, after a consonant.

3. The termination **ei** was also contracted into **ē**, and anciently into **ī**, as **dĭē, dĭī**. Examples: **constantis jŭvĕnem fĭdē**, and **commissa fĭdē**, Hor.; **mūnĕra laetĭtiamque dii**, Verg.

4. The phrases **die crastĭni, die proxĭmi, die septĭmi,**

are examples of the locative case in this declension. So **cŏtīdie, postrīdie.**

5. All nouns of the fifth declension are **feminine**; except **dies**, which, if it means *a day*, is in the singular usually, and in the plural always, **masculine**; but if it means *time*, **dies** is feminine.

36. *GENERAL VIEW OF ALL THE DECLENSIONS.*

Singular.

	1st Decl.	2d Decl.	3d Decl.	4th Decl.	5th Decl.
NOM.	mensă,	servŭs,	hŏnŏr,	fructŭs,	dĭēs,
GEN.	mensae,	servī,	hŏnōrĭs,	fructūs,	diēi,
DAT.	mensae,	servō,	hŏnōrī,	fructŭī,	diēi,
ACC.	mensăm,	servŭm,	hŏnŏrĕm,	fructŭm,	diĕm,
VOC.	mensă,	servĕ,	hŏnŏr,	fructŭs,	diēs,
ABL.	mensā.	servō.	hŏnōrĕ.	fructū.	diē.

Plural,

NOM.	mensae,	servī,	hŏnōrēs,	fructūs,	diēs,
GEN.	mensārum,	servōrŭm,	hŏnōrŭm,	fructŭŭm,	diērŭm,
DAT.	mensīs,	servīs,	hŏnōrĭbŭs,	fructĭbŭs,	diēbŭs,
ACC.	mensās,	servōs,	hŏnōrēs,	fructūs,	diēs,
VOC.	mensae,	servī,	hŏnōrēs,	fructūs,	diēs,
ABL.	mensīs.	servīs.	hŏnōrĭbŭs.	fructĭbŭs.	diēbŭs.

37. DEFECTIVE AND IRREGULAR NOUNS.

1. Some nouns are defective in number, or case, or both.

2. The following have the singular, but rarely the plural:

a Most proper names: as, **Cĭcĕro, Rōma.**

b Abstract nouns: as, **justĭtia,** *justice.*

c Words which indicate material: as, **aurum,** *gold;* **hordeum,** *barley.*

d Words signifying a whole, without reference to the individual: as, **plebs,** *the people;* **sŭpellex,** *furniture.*

e Other words which from their signification are never used in the plural: as, **pontus,** *the sea;* **sanguis,** *blood;* **sŏpŏr,** *sleep;* **līmus,** *mud;* **hŭmus,** *the ground.*

Note 1.—But proper names haye a plural when several of one name are mentioned: as, **duodĕcim Caesărēs,** *the twelve Caesars;* also when they are used as common nouns: as, **multi Cătĭlīnae,** *many Catilines,* i. e., *many abandoned men.*

4

Note 2.—When different things of a kind, or different manifestations of the same thing, are specified, the plural is used: as, **vīna**, *wines;* **ŏdia**, *various instances of hatred.*

Note 3.—The poets often use plurals which are not met with in prose: as, **sĭlentia**, *silences* or *silence.*

3. The following are used almost solely in the plural:

a Words denoting individuals appearing in great numbers, in groups, or in pairs: as, **majōres**, *ancestors;* **lībĕri**, *children* (also sing.); **excŭbiae**, *night-watch;* **artus**, *limbs* (rarely sing.); **īlia**, *the loins.*

b Names of things which have many parts: as, **arma**, *armor;* **balneae**, *a bath-house;* **exŭviae**, *spoils* (stripped from the dead); **moenia**, *fortifications.*

c Names of festivals and periods: as, **Sāturnālia**, *the feast of Saturn;* **Kălendae**, *the Calends;* **Nōnae**, *the Nones;* **Īdus**, *the Ides.*

d The following, with many more, come under one or other of the above heads; those marked *s.* are sometimes, though rarely, used in the sing.:

ambāges, *a round-about way* (see 5, below); *evasive language or conduct.*
angustiae, *a strait*, s.
argūtiae, *witticisms, acuteness*, s.
bīgae (**quadrīgae**), etc., *a chariot and pair* (or *and four*), s.
blandĭtiae, *flattery*, s.
clītellae, *a pack-saddle.*
compĕdes, *shackles*, s.
crĕpundi-a, **-ōrum**, n., *a (child's) rattle.*
cūnābŭl-a, and **incūnābŭl-a**, **ōrum**, n., *a cradle.*
cūnae, *a cradle.*
dēlĭciae, *darling*, s.
dīvĭtiae, *wealth*, s.
ĕpŭlae, *a banquet*, s.
exsĕquiae, *funeral rites.*
ext-a, **-orum**, n., *entrails.*
fasti, *a calendar.*
fauces, *the throat*, s.
grātes, *thanks.*
hăbēnae, *reins*, s.
indūciae, *a truce.*
infĕriae, *offering to the dead.*
ĭnĭmīcĭtiae, *enmity*, s.
insĭdiae, *ambush*, s.
lībĕri, m., *children*, s.
mĭnae, *threats.*
mūni-a, **-orum**, n., *duties.*
nūgae, *trifles.*
nuptiae, *a marriage-feast.*
prĕces, *prayers*, s.
rĕlĭquiae, *remnant*, s.
sălīnae, *salt-pits.*
scālae, *a ladder*, s.
tĕnĕbrae, *darkness*, s.
valvae, *folding-doors*, s.

4. Many names of towns (as consisting of parts), mountains (as groups or ridges), and hills, have no singular; as,

Acrŏcĕrauni-a, -orum, n.
Alp-es, -ium (s. rare).
Amȳcl-ae, -arum.
Athēn-ae, -arum.
Ecbătăn-a, -orum.
Esquĭli-ae, -arum.
Găbi-i, -orum.
Părĭsi-i, -orum.
Phĭlipp-i, -ōrum.
Sȳrācūs-ae, -arum.
Thermŏpȳl-ae, -arum.
Vēi-i, -ōrum.

5. The following nouns, among others, want some of their cases:

admŏnĭtu, abl. only, *admonition.*
aes, *brass;* wants gen. plur.
ambāge, abl., *a round-about;* plur. complete.
aplustre, nom. and acc., *curved stern of a ship;* plur., **aplustr-a**, or **-ia**.
astu, nom., acc., abl. s., *a city.*
astus, nom. sing., and acc. plur., *craft;* abl. sing., **astu**.
căcoēthes, nom. and acc., *bad habit;* plur., nom. and acc., **cacoethē**; acc., also **-es**.
caelīte, abl., *inhabitant of heaven;* plur. complete.
cānĭties, **-em** (acc.), **-e** (abl.), *hoariness.*
chaos, nom. and acc.; **chao**, abl.; *chaos.*
compĕdis, gen., and **compĕde**, abl., *a fetter;* plur. complete.
(**daps**), nom. wanting, *a feast;* rest of sing. and plur. complete.
(**dĭcio**), nom. wanting; rest of sing. complete; no plur.; *power.*
diu, abl., *by day.*
far, *corn;* wants gen., dat., and abl. plur.
fas, *right;* only nom. and acc. s.
fauce, abl., *the throat;* plur. complete.
fŏras, (*to*) *out of doors;* **fŏris**, *abroad;* acc. and abl.
fors, *chance;* abl. **forte**.
(**frux**), *fruit;* nom. wanting.
grātes, *thanks;* nom., acc., and abl. plur. (**grātibus**).
hiemps, *winter;* wants gen., dat., and abl. plur.
impĕtis, gen., and **impete**, abl., *vehemence;* plur. **impetĭbus**.
infĭtias, acc. plur., *a denial.*
ingrātiis, abl. plur., *against one's will.*
injussu, abl., *without orders.*
instar, nom. and acc., *likeness.*
jūgĕris, gen., and abl. **jūgĕre**, *an acre;* plur. **-a**, **-um**, **-ĭbus**, etc.
jussu, abl., *by command.*
lux, *light;* wants gen. plur.
māne, nom. and acc.; abl., rarely **māne** or **māni**, *the morning.*
mel, *honey;* wants gen., dat., and abl. plur.
mĕlŏs, *melody,* nom. and acc.; **mĕlo**, dat.; plur., nom. and acc., **mĕle**.
mĕtus, *fear;* wants gen., dat., and abl. plur.
mŏnĭtu, abl., *admonition.*
nātu, abl., *by birth.*
nauci, gen., as in the phrase, *Non nauci est,* It is not worth a nutshell.
nĕfas, nom. and acc., *wrong* (by divine law).
nēmo, *nobody;* wants voc. sing. and all the plur. The gen. and abl. are rare.
nĭhĭl, nom. and acc., *nothing.*

noctu, abl., *by night.*
ŏpis, gen.; ŏpem, acc.; ŏpe, abl., *help;* plur. complete.
ŏpus, *need*, nom. and acc.
ōs, *the mouth;* wants gen. plur.
pax, *peace;* wants gen. plur.
pessum, *to the bad;* acc.
prĕci, dat.; prĕcem, acc.; and prĕce, abl., *prayer;* plur. complete.
promptu, abl., *with readiness.*
pūs, *matter from suppuration;* wants gen., dat., and abl. plur.
rĕpĕtundārum, gen. plur.; and rĕpĕtundis, abl., *extortion.* (Supply *rerum, rebus.*)
rŏgātu, abl., *by request.*
rūs, *the country;* wants gen., dat., and abl. plur.
sĕcus, *sex;* only nom. and acc.
sĭtus, *situation*, nom.; -um, acc.; -u, abl.; -ūs, nom. and acc. plur.
sōl, *the sun;* wants gen. plur.
sordis, gen.; sordem, acc.; sord-e and -i, abl., *filth;* plur. complete.
spontis, gen. (very rare); sponte, abl., *of one's own accord.*
sŭbŏles, *offspring;* wants gen. plur.
Tempē, *a valley in Thessaly;* only in nom., acc., and voc. plur.
thūs, *frankincense;* wants gen., dat., and abl. plur.
vēnui and vēno, dat.; vēnum, acc.; and vēno, abl., *sale.*
veprem, acc.; vepre, abl., *a brier;* plur. complete.
vesper, *evening;* vespĕrum, acc.; vespĕr-e, -i, *or* -o, abl.
vespĕr-a, -am, -a (abl.), *the evening.*
vĭcis, gen.; vĭci, dat.; vĭcem, acc.; and vĭce, abl., *change;* plur. complete except gen.
vīs, vim, vi; gen. and dat. rare; plur., vīres, vīrium, etc., *strength.*

6. Some nouns have a plural differing in gender and in formation from the singular. These are called **Metaplasts or Heterogeneous**:

Singular.	Plural.
Masc.	*Neut.*
Avernus, *Avernus* (*lake*).	**Averna.**
Dindy̆mus, *Dindymus* (*mt.*).	**Dindy̆ma.**
Ismărus, *Ismarus* (*mt.*).	**Ismăra.**
Maenălus, *Maenalus* (*mt.*).	**Maenăla.**
Tartărus, *Tartarus.*	**Tartăra**, etc.
Masc.	*Masc. or Neut.*
intŭbus, (*the plant*) *endive.*	**intŭba** *and* **intŭbi.**
jŏcus, *a joke.*	**jŏci** *and* **jŏca.**
lŏcus, *a place.*	**lŏca**, *places, and* **lŏci**, *spots*, or *passages in books.*
sībĭlus, *a hissing.*	**sībĭla** (*and* **sibili**).
Fem.	*Fem. or Neut.*
carbăsus, *a species of flax.*	(**carbăsi**) *and* **carbăsa** (n.).
Hiĕrō̆sŏly̆m-a, -ae, *Jerusalem.*	**Hiĕrō̆sŏly̆m-a, -ōrum** (n.).

Neut.	*Masc.*
Argos, *Argos.*	**Argi.**
caelum, *Heaven.*	**caeli.**
Ely̆sium, *Elysium.*	**Elysii.**
porrum, *a leek.*	**porri.**
sĭser, (*the plant*) *skirret.*	**sĭsĕres.**

Neut.	*Masc. or Neut.*
frēnum, *a bridle.*	**frēni** *and* **frēna.**
rastrum, *a rake.*	**rastri** *and* **rastra.**

Neut.	*Fem.*
balneum, *a bath.*	**balneae** *and* **balnea** (n.).
ĕpŭlum, *a feast.*	**ĕpŭlae.**
nundĭnum, *a market.*	**nundĭnae,** *a fair.*
So also **vās, vāsis,** n., *a vessel* (3d Decl.).	**vās-a, -ŏrum** (2d Decl.), n.

7. Some nouns have two or more forms in one or more of the oblique cases, derivable from the same form in the nom. These are called **Heteroclites**: as,

dŏmus, f., *a house* (see § 34).
fămes, f., *hunger;* abl., **famĕ** (3d Decl.), *or* **famē** (5th).
pĕcŭs, pecŭdis, f., *a single head of cattle;* and **pecus, pecŏris,** n., *cattle collectively.*
pīnus, *a pine;* also **fīcus,** *a fig-tree;* and **laurus,** *a bay* (2d Decl.); but in abl. sing., nom. and acc. plur. (4th Decl.).
rĕqui-es, -ētis, f., *rest;* acc., **-em** (5th), *or* **-etem** (3d).
satrăp-es, -ae (1st), and **satrap-es, -is** (3d), *a satrap* or *governor.*
sĕnāt-us, -i, *or* **-us,** *the senate.*

8. Some nouns have two forms of the same or different declensions. They are called **Abundantia**, or **Redundant**: as,

băcŭl-us, *or* **-um** (2d), *a staff.*
balte-us, *or* **-um** (2d), *a girdle.*
clĭpe-us, *or* **-um** (2d), *a shield.*
dilŭvi-um, -i (2d); **-o, -ōnis** (3d); and **dilŭvi-es, -ēi** (5th), *a flood.*
dūrĭti-a, -ae (1st), *or* **duriti-es, -ēi** (5th), *hardness.*
event-us, -ūs (4th), *or* **-um, -i** (2d), *an occurrence.*
jŭvent-ūs, -ūtis (3d), *or* **juvent-a, -ae** (1st), *youth.*
luxŭri-a, -ae (1st), and **luxuri-es, -ēi** (5th), *luxury.*
mātĕri-a, -ae (1st), *or* **mātĕri-es, ēi** (5th), *material, stuff.*
plebs, plēb-is *or* **plēb-ēs, plēb-is** (3d), *or* **plēb-ēs, -ei** (5th), *the commons.*
sestertius (2d m.), *a sesterce,* about four cents; **sestertium** (2d n.), *a thousand sesterces.*

vesper, gen. **vespĕr-i** (2d); *or* **vesper**, gen. **vespĕr-is** (3d); *or* **vespĕr-a, -ae** (1st), *the evening;* with many others.

9. Some nouns have a meaning in the plural more or less different from that of the singular: as,

Singular.	Plural.
aedes, a temple.	**aedes**, temples, *or* a house.
ăqua, water.	**ăquae**, waters, *or* medicinal springs.
auxĭlium, help.	**auxĭlia**, auxiliary troops.
bŏnum, a good, a blessing.	**bŏna**, goods, property.
carcer, a prison.	**carcĕres**, a starting-post, barriers.
castrum, a fort.	**castra**, a camp.
cēra, wax.	**cērae**, waxen tablets *or* busts.
cōdĭcillus, a bit of wood.	**cōdĭcilli**, tablets.
cŏmĭtium, a place of meeting.	**cŏmĭtia**, the Assembly at Rome.
cōpia, plenty.	**cōpiae**, troops, stores, resources.
făcultas, a power *or* faculty.	**făcultates**, means *or* resources.
fĭdes, harp-string.	**fĭdes**, lyre.
fīnis, an end.	**fīnes**, boundaries *or* territory.
fortūna, fortune.	**fortūnae**, gifts of fortune.
grātia, favor.	**grātiae**, thanks.
impĕdīmentum, a hindrance.	**impĕdīmenta**, baggage.
littĕra, a letter of the alphabet.	**littĕrae**, letters of the alphabet, *or* an epistle, *or* literature.
lūdus, play, a fencing-school.	**lūdi**, public games.
lustrum, a period of five years.	**lustra**, lairs, dens.
nāris, a nostril.	**nārēs**, the nose.
nātālis, a birthday.	**nātāles**, pedigree, descent.
ŏpĕra, labor, toil.	**ŏpĕrae**, workmen.
ŏpis, *gen.*, help.	**ŏpes**, wealth, resources, power.
pars, a part.	**partes**, parts; the part of an actor in a play; a party or faction.
plăga, region.	**plăgae**, snares.
rostrum, a beak.	**rostra**, the hustings, *or* place from which the orators at Rome addressed the people.
sāl, salt.	**săles**, wit, witticisms.
tăbella, tablet.	**tăbellae**, documents.
tăbŭla, a board, plank.	**tăbŭlae**, boards: an account-book, register; writing-tablets.
tŏrus, a couch.	**tŏri**, muscles.

Note.—Many nouns in this list have occasionally in the singular the same meaning as that which is found in the plural.

Declension of Adjectives.

38. Adjectives and Participles are declined like Nouns of similar terminations.

1. The study of the declension of adjectives is therefore like a *review* of the corresponding declensions of nouns.

39. Adjectives of the **First** and **Second Declension** end in **us** or **er**, Masculine; **a**, Feminine; and **um**, Neuter; and are thus declined:

Bŏnŭs, m., **bŏnă**, f., **bŏnŭm**, n., *good.*

Singular.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	bŏnŭs,	bŏnă,	bŏnŭm,
Gen.	bŏnī,	bŏnae,	bŏnī,
Dat.	bŏnō,	bŏnae,	bŏnō,
Acc.	bŏnŭm,	bŏnăm,	bŏnŭm,
Voc.	bŏnĕ,	bŏnă,	bŏnŭm,
Abl.	bŏnō.	bŏnā.	bŏnō.

Plural.

Nom.	bŏnī,	bŏnae,	bŏnă,
Gen.	bŏnōrŭm,	bŏnārŭm,	bŏnōrŭm,
Dat.	bŏnīs,	bŏnīs,	bŏnīs,
Acc.	bŏnōs,	bŏnās,	bŏnă,
Voc.	bŏnī,	bŏnae,	bŏnă,
Abl.	bŏnīs.	bŏnīs.	bŏnīs.

Tĕnĕr, tĕnĕră, tĕnĕrŭm, *tender.*

Singular.

Nom.	tĕnĕr,	tĕnĕră,	tĕnĕrum,
Gen.	tĕnĕrī,	tĕnĕrae,	tĕnĕrī,
Dat.	tĕnĕrō,	tĕnĕrae,	tĕnĕrō,
Acc.	tĕnĕrŭm,	tĕnĕrăm,	tĕnĕrŭm,
Voc.	tĕnĕr,	tĕnĕră,	tĕnĕrŭm,
Abl.	tĕnĕrō.	tĕnĕrā.	tĕnĕrō.

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	tĕnĕrī,	tĕnĕrae,	tĕnĕră,
Gen.	tĕnĕrōrum,	tĕnĕrārum,	tĕnĕrōrum,
Dat.	tĕnĕrīs,	tĕnĕrīs,	tĕnĕrīs,
Acc.	tĕnĕrōs,	tĕnĕrās,	tĕnĕră,
Voc.	tĕnĕrī,	tĕnĕrae,	tĕnĕră,
Abl.	tĕnĕrīs.	tĕnĕrīs.	tĕnĕrīs.

Pĭgĕr, pigră, pigrŭm, *lazy.*

Singular.

Nom.	pĭgĕr,	pigră,	pigrŭm,
Gen.	pigrī,	pigrae,	pigrī,
Dat.	pigrō,	pigrae,	pigrō,
Acc.	pigrŭm,	pigrăm,	pigrŭm,
Voc.	pĭgĕr,	pigră,	pigrŭm,
Abl.	pigrō.	pigrā.	pigrō.

Plural.

Nom.	pigrī,	pigrae,	pigră,
Gen.	pigrōrŭm,	pigrārŭm,	pigrōrŭm,
Dat.	pigrīs,	pigrīs,	pigrīs,
Acc.	pigrōs,	pigrās,	pigră,
Voc.	pigrī,	pigrae,	pigră,
Abl.	pigrīs.	pigrīs.	pigrīs,

40. Participles ending in **ŭs, ă, ŭm** are declined like **bŏnŭs.**

1. **Dextĕr,** *on the right hand*, has the two forms **dextĕră** and **dextră** in the feminine, and **dextĕrŭm** and **dextrŭm** in the neuter.

41. The following adjectives have the genitive singular in **īŭs** and the dative in **ī**: **ălius, nullus, sōlus, tōtus, ullus, ūnus, alter, ŭter, neuter.** Thus:

Tōtŭs, tōtă, tōtŭm, *whole.*

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	tōtŭs,	tōtă,	tōtŭm,
Gen.	tōtīŭs,	tōtīŭs,	tōtīŭs,
Dat.	tōtī,	tōtī,	tōtī,
Acc.	tōtŭm,	tōtăm,	tōtŭm,
Voc.	tōtĕ,	tōtă,	tōtŭm,
Abl.	tōtō.	tōtā.	tōtō.

The plural is regular, like that of **bŏnŭs**.

1. The ī of the penult in these genitives is long, and takes the accent in prose, except in **altĕrĭŭs**. In poetry it is sometimes shortened.

2. **Ălĭŭs** has in its genitive singular **ălīŭs**, and in the dative **ălĭī**. In the nominative and accusative neuter it has **ălĭŭd**.

3. Some of these adjectives and pronominal words are occasionally found with the common endings in the genitive or dative.

42. Adjectives of the **Third Declension** are of three classes: (1) a small number with **three terminations** in the nominative singular, one for each gender, **-ĕr, -rĭs, -rĕ**; (2) many with **two terminations, -ĭs** Masculine and Feminine, **-ĕ** Neuter, and comparatives in **-ŏr** Masculine and Feminine, **-ŭs** Neuter; and (3) many in **r, l, s,** or **x,** with **one termination** for all genders. They are thus declined:

Ācĕr or **ācrĭs, ācrĭs, ācrĕ,** *sharp.*

Singular.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	ācĕr,	ācrĭs,	ācrĕ,
Gen.	ācrĭs,	ācrĭs,	ācrĭs,
Dat.	ācrī,	ācrī,	ācrī,
Acc.	ācrĕm,	ācrĕm,	ācrĕ,
Voc.	ācĕr,	ācrĭs,	ācrĕ,
Abl.	ācrī.	ācrī.	ācrī.

Plural.

Nom.	ācrēs,	ācrēs,	ācriă,
Gen.	ācriŭm,	ācriŭm,	ācriŭm,
Dat.	ācrĭbŭs,	ācrĭbŭs,	ācrĭbŭs,
Acc.	ācrēs, īs,	ācrēs, īs,	ācriă,
Voc.	ācrēs,	ācrēs,	ācriă,
Abl.	ācrĭbŭs.	ācrĭbŭs.	ācrĭbŭs.

1. **Cĕlĕr, cĕlĕrĭs, cĕlĕrĕ,** *swift,* is the only adjective of this class which retains **e** before **r** through all the cases. Its genitive plural ends in **ium** when it is used merely as an adjective, but in **um** when it signifies the ancient body-guard at Rome, called **Cĕlĕrēs.**

43. Mītĭs, mītĕ, *mild.*

	Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	mītĭs,	mītĕ,	mītēs,	mītiă,
Gen.	mītĭs,	mītĭs,	mītiŭm,	mītiŭm,
Dat.	mītī,	mītī,	mītĭbŭs,	mītĭbŭs,
Acc.	mītĕm,	mītĕ,	mītēs, īs,	mītiă,
Voc.	mītĭs,	mītĕ,	mītēs,	mītiă,
Abl.	mītī.	mītī.	mītĭbŭs,	mītĭbŭs.

1. An ablative singular in ĕ is sometimes found in poetry.

44.—1. Mītĭŏr, mītĭŭs, *milder.*

	Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	mītiŏr,	mītiŭs,	mītiōrēs,	mītiōră,
Gen.	mītiōrĭs,	mītiōrĭs,	mītiōrŭm,	mītiōrŭm,
Dat.	mītiōrī,	mītiōrī,	mītiōrĭbŭs,	mītiōrĭbŭs,
Acc.	mītiōrĕm,	mītiŭs,	mītiōrēs, -īs,	mītiōră,
Voc.	mītiŏr,	mītiŭs,	mītiōrēs,	mītiōră,
Abl.	mītiōrĕ, -ī.	mītiōrĕ, -ī.	mītiōrĭbŭs.	mītiōrĭbŭs.

2. The comparative **plūs**, *more*, plural, **plūrēs, plūră**, is thus declined :

	Singular.	Plural.	
	Neut.	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	plūs,	plūrēs,	plūră (-iă),
Gen.	plūrĭs,	plūriŭm,	plūriŭm,
Dat.	*wanting,*	plūrĭbŭs,	plūrĭbŭs,
Acc.	plūs,	plūrēs, -īs,	plūra (-ia),
Abl.	plūrĕ.	plūrĭbŭs.	plūrĭbŭs.

3. The comparative degree was formed by adding to the clipt stem the termination **-ĭōs**, which was changed in the nom. sing., masc. and fem., to **ĭor**, in the oblique cases to **iōr**, and appears in the neut. nom. sing. as **iŭs**.

4. **Complūrēs**, *several*, is declined like **plūrēs**.

5. The ablative in -i in comparatives is rare.

6. **Plūrēs** and **complūrēs** are the only comparatives which have the gen. plur. in **ium**.

45. Fēlix, *happy;* (x = cs). **Prūdens,** *wise.* **Vĕtŭs,** *old.*

Singular.

	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	fēlix,		prūdens,		vĕtŭs,	
GEN.	fēlīcĭs,		prūdentĭs,		vĕtĕrĭs,	
DAT.	fēlīcī,		prūdentī,		vĕtĕrī,	
ACC.	fēlīcĕm,	fēlix,	prūdentĕm,	prūdens,	vĕtĕrĕm,	vĕtŭs,
VOC.	fēlix,		prūdens,		vĕtŭs,	
ABL.	fēlīcī, -ĕ.		prūdentī, -ĕ.		vĕtĕrĕ.	

Plural.

NOM.	fēlīcēs,	fēlīciă,	prūdentēs,	prūdentiă,	vĕtĕrēs,	vĕtĕră,
GEN.	fēlīciŭm,		prūdentiŭm,		vĕtĕrŭm,	
DAT.	fēlīcĭbŭs,		prūdentĭbŭs,		vĕtĕrĭbŭs,	
ACC.	fēlīcēs, -īs,	fēlīciă,	prūdentēs, -īs,	prūdentiă,	vĕtĕrēs,	vĕtĕră,
VOC.	fēlīcēs,	fēlīciă,	prūdentēs,	prūdentiă,	vĕtĕrēs,	vĕtĕră,
ABL.	fēlīcĭbŭs.		prūdentĭbŭs.		vĕtĕrĭbŭs.	

Ămans, *loving.* **Iens,** *going.*

Singular.

	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	ămans,		iens,	
GEN.	ămantĭs,		euntĭs,	
DAT.	ămantī,		euntī,	
ACC.	ămantĕm,	ămans,	euntĕm,	iens,
VOC.	ămans,		iens,	
ABL.	ămantĕ, -ī.		euntĕ, -ī.	

Plural.

NOM.	ămantēs,	ămantĭa,	euntēs,	euntiă,
GEN.	ămantiŭm,		euntiŭm,	
DAT.	ămantĭbŭs,		euntĭbŭs,	
ACC.	ămantēs,	ămantia,	euntēs,	euntiă,
VOC.	ămantēs,	ămantia,	euntēs,	euntiă,
ABL.	ămantĭbŭs.		euntĭbŭs.	

1. The **ablative singular** of adjectives of one termination ends commonly in -ī; but when used as nouns they have -ĕ.

2. **Participles**, used as such, have -ĕ in the **ablative**; when used as adjectives or nouns, more commonly -ī.

3. Consonant-stems, in which the vowel before the final consonant is long, or which end in two consonants, have -ium in the **genitive plural**;

as, **audāc-ium, prūdent-ium.** Those which have a short vowel before the final consonant have **-um.** These rules, however, have some exceptions.

Participles also have **-ium**; but when used as nouns they have sometimes **-um.**

4. **Composite adjectives** follow in the **genitive plural** the declension of the nouns or adjectives from which they are derived: as, **concors, concordum; anceps, ancĭpĭtum; quadrŭpes, quadrŭpĕdum.** Their neuter plural, however, has generally **ia**: as, **ancĭpĭtia, versĭcŏlōria, quadrŭpĕdia.**

46. *IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.*

1. Some adjectives have two forms, one like **bŏnŭs**, the other like **tristĭs** or **prūdens**:

acclīvĭs (ŭs), *steep;*
bĭjŭgĭs (ŭs), *two-yoked;*
effrēnŭs (ĭs), *unbridled;*
ūnănĭmŭs (ĭs), *of one mind;*
hĭlărĭs (ŭs), *cheerful;*
imbēcillŭs (ĭs), *weak;*
imberbĭs (ŭs), *beardless;*
ĭnermŭs (ĭs), *unarmed;*
ŏpŭlentŭs (ŏpŭlens), *wealthy;*
viŏlentŭs (viŏlens), *violent.*

So **exănĭm-ŭs, ĭs; sĕmiănĭm-ŭs, ĭs; sublīm-ĭs, ŭs**; and others.
The Adverb **lūcŭlentĕr** implies an old form **lūcŭlens.**

2. Some adjectives are defective in Number:

pauci, *few,* is rarely sing. (Hor. *ad Pis.* 203); **plērīque,** *most,* is found sing. with collective words: "plērăque nōbĭlĭtas" (for plērīque nōbĭles), Sallust.

3. Some adjectives are defective in Case and Number:

a. Two cases:

Nom. Sing. **pernox,** Abl. pernocte, *all night.* Nom. and Acc. Sing. **nĕcessĕ,** *necessary,* from necessis (obsolete). **Necessum,** from necessus (obs.), is found in old poetry.

b. One case:

Nom. sing. **damnas,** *condemned* (for damnāt(u)s), with esto: but used also idiomatically as Nom. Pl. with sunto; **exspes,** *hopeless;* **pŏtis, pŏte,** *able, possible.*

c. Of some, the Nominatives are not found, but other cases only:

(sons), *guilty;* **sontes,** *the guilty:* but **insons,** *innocent,* has full cases. **Macte,** Voc. Sing., **macti,** Voc. Pl., are used with esto, este, *be blessed, be lucky,* etc. **Macte (macti) virtūte esto (este),** *good luck to you for your valor.*

d. The Dat. Sing. **frūgi,** *for good,* is used as an indeclinable adjective of all cases: **frugi servus,** *a good honest slave.* Opposed to this is the indeclinable adjective **nēquam,** *good for nothing.*

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

47. Adjectives are compared regularly by adding to the consonant-stem* of the Positive the terminations **-ior,** Masculine and Feminine, and **-ius,** Neuter, for the **Comparative,** and **-issĭmus, -a, -um,** for the **Superlative**: as,

Pos.	Comp.	Superl.
dūrŭs,	**dūriŏr,**	**dūrissĭmŭs,** *hard, harder, hardest.*
tristĭs,	**tristiŏr,**	**tristissĭmŭs,** *sad, sadder, saddest.*
fēlīx,	**fēlīciŏr,**	**fēlīcissĭmŭs,** *happy, happier, happiest.*

1. Before Augustus, the superlative ended in **ŭmus** instead of **ĭmus.**

48. Adjectives in **-ĕr** form the superlative by adding **-rĭmŭs** to the nominative:† as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
cĕlĕr, *swift;*	**cĕlĕriŏr,**	**cĕlerrĭmŭs.**
pulchĕr, *beautiful;*	**pulchriŏr,**	**pulcherrĭmŭs.**

Note.—Vĕtus has in the superlative **vĕterrĭmus** (comparative **vĕtustior,** rarely **vĕtĕrior**); **mātūrus, mātūrissĭmus** and **māturrĭmus; sălūbris, sălūberrĭmus.**

1. Six adjectives in **ĭlis** form the superlative by changing **ĭs** into **lĭmus**;† they are

făcĭlĭs, *easy;*	**sĭmĭlĭs,** *like;*	**grăcĭlĭs,** *slender;*
diffĭcĭlĭs, *hard;*	**dissĭmĭlĭs,** *unlike;*	**hŭmĭlĭs,** *lowly.*

Thus: Pos. **făcĭlĭs,** Comp. **făcĭliŏr,** Superl. **făcillĭmŭs.**

49. *IRREGULAR OR DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.*

1. The following adjectives are either deficient in the positive degree, or form their comparative and superlative irregularly or from a different stem:

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
bŏnus, good,	**mĕlior,** better,	**optĭmus,** best.
mălus, bad,	**pējor,** worse,	**pessĭmus,** worst.

* That is, the clipt stem, left after the removal from the full stem of the vowel after its last consonant.

† In other words, they double the last consonant of the uncontracted stem, and change the termination to **ĭmus.**

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
māgnus, great,	**mājor**, greater,	**māxĭmus**, greatest.
parvus, small,	**mĭnor**, less,	**mĭnĭmus**,* least.
multus, much,	**plūs** (*neut.*), more,	**plūrĭmus**, most.
nēquam (*indecl.*), wicked,	**nēquior**,	**nēquissĭmus**.
dīvĕs, **dīs**, } rich,	**dīvĭtior**, **dītior**,	**dīvĭtissĭmus** (Cic.). **dītissĭmus** (Aug. and post-Aug.).
sĕnex, old,	**sĕnior**,	(**nātu māxĭmus**).
jŭvĕnis, young,	**jūnior** (*sometimes post-Aug.* **jŭvĕnior**),	(**nātu mĭnĭmus**).
ădŭlescens, young,	**adulescentior**,	(**nātu mĭnĭmus**).
pŏtis, pŏtĕ (*indecl.*), able, possible,	**pŏtior**, better,	**pŏtissĭmus**, best.
(*no positive*, cf. ὠκύς),	**ōcĭor**, swifter,	**ōcissĭmus**.
frūgi (*indecl.*),	**frūgālior**,	**frūgālissĭmus**.
ĕgēns, **ĕgēnus**,	**egentior**,	**egentissĭmus**.
bĕnĕvŏlus, **bĕnĕvŏlens** (Plaut., Ter.),	**benevolentior**,	**benevolentissĭmus**.
mălĕvŏlus, **mălĕvŏlens** (Plaut.),	**malevolentior**,	**malevolentissĭmus**.
mălĕdĭcus, **mălĕdĭcens** (Plaut.),	**maledĭcentior**,	**maledĭcentissĭmus**.
bĕnĕfĭcus,	**beneficentior**,	**beneficentissĭmus**.
mălĕfĭcus,		**maleficentissĭmus**.
magnĭfĭcus,	**magnificentior**,	**magnificentissĭmus**.
mūnĭfĭcus,		**munificentissĭmus**.
mīrĭfĭcus,		**mirificissĭmus** (Ter. once).
hŏnōrĭfĭcus,	**honorificentĭor**,	**honorificentissĭmus**.
prōvĭdus, **prōvĭdens**,	**providentior**,	**providentissĭmus**.
cītrā (*adv.*), on this side,	**cĭtĕrior**,	**cĭtĭmus**.
dē (*prep.*), down from,	**dētĕrior**, worse,	**dēterrĭmus**.
extrā (*adv.*), **extĕr** (*adj.*), outside (*very rare in sing.*), **externus**,	**extĕrior**,	**extrēmus**. **extĭmus**.
infrā (*adv.*), **infĕr** (*adj.*), low, (*chiefly used in plur.*, the beings, places, etc., below),	**infĕrior**,	**infĭmus**. **īmus**.

* Also *parvissĭmus* (Varro and Lucretius).

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
intrā (*adv.*), within,	**intĕrior**, inner,	**intĭmus**, inmost.
post, postĕrus, next (*in time*),	**postĕrior**, hinder, later,	**postrēmus**, last. **postŭmus**, last-born.
prae (*prep.*), before,	**prĭor**, former,	**prīmus**, first.
prŏpe (*adv.*), near,	**prŏpĭor**,	**proxĭmus**.
suprā (*adv.*), **sŭpĕr** (*adj.*), high, (*chiefly used in plur.* the beings, places, etc., above),	**sŭpĕrior**,	**suprēmus**, highest, last (*in time*). **summus**.
ultrā (*adv.*), beyond,	**ultĕrior**, farther,	**ultĭmus**, farthest.

2. The following have the superlative, but not the comparative: **bellus, caesius, dīversus, falsus, inclŭtus, invictus, invītus, mĕrĭtus, nŏvus, săcer, văfer.**

3. The following have the comparative, but not the superlative:

Verbals in **-ĭlis** (except **amābilissimus, mōbilissimus, fertilissimus, ūtilissimus, nōbilissimus**):

ălăcer, agrestis, arcānus, caecus, diŭturnus, exīlis, jējūnus, jŭvĕnis, longinquus, oblīquus, ŏpīmus, proclīvis, prōnus, sătur, segnis, sĕnex, sērus, sŭpīnus, surdus, tăcĭturnus, tempestīvus, vīcīnus.

Sĭnister has the superlative **sĭnistĭmus** only in augurial language.

50. Many adjectives, which express an absolute state or quality (as *material*, e. g., **aureus**; *time*, e. g., **nocturnus**; *special relationship*, e. g., **pāternus**), which does not readily admit the idea of a higher or lower degree, have no comparative or superlative. In some others they are wanting without any such apparent reason.

If a comparison is required in such adjectives, the defect is supplied by adding **măgis** and **maxĭme**. Thus, **magis mīrus**, *more wonderful*, **maxime mirus**, *most wonderful.*

Adjectives used only in the positive are chiefly of the following classes:

1. **Derivatives** ending in **-ĭcus, -īnus, -īvus, -ōrus, -tĭmus, -ŭlus, -ālis** or **-āris, -īlis**, and (from nouns) in **-ātus** and **-ītus**, as **cīvĭcus, nātūrālis**, etc., **barbātus, crīnītus.**

Exceptions: **aequalior; capitalior; civilior** (Ov.); **familiarior, familiarissimus; frugalior, frugalissimus; hospitalissimus** (Cic.); **juvenilior** (Ov.); **liberalior, liberalissimus; popularior; puerilior** (Hor.); **salutarior.**

2. **Compounds**; as, **inops, magnanĭmus**, etc.

Except those named above from **volo, dico, facio** (49, 1).

Except also **amentior, amentissimus; concordior, concordissimus; deformior; dementior, dementissimus; immānior, immanissimus; inertior, inertissimus; ingentior; insignior; misericordior; perennior; sollertior, sollertissimus.**

3. Adjectives ending in **-us**, preceded by a vowel.

Exc. *a.* **U** often is, or becomes, consonantal, and thus allows a comparative or superlative without difficulty; as in **-quus** and **-guis**; *e. g.* **antīquior, antiquissimus; pinguior, pinguissimus; propinquior; salutarior; tenuis, tenuior, tenuissimus.**

b. **industrior** (Plaut.); **piisimus** (condemned by Cic. *Phil.* 13, 19, but used by Antony, Sen., Curt., Tac.).

4. The following, also, have at least ordinarily only the positive: **albus, almus, calvus, cānus, claudus, curvus, fĕrus, gnārus, gnāvus, lassus, mĕdiŏcris, mĕmor, immĕmor, mīrus, rŭdis, trux.**

51. Many **present** and **past participles** have comparatives and superlatives; as,

1. Present Participle:

amans, appĕtens, ardens, contĭnens, egens, fervens, flagrans, florens, indulgens, neglĕgens, patiens, tempĕrans, tuens, valens, etc.

2. Past Participle:

acceptus, accurātus, adstrictus, apertus, aversus, concitātus, conjunctus, contemptus, dissolūtus, doctus, effūsus, erudītus, exoptātus, expedītus, instructus, intentus, munītus, obstinātus, parātus, perdĭtus, perfectus, promptus, refertus, remōtus, etc.

52. *COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.*

1. *Adverbs* in **ē, ō, ĕ, tĕr,** etc., derived from Adjectives, often follow their Comparison, with Comparative ending **ŭs**, Superlative **ē (ō, um)**:

Adj.	Adv.		Compar.	Superl.
dignus	dignē	*worthily*	dignius	dignissĭmē
văfer	vafrē	*cunningly*	vafrius	vaferrĭmē
tūtus	tuto	*safely*	tutius	tutissĭmē (ō)
făcĭlis	facĭlĕ	*easily*	facilius	facillĭmē
fortis	fortĭter	*bravely*	fortius	fortissĭmē
constans	constanter	*firmly*	constantius	constantissĭmē
audax	audacter	*boldly*	audācius	audācissĭmē
mĕrĭtus	merĭto	*deservedly*	——	meritissĭmō(ē)
ūber	ubertim	*abundantly*	uberius	uberrĭmē

Adj.	Adv.		Compar.		Superl.	
bŏnus	bĕnĕ	*well*	mĕlius	*better*	optĭmē	*best*
mălus	mălĕ	*ill*	pejus	*worse*	pessĭmē	*worst*
magnus	magnopĕrĕ	*greatly*	măgĭs	*more*	maxĭmē	*most*
parvus	{ paulum	*a little* }	mĭnus	*less*	{ mĭnĭmē	*very little*
	părum	*too little*			mĭnĭmum	*least*
multus	multum	*much*	plūs	*more*	plūrĭmum	*very much*
——	——	——	ōcius	*quicker*	ōcissĭmē	*very quickly*

Adv.		Compar.		Superl.	
——	——	prius	*sooner*	{ prīmum	*first*
				{ prīmo	*at first*
——	——	pŏtius	*rather*	potissĭmum	*preferably*
——	——	dētĕrius	*worse*	deterrĭmē	*very badly*
intus	*within*	interius		intĭmē	
post	*after*	posterius		postrēmo	
prŏpe	*nearly*	propius		proxĭmē	

So also: saepĕ, *often*, saepiŭs, saepissĭme; diū, *long*, diūtiŭs, diūtissĭme; pĕnĭtŭs, *deeply*, pĕnĭtiŭs, pĕnĭtissĭme; sătĭs, *enough*, sătiŭs; sĕcŭs, *otherwise*, sētiŭs; tempĕrī, *betimes*, tempĕriŭs; nūpĕr, *lately*, nūperrĭme.

Note.—Măgĭs means *more in degree;* **plūs**, *more in quantity.*

53. *NOTES ON COMPARISON.*

1. **The Comparative** may imply a degree *too* high (higher than is right), or *rather* high, *somewhat* high (higher than ordinary): as, **vŏluptas cum major est atque longior**, etc., when pleasure is *too great* and *too long continued;* **sĕnectus est lŏquācior**, old age is *rather talkative.*

2. When **two adjectives or adverbs** are **compared with each other, both** are often put in the comparative: as, **longior quam lātior**, *rather long than broad;* **fortius quam fēlīcius**, *with more courage than success.* But with **măgis—quam**, each word is in the positive: as, **măgis audacter quam parātē.**

3. **The Superlative** may denote simply a *very* high degree: as, **vir doctissĭmus**, a *very learned man* (*i. e.*, in the highest grade of learning).

4. **Vel**, *even*, and **quam**, with or without **possum**, *as much as possible*, before the Superlative, render it more emphatic.

5. The Superlative with **quisque** denotes **each single one** who possesses the quality in the highest degree, but is best translated with *all* or *always:* as, **optĭmus quisque**, *all the best men*, or *the best man always.*

6. **Per** and **prae** in composition often denote a **high degree** of a quality; **sub** a **low degree.**

Numerals.

54. The Cardinal Numerals are adjectives answering the question **Quot**, *how many?* as, **ūnus**, *one;* **quinque**, *five.*

1. **The Ordinal Numerals** are adjectives answering the question **Quŏtus**, *which in order of number?* as, **quintus**, *the fifth.*

2. **The Distributive Numerals** are adjectives answering the question **Quotēni,** *how many each?* or *how many each time?* as, **quini,** *five apiece,* or *by fives, five at a time.*

3. **The Numeral Adverbs** answer the question **Quotiens,** *how often?* as, **semel,** *once;* **quinquies** (or **quinquiens**), *five times.*

CARDINAL NUMERALS.

Arabic.	Roman Symbols.	Cardinals.
1	I	ūnus, a, um, *one.*
2	II	duŏ, ae, o, *two.*
3	III	trēs, tria.
4	IIII *or* IV	quattuor.
5	V	quinque.
6	VI	sex.
7	VII	septem.
8	VIII	octo.
9	VIIII *or* IX	nŏvem.
10	X	dĕcem.
11	XI	undĕcim.
12	XII	duodĕcim.
13	XIII	trĕdĕcim; decem et tres; tres et decem.
14	XIIII *or* XIV	quattuordĕcim; decem et quattuor.
15	XV	quindĕcim.
16	XVI	sēdĕcim; sexdĕcim; decem et sex.
17	XVII	decem et septem; s. et d.; septemdĕcim.
18	XVIII	duŏdēvīginti (decem et octo).
19	XVIIII *or* XIX	undēvīginti (decem et novem).
20	XX	vīginti.
21	XXI	unus et viginti; viginti unus.
22	XXII	duo et viginti; viginti duo.
28	XXVIII	duodetrīginta (octo et viginti).
29	XXIX	undetrīginta (novem et viginti).
30	XXX	trīgintā.
40	XL	quadrāginta.
50	L	quinquāginta.
60	LX	sexāginta.
70	LXX	septuāginta.
80	LXXX	octōginta.
90	XC	nōnāginta.
98	IIC	nonaginta octo; octo et nonaginta.
99	IC	nonaginta novem; undēcentum.

CARDINAL NUMBERS—(Continued).

Arabic.	Roman Symbols.	Cardinals.
100	C	centum.
101	CI	centum et unus; centum unus.
136	CXXXVI	centum et triginta sex; c. tr. s.
200	CC	dŭcenti, ae, a.
300	CCC	trĕcenti, ae, a
400	CCCC	quadringenti, ae, a.
500	IↃ *or* D	quingenti, ae, a.
600	IↃC *or* DC	sescenti, ae, a.
700	IↃCC *or* DCC	septingenti, ae, a.
800	IↃCCC *or* DCCC	octingenti, ae, a.
900	IↃCCCC *or* DCCCC	nongenti, ae, a.
1,000	CIↃ *or* M	mille.
2,000	CIↃCIↃ *or* MM	duo millia (bis mille).
5,000	IↃↃ	quinque millia.
10,000	CCIↃↃ	decem millia.
50,000	IↃↃↃ	quinquaginta millia.
100,000	CCCIↃↃↃ	centum millia; centēna millia.
1,000,000	CCCCIↃↃↃↃ	dĕcies centum millia; dĕcies.

ORDINALS, DISTRIBUTIVES, AND NUMERAL ADVERBS.

Arabic.	Ordinals. -us, -a, -um.	Distributives. -i, -ae, -a.	Numeral Adverbs. (-ies or -iens.)
1	prīmus, *first*	singŭli, *one by one*	sĕmel, *once.*
2	sĕcundus (*or* alter), *second*	bīni, *two by two*	bis, *twice.*
3	tertius, *third*	terni *or* trīni	ter, *thrice.*
4	quartus	quăterni	quăter, *four times.*
5	quintus	quīni	quinquies *or* quinquiens.
6	sextus	sēni	sexies.
7	septĭmus	septēni	septies.
8	octāvus	octōni	octies.
9	nōnus	nŏvēni	nŏvies.
10	dĕcĭmus	dēni	dĕcies.

ORDINALS, DISTRIBUTIVES, AND NUMERAL ADVERBS (*Continued*).

Arabic.	Ordinals. -us, -a, -um.	Distributives. -i, -ae, -a.	Numeral Adverbs. (-ies or -iens.)
11	undĕcĭmus	undēni	undĕcies.
12	duodecimus	duodeni	duodecies.
13	tertius decimus (decimus et tertius)	terni deni	terdecies *or* trĕdecies.
14	quartus decimus (decimus et quartus)	quaterni deni	quattuordecies *or* quater d.
15	quintus decimus	quini deni	quindecies *or* quinquies d.
16	sextus decimus	seni deni	sēdecies *or* sexies decies.
17	septimus decimus	septeni deni	septiesdecies.
18	duodevīcēsĭmus (octavus decimus)	duodevicēni	duodevicies *or* octies d.
19	undevicesimus (nonus decimus)	undeviceni	undevicies *or* novies d.
20	vīcēsĭmus (vigesimus) *or* vicensimus	vīcēni	vīcies.
21	unus et vicesimus (primus et vic.; vic. pr.)	viceni singuli	semel et vicies *or* v. s.
22	alter et vicesimus (v. a.; duo et vic.)	viceni bini	bis et vicies *or* v. b.
28	duodetricesimus (octāvus et vicesimus)	duodetriceni	octies et vicies.
29	undetricesimus (nonus et vicesimus)	undetriceni	novies et vicies.
30	tricesimus (trigesimus) *or* tricensimus	triceni	trīcies.
40	quadragesimus	quadrageni	quadrāgies.
50	quinquagesimus	quinquageni	quinquāgies.
60	sexagesimus	sexageni	sexāgies.
70	septuagesimus	septuageni	septuāgies.
80	octogesimus	octogeni	octōgies.
90	nonagesimus	nonageni	nōnāgies.
98	nonagesimus octavus	nonageni octoni	nonagies octies.
99	undēcentesimus	undecenteni	undecenties.

Arabic.	Ordinals. -us, -a, -um.	Distributives. -i, -ae, -a.	Numeral Adverbs. (-ies or -iens.)
100	centēsĭmus *or* centensimus	centēni	centies.
101	centesimus primus	centeni singuli	centies semel.
136	centesimus tricesimus sextus	centeni triceni seni	centies tricies sexies.
200	dŭcentesimus	duceni	ducenties.
300	trĕcentesimus	treceni	trecenties.
400	quadringentesimus	quadringeni	quadringenties.
500	quingentesimus	quingeni	quingenties.
600	sexcentesimus: sesc.	seceni	sescenties.
700	septingentesimus	septingeni	septingenties.
800	octingentesimus	octingeni	octingenties.
900	nongentesimus	nongeni	nongenties.
1,000	millesimus *or* millensimus	singula millia (mīlia)	millies.
2,000	bis millesimus	bina millia	bis millies.
5,000	quinquies millesimus	quina millia	quinquies millies.
10,000	decies millesimus	dena millia	decies millies.
50,000	quinquagies millesimus	quinquagena millia	quinquagies millies.
100,000	centies millesimus	centena millia	centies millies.
500,000	quingenties millesimus	quingena millia	quingenties millies.
1,000,000	millies millesimus	decies centena millia	decies centies millies.

55.—1. Unus, *one*, **duo**, *two*, and **tres**, *three*, are thus declined:

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	ūnŭs,	ūnă,	ūnŭm,	ūnī,	ūnae,	ūnă,
GEN.	ūnĭ̆ŭs,	ūnĭ̆ŭs,	ūnĭ̆ŭs,	ūnōrŭm,	ūnārŭm,	ūnōrŭm,
DAT.	ūnī,	ūnī,	ūnī,	ūnīs,	ūnīs,	ūnīs,
ACC.	ūnŭm,	ūnăm,	ūnŭm,	ūnōs,	ūnās,	ūnă,
ABL.	ūnō.	ūnā.	ūnō.	ūnīs.	ūnīs.	ūnīs.

	Plural.				
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	dŭŏ,	dŭae,	dŭŏ,	trēs,	trĭă,
GEN.	dŭōrŭm (duum),	dŭārŭm,	dŭōrŭm (duum),	trĭŭm,	trĭŭm,
DAT.	dŭōbŭs,	dŭābŭs,	dŭōbŭs,	trĭbŭs,	trĭbŭs,
ACC.	dŭōs *or* dŭŏ,	dŭās,	dŭŏ,	trēs (trīs),	trĭă,
ABL.	dŭōbŭs.	dŭābŭs.	dŭōbŭs.	trĭbŭs.	trĭbŭs.

2. The vocative ūnĕ is found in Catullus xxxvii. 17. **Ambo,** *both*, is declined like **duo.**

3. The other cardinal numbers from **quattuor,** *four*, to **centum,** *a hundred*, are undeclined; the hundreds, beginning with **ducentī,** are declined like the plural of **bŏnus**; **mille,** *a thousand*, is an indeclinable adjective (sometimes noun); the neuter plural **millia** (sometimes **mīlia**), *thousands*, is a noun, declined like **mărĭă,** the plural of **mărĕ.**

4. **The plural of ūnus** is used with nouns which have **only the plural** number: as, **ūna castra,** *one camp;* **ūni Ubii,** *the Ubii alone.* For higher numbers, such nouns use the distributives: as, **bīnae littĕrae,** *two epistles.* **Trīni** is used for **terni.**

a. **Bīni** is used to express *a pair:* as, **bīna manu crispans hastīlia.**

5. Multiplication is expressed by prefixing numeral adverbs to the distributives: as, **bis dēnis nāvĭbŭs,** *with twice ten ships.*

6. **In compound numbers above twenty** and under one hundred, either the smaller number with **et** comes first, or the larger without **et.**

7. In compound numbers **above one hundred,** the larger with or without **et** generally precedes the smaller.

8. **The thousands** are expressed by prefixing the cardinal numbers to **millia,** or (chiefly in poetry) by prefixing the numeral adverbs to **mille.**

9. **The numbers above one hundred thousand** are expressed by the numeral adverbs joined to **centum millia (mīlia)** or **centēna millia (mīlia). Centēna millia** is often omitted after the numeral adverb; thus, **decies,** may stand for **decies centēna millia,** *one million.*

10. **Unus** is often used in compound numbers for **prīmus:** as, **ūno et octōgēsimo anno,** *in (his) eighty-first year.*

11. **The numbers compounded with eight and nine** are commonly expressed by a subtraction of **duo** and **unus** from **the next multiple of ten:** as, **duodeviginti,** *eighteen;* **undecentum,** *ninety-nine;* but **octōdĕcim, nŏvendĕcim,** etc., are sometimes found.

12. **The ordinal numbers,** not the cardinal, are used in giving a date; thus *in the year* 1883 is *anno millēsimo octingentēsimo octōgēsimo tertio.*

13. In manuscripts, **thousands** were sometimes indicated by a line over the Roman numerals: as, $\overline{\text{LX}}$, *sixty thousand;* and **hundreds of thousands** by lines on three sides: as, |$\overline{\text{XX}}$|, *two millions.*

14. **Multiplicatives,** compounded with a root of number and **plic-,** answer the question **quŏtŭplex,** *how many fold?* They are **simplex,** *simple;* **dŭplex,** *twofold;* **trĭplex, quadrŭplex, quincŭplex, septemplex, decemplex, centŭplex, multĭplex,** and **sescŭplex** or **sesquĭplex.**

15. **Proportionals** answer the question *how much more?* They are **simplus, dŭplus, trĭplus, quadrŭplus, quincŭplus, septŭplus, octŭplus,** and **sescŭplus.**

56. *NUMERAL EXPRESSION OF FRACTIONS.*

The Romans expressed fractions in words in several ways:

1. All fractions, with 1 for numerator, are denoted by ordinal numbers, with or without **pars**, as $\frac{1}{2}$, **dimidium** (not **dimidia**) or **dimidia pars**; $\frac{1}{3}$, **tertia** or **tertia pars**; $\frac{1}{4}$, **quarta**, etc.

2. All fractions with a numerator less by one than the denominator are denoted by the cardinal with **partes** simply, as $\frac{2}{3}$, **duae partes**; $\frac{3}{4}$, **tres partes**; $\frac{4}{5}$, **quattuor partes**; $\frac{5}{6}$, **quinque partes**.

3. All fractions with 12 or its multiples for a denominator, are denoted by the parts of an **as**, the Roman unit of weight, length, or measure. (The **as** of weight is called **libra**, of length, **pes**, of area, **jugĕrum**.) The **as** consisted originally of 12 **unciae**,* and there were distinct names and signs for each multiple of the **uncia** and for some fractions of it.

Unciae.		Value.	Sign.
12	**assis** *or* **as**, *a pound* (etc.), ...	1 as.	1
11	**deunx** (**de-uncia**), *an ounce off*, . . .	$\frac{11}{12}$	S = = —
10	**dextans** (**desextans**), *a sixth off*, . . .	$\frac{5}{6}$	S = =
9	**dodrans** (**dequadrans**), *a fourth off*, . .	$\frac{3}{4}$	S = —
8	**bessis** *or* **bes** (**dui-assis**), *a two-as* †, . .	$\frac{2}{3}$	S =
7	**septunx** (**septem unciae**), *a seven-ounce*, .	$\frac{7}{12}$	S —
6	**semissis** *or* **semis** (**semi-assis**), *a half-as*, .	$\frac{1}{2}$	S
5	**quincunx** (**quinque unciae**), *a five-ounce*, .	$\frac{5}{12}$	= = —
4	**triens** (**tri-**), *a third*, ...	$\frac{1}{3}$	= =
3	**quadrans** (**quattuor-**) *or* **teruncius**, *a fourth*, .	$\frac{1}{4}$	= —
2	**sextans** (**sexto-**), *a sixth*, ...	$\frac{1}{6}$	=
$1\frac{1}{2}$	**sescuncia** (**sesqui-uncia**), *one and a half ounce*,	$\frac{1}{8}$	Σ —
1	**uncia**, *an ounce*, ...	$\frac{1}{12}$	— or ∼
$\frac{1}{2}$	**semuncia**, *a half ounce*, ...	$\frac{1}{24}$	Σ or £
$\frac{1}{4}$	**sicilĭcus**, *a Sicilian* farthing, ...	$\frac{1}{48}$	Ɔ
$\frac{1}{6}$	**sextŭla**, *a little sixth*, ...	$\frac{1}{72}$	ʔ

Of the above, the **sicilicus** was not used till imperial times. The **scriptŭlum** or **scripulum** (*γράμμα*) was also used for $\frac{1}{24}$ of the **uncia**, $= \frac{1}{288}$ **as**. The fraction $\frac{1}{36}$ **as** was denoted by **binae sextulae**, or **duella**; $\frac{1}{144}$ **as** by **dimidia sextula**, or **duo scripula**.

The above-named parts of the **as** were used as mere duodecimal fractions, applicable without any specific concrete meaning to any unit. Hence **heres ex asse**, *heir to the whole inheritance;* **ex triente**, *to a third;* **ex dimidia et sextante**, *to two-thirds* (*a half and a sixth*).

4. Other fractions, not expressible by one of the above methods, are de-

---

* Hence *inch* as well as *ounce* is derived from *uncia*.

† This term must either have been formed when the **as** was equal to 4 **unciae**; or be short for *two-thirds* of an **as**.

noted by the cardinal for a numerator, and the ordinal for the denominator, as, $\frac{4}{7}$, **quattuor septimae**; $\frac{7}{9}$, **septem nonae.**

5. Some fractions are denoted by resolution into their components, as, $\frac{3}{4}$, **dimidia et quarta**; $\frac{2}{3}$, **pars dimidia et sexta**; $\frac{4}{9}$, **pars tertia et nona**; $\frac{10}{21}$, **pars tertia et septima.**

6. Sometimes further division is resorted to, as, $\frac{1}{10}$, **dimidia quinta.** And **dimidia tertia** is used for **sexta**; **dimidia quarta** for **octava.**

7. **Sesquĭ**, $1\frac{1}{2}$, is used only in compounds, as, **sesquilībra**, $1\frac{1}{2}$ lbs.

8. **Sesquialtĕra ratio** is $1\frac{1}{2} : 1 :: 3 : 2$. [ROBY; KENNEDY.

PRONOUNS.

57.—1. The Personal Pronouns are thus declined:

FIRST PERSON.

	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	ĕgŏ, *I.*	nōs, *we.*
GEN.	mĕī, *of me.*	nostrī *or* nostrum, *of us.*
DAT.	mĭhĭ, *to* or *for me.*	nōbīs, *to* or *for us.*
ACC.	mē, *me.*	nōs, *us.*
ABL.	mē, *from, with,* or *by me.*	nōbīs, *from, with,* or *by us.*

SECOND PERSON.

	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	tū, *thou.*	vōs, *ye* or *you.*
GEN.	tŭī, *of thee.*	vestrī *or* vestrum, *of you.*
DAT.	tĭbĭ, *to* or *for thee.*	vōbīs, *to* or *for you.*
ACC.	tē, *thee.*	vōs, *you.*
VOC.	tū, *O thou.*	vōs, *O ye.*
ABL.	tē, *from, with,* or *by thee.*	vōbīs, *from, with,* or *by you.*

REFLEXIVE.

Singular and Plural.

GEN. sŭī, *of himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves.*
DAT. sĭbĭ, *to* or *for himself,* etc.
ACC. sē *or* sēsē, *himself,* etc.
ABL. sē *or* sēsē, *from, with,* or *by himself,* etc.

2. The nominative and vocative of the reflexive pronoun are wanting.
3. The old genitive of the first and second persons was **mis, tis.**
4. **Mī** for **mihi** is found in Cicero and in the poets.
5. The forms **med** and **ted** occur as accusatives and ablatives in Plautus.

6. **Nostrum** and **vestrum** are used only after partitives. They are the contracted genitives plural of the possessive pronouns **noster** and **vester.** In like manner **mei, tui,** and **sui** are the genitives singular of the neuter possessive pronouns.

7. The preposition **cum,** *with,* is affixed to the ablative of these pronouns in both numbers: as, **mecum,** *with me;* **vobiscum,** *with you.*

8. The suffix **-mĕt** may be joined (1) to **ego** and its cases, except the gen. plural: as, **egŏmet,** *I myself;* (2) to the cases of **tu,** except the nom. sing.: as, **vosmet,** *ye yourselves;* (3) to **se** and **sibi,** as **sibĭmet.**

9. The suffix **-tĕ** may be joined to **tu**: as, **tūtĕ.** We find also **tūtĕmĕt,** *thou thyself.*

58. The Possessive Pronouns meus, mea, meum, *my* or *mine;* **tuus, tua, tuum,** *thy* or *thine;* **suus, sua, suum,** *his own, her own, its own, their own;* and **cujus, cuja, cujum,** *whose, whose?* are declined like **bonus.**

1. **Meus** has **mī,** rarely **meus,** in the vocative singular masculine. **Tuus** and **suus** have no vocative.

2. **The Possessive Pronouns noster, nostra, nostrum,** *our,* and **vester, vestra, vestrum,** *your,* are declined like **piger.**

3. **The Demonstratives** have no corresponding Possessives, but their Genitives supply the want: as, **ejus lĭber,** *his book;* **eōrum ŏpes,** *their wealth.*

4. From the possessives **noster, vester,** and **cujus** are derived the **Patrials, nostras,** *of our country;* **vestras,** *of your country;* **cūjas,** *of what country?*

5. The intensive suffix **-mĕt** may be joined to the cases of **suus**: as, **suămet facta;** the suffix **-ptĕ** to the abl. sing. of the possessive pronouns: as, **meopte consilio,** *by my advice.*

59. The Demonstrative Pronouns are thus declined:

I. UNEMPHATIC.

Ĭs, *that;* or, *he, she, it.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	ĭs,	eă,	ĭd,	eī *or* iī,	eae,	eă,
GEN.	ējŭs,	ējŭs,	ējŭs,	eōrŭm,	eārŭm,	eōrŭm,
DAT.	eī,	eī,	eī,	eīs *or* iīs,	eīs *or* iīs,	eīs *or* iīs,
ACC.	eŭm,	eăm,	ĭd,	eōs,	eās,	eă,
ABL.	eō,	eā,	eō.	eīs *or* iīs,	eīs *or* iīs,	eīs *or* iīs.

II. EMPHATIC.

Hĭc, *this* (*near me*); or, *he, she, it.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	hĭc,	haec,	hŏc,	hī,	hae,	haec,
Gen.	hūjŭs,	hūjŭs,	hūjŭs,	hōrŭm,	hārŭm,	hōrŭm,
Dat.	huīc,	huīc,	huīc,	hīs,	hīs,	hīs,
Acc.	hunc,	hanc,	hŏc,	hōs,	hās,	haec,
Abl.	hōc,	hāc,	hōc.	hīs,	hīs,	hīs.

Istĕ, *that* (*near you*); or, *he, she, it.*

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	istĕ,	istă,	istŭd,	istī,	istae,	istă,
Gen.	istīus,	istīus,	istīus,	istōrŭm,	istārŭm,	istōrŭm,
Dat.	istī,	istī,	istī,	istīs,	istīs,	istīs,
Acc.	istŭm,	istăm,	istŭd,	istōs,	istās,	istă,
Abl.	istō,	istā,	istō.	istīs,	istīs,	istīs.

Illĕ, *that* (*yonder*); or, *he, she, it.*

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	illĕ,	illā,	illŭd,	illī,	illae,	illă,
Gen.	illīŭs,	illīŭs,	illīŭs,	illōrŭm,	illārŭm,	illōrŭm,
Dat.	illī,	illī,	illī,	illīs,	illīs,	illīs,
Acc.	illŭm,	illăm,	illŭd,	illōs,	illās,	illă,
Abl.	illō,	illā,	illō.	illīs,	illīs,	illīs.

60.—1. **The Definitive Pronouns** are thus declined:

Idem, *same.*

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	īdĕm,	eădĕm,	ĭdĕm,	iīdĕm(eīdĕm),	eaedĕm,	eădĕm,
Gen.	ējusdĕm,	ējusdĕm,	ējusdĕm,	eōrundĕm,	eārundĕm,	eōrundĕm,
Dat.	eīdem,	eīdĕm,	eīdem,	eisdĕm *or* iisdĕm,	eisdĕm *or* iisdĕm,	eisdĕm *or* iisdĕm,
Acc.	eundem,	eandĕm,	ĭdĕm,	eosdĕm,	easdĕm,	eădĕm,
Abl.	eōdĕm,	eādĕm,	eōdĕm.	eisdĕm *or* iisdĕm,	eisdĕm *or* iisdĕm,	eisdĕm *or* iisdĕm.

Ipsĕ, *self.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	ipsĕ,	ipsă,	ipsŭm,	ipsī,	ipsae,	ipsă,
Gen.	ipsīŭs,	ipsīŭs,	ipsīŭs,	ipsōrŭm,	ipsārŭm,	ipsōrŭm,
Dat.	ipsī,	ipsī,	ipsī,	ipsīs,	ipsīs,	ipsīs,
Acc.	ipsŭm,	ipsăm,	ipsŭm,	ipsōs,	ipsās,	ipsă,
Voc.	ipsĕ,	ipsă,	ipsŭm,	ipsī,	ipsae,	ipsă,
Abl.	ipsō,	ipsā,	ipsō.	ipsīs,	ipsīs,	ipsīs.

2. The demonstrative affix **c** (for **cĕ**) is added to **iste** and **ille,** making a pronominal declension as follows:

	Singular.					
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	istĭc,	istaec,	istōc *or* istūc,	illĭc,	illaec,	illōc *or* illūc,
Acc.	istunc,	istanc,	istōc *or* istūc,	illunc,	illanc,	illōc *or* illūc,
Abl.	istōc,	istāc,	istōc.	illōc,	illāc,	illōc.
			Plural.			
Nom. and Acc.			istaec.			illaec.

Cĕ sometimes appears in full: as, **istiusce, illosce,** etc.

61. The adverbs **ĭbĭ, hīc, illīc,** and **istīc** are **locative cases** of **is, hic, illĭc,** and **istĭc** respectively.

1. Of **hic,** the fuller forms **hosce, hasce, hujusce** are found in Cicero; the nom. pl. fem. **haec** is found in Varro, Lucretius, and Vergil. Plautus has **hice** (nom. sing. m.), **hoce** (nom. n.), **hisce** (nom. pl. m.), **hībus** (dat. and abl. pl.).

2. Old forms of **ille,** in Ennius, Lucretius, and Vergil, are **olli** (dat. sing. and nom. pl. m.), **ollis** (dat. and abl. pl.), and in Lucretius, **ollas, olla,** acc. pl.

3. **Ipse** is also called an **intensive** pronoun. It has an old nominative, **ipsus.** It is compounded of **is** and **pse** for **pte**; and the **is** was, in the earlier times, declined. Thus, Plautus has **eumpsĕ, eampse, eāpse,** etc. The phrase, **reapse,** i. e., **re eapse,** *in reality,* occurs in Cicero. **Ipse** sometimes takes the suffix **met.**

4. A superlative, **ipsissimus,** is found in the comic poets.

5. The interjection **ecce,** *lo!* coalesces, in comic poetry, with cases of **is, ille, iste:** as, **ecca, eccum, eccam,** etc.; **eccilla, eccillum,** etc.; **eccistam,** etc. **En,** *lo!* also coalesces with **ille** in the accusative forms **ellum, ellam, ellos, ellas.**

62.—1. The relative pronoun is thus declined:

Qui, *who, which.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	quī,	quae,	quŏd,	quī,	quae,	quae,
GEN.	cūjŭs,	cūjŭs,	cūjŭs,	quōrŭm,	quārŭm,	quōrŭm,
DAT.	cuī,	cuī,	cuī,	quĭbŭs,	quĭbŭs,	quĭbŭs,
ACC.	quĕm,	quăm,	quŏd,	quōs,	quās,	quae,
ABL.	quō,	quā,	quō.	quĭbŭs,	quĭbŭs,	quĭbŭs.

2. **The interrogative substantive pronoun** is thus declined:

Quis, *who? what?*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	quis,	(quae),	quĭd,	qui,	quae,	quae,
GEN.	cūjus,	cūjus,	cūjus,	quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum,
DAT.	cuī,	cuī,	cuī,	quĭbus,	quĭbus,	quĭbus,
ACC.	quem,	quam,	quid,	quos,	quas,	quae,
ABL.	quō,	quā,	quō.	quĭbus,	quĭbus,	quĭbus.

3. **Quis** is sometimes feminine in the comic poets.

4. **The interrogative adjective pronoun, qui, quae, quod,** *what? which?* is declined like the **relative pronoun.**

5. **The indefinite substantive pronoun, quis, (qua), quid,** *any one, some one,* is declined like the **interrogative quis,** but in the neut. plur. it has **qua** as well as **quae.**

6. **The indefinite adjective pronoun, qui, qua** or **quae, quod,** *any, some,* is declined like the **relative pronoun,** but has **qua** as well as **quae** in the singular and plural.

7. Exceptionally, **quis** is found as an adjective pronoun, and **qui** as an interrogative substantive pronoun.

8. The gen. and dat. sing. **quoius** and **quoi** are found in old writers.

9. **Quī** is sometimes found as an abl., in all genders, and in old writers even in the plural, of the relative and interrogative pronouns, also as an adverbial interrogative, *how?* and occasionally as an indefinite adverb, *in any way.*

10. The preposition **cum** is affixed to the ablative, as in the personal pronouns, thus: *quōcum, quācum, quīcum, quĭbuscum.*

11. A nom. and acc. plural, **ques**, occurs in Cato and Pacuvius; a dat. and abl. plural, **quīs**, in Varro, Sallust, and Tacitus, rarely in Cicero.

12. The compounds of **qui, quis**, are mainly declined like them.

13. **Aliquis**, *some one*, *something*, a compound of the indefinite **quis** with the stem **ali-**, is thus declined:

	Singular. Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Plural. Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	ălĭquĭs,	alĭquă,	alĭquĭd,	alĭquī,	alĭquae,	alĭquă,
Gen.	alicūjus,	alicūjus,	alicūjus,	aliquōrum,	aliquārum,	aliquōrum,
Dat.	alĭcuī,	alĭcuī,	alĭcuī,	aliquĭbus,	aliquĭbus,	aliquĭbus,
Acc.	alĭquem,	alĭquam,	alĭquid,	alĭquos,	alĭquas,	alĭqua.
Abl.	alĭquō,	alĭquā,	alĭquō.	aliquĭbus,	aliquĭbus.	aliquĭbus.

Note.—The adj. pronoun has generally **ălĭqui, ălĭquod**. The fem. sing. **ălĭquae** occurs rarely.

14. **Other relative, interrogative, and indefinite compound pronouns are:**

1. *a.* **quisnam, quidnam: quinam, quaenam, quodnam**, *who, what?*
b. **uternam, utrănam, utrumnam**, *whether of the two?*

2. **ecquis, ecqua, ecquid: ecqui, ecquae, ecquod**, *any one?*
So **numquis, siquis, nē quis**, etc.

3. **alterŭter**, *one or other;* Gen. **alterutrīus** *or* **alterĭus utrīus**, etc.

4. **quispiam, quaepiam, quippiam (quodpiam)**, *any one* (positively).

5. **quisquam, quicquam**, *any one at all* (with **non, haud, vix**, etc.).

6. **quidam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam)**, *a certain one.*

7. *a.* **quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque**, *whosoever, whatsoever.* (Poets often disjoin the affix *cumque* from the relative: *Quae te cumque domat Venus.* Hor.)
b. **utercumque, utracumque, utrumcumque**, *whichever of two.*

8. **quisquis**, *whosoever*, **quidquid**, *whatsoever;* Acc. (**quemquem**), **quidquid**; Gen. (**cuicuimŏdi**); Abl. (**quoquo, quaqua, quoquo**), etc.; Plur., Dat. and Abl. (**quibusquĭbus**). Some of these forms are rare.

9. *a.* **quivis, quaevis, quidvis (quodvis)**, *any you will.*
b. **utervis, utrăvis, utrumvis**, *whether of the two you will.*

10. *a.* **quilĭbet, quaelibet, quidlibet (quodlibet)**, *any you please.*
b. **uterlĭbet, utralibet, utrumlibet**, *whether of the two you please.*

11. *a.* **quisque, quaeque, quicque (quodque)**, *each.* (Plaut. and Ter. use **quisque** of a woman; and in other compounds **quis** occurs as fem.)
b. **unusquisque, unaquaeque, unumquicque (-quodque)**, *each one;* Acc. **unumquemque, unamquamque**, etc. Gen. **uniuscujusque**, etc.
c. **uterque, utrăque, utrumque**, *both, each of two.*

15. These compound pronouns are declined as the simple forms, the undeclined affix or prefix accompanying each case: Gen. **cujuscumque, utriusvis**, Abl. **ecquo**, etc.

63. The following is a tabular arrangement of certain pronominal adjectives and adverbs:

1. Correlative (pronominal) adjectives.

Demonstrative.	Relative and Interrogative.	Indefinite Relative.	Indefinite.
ĭs, that.	**quī**, which.	**quisquĭs**, **quīcunquĕ**, whosoever.	**ălĭquĭs**, some. **quĭs**, any.
	ŭtĕr, which of two.	**altĕrŭtĕr**, one or other of two. **ŭterquisquĕ**, whichever of the two.	**quīlĭbĕt**, **quīvīs**, any you please, any whatever. **ŭtervīs**, **ŭterlĭbĕt**, whichever (*of two*) you please.
tālĭs, such.	**quālĭs** of which quality; as; of what quality?	**quālĭscunquĕ**, of what quality soever.	**quālislĭbĕt**, of any quality you please.
tantŭs, so great.	**quantŭs** as great. how great?	**quantuscunquĕ**, how great soever.	**ălĭquāntŭs**, of some considerable size. **quantuslĭbĕt**, **quantusvīs**, of any size you please.
tantŭlŭs, so small.	**quantŭlŭs**, as small.	**quantŭluscunquĕ**, how small soever.	**ălĭquantŭlŭm**, a little (*subst.*).
tŏt (*indecl.*), so many. **tŏtĭdĕm** (*indecl.*), just so many.	**quŏt** (*indecl.*) as many. how many?	**quotcunquĕ**, **quotquŏt** (*indecl.*) how many soever.	**ălĭquŏt** (*indecl.*), some.
tŏtŭs (*very rare*), such in numerical order.	**quŏtŭs** what in numerical order? which, etc. (*rare*).		

Quālĭscunquĕ and **quantuscunquĕ** are also used as simply indefinite (non-relative) pronouns; **ălĭquantus** is commonly only used in the neuter (**ălĭquantŭm**, **ălĭquantō**), and then as noun or adverb.

2. Correlative (pronominal) adverbs.

tam, so.	**quam**, how? as.	**quamquam**, **quamcunquĕ**, however.	**quamvīs**, **quamlĭbĕt**, however much you please.
tŏtiēs, so often.	**quŏtiēs** how often? **as often.**	**quŏtiescunquĕ**, however often.	**quŏtieslĭbĕt**, however often you please.

ĭtă, sīc, thus, so.	**ŭt,** how, as.	**utcunquĕ,** however.	**ălĭquŏtiēs,** sometimes.

3. The following are the chief (pronominal) adverbs *of place*.

ō (= **om**, accus.?)	**de** = θεν, gen. (or abl.)	**bĭ** or **i**, dat. or loc.	**ā**, abl. fem.
quō, whither? whither.	**undĕ,** whence? whence.	**ŭbĭ,** where? where.	**quā,** by what way? by which way.
hūc, hither.	**hinc,** hence.	**hīc,** here.	**hāc,** by this way.
eō, thither.	**indĕ,** thence.	**ĭbĭ,** there.	**eā,** by that way.
isto, istūc, to your place.	**istim, istinc,** from your place.	**istīc,** there (*where you are*).	**istāc,** by your way.
illo, illūc, to that place.	**illim, illinc,** from that place.	**illīc,** there (*where he is*).	**illāc,** by that way (*near him*).
eōdĕm, to the same place.	**indĭdĕm,** from the same place.	**ĭbīdĕm,** in the same place.	**eādĕm,** by the same way.
utrōquĕ, to both places.	**utrinquĕ,** from both sides.	**utrŭbīquĕ,** in both places.	
	undĭquĕ, from all sides.	**ŭbīquĕ,** everywhere.	
ălĭquō, to some place or other.	**ălĭcunde,** from some place or other.	**ălĭcŭbī,** somewhere or other.	**ălĭquā,** by some way.
quōvīs, quōlĭbĕt, to any place you please.	**undĕvīs, undĕlĭbĕt,** whence you please.	**ŭbĭvīs,** where you please. **ŭbilĭbet,** anywhere whatever	**quāvīs,** by any way you please. **quālĭbĕt,** by any way whatever.
utrōlĭbĕt, whithersoever (*of two places*) you choose.			
quōquăm, anywhither (*in negative, etc., sentences*).		**usquam,** anywhere (*in negative, etc., sentences*).	
sīquō, if anywhither.	**sīcundĕ,** if from any place.	**sīcŭbĭ,** if anywhere.	**sīquā,** if by any way.
nequō, lest anywhither.	**nēcundĕ,** lest from anywhere.	**nēcŭbī,** lest anywhere.	**nēquā,** lest by any way.
ălio, to another place.	**ăliundĕ,** from another place.	**ălĭbī,** elsewhere.	**ălĭā,** by another way.
quōcunquĕ, quōquō, whithersoever.	**undĕcunquĕ,** whencesoever.	**ŭbĭcunque,** wheresoever.	**quācunquĕ, quāquā,** by whatsoever way.
		nusquam, nowhere.	**usquĕquāquĕ,** everywhere.
quonăm, whither?		**ŭbĭnam,** where?	**quānam,** where?
ădeō, so far.			
quorsŭm (*i.e.* **quōversŭm**), whitherwards? whitherwards.			

4. The following are the chief (pronominal) adverbs *of time:*

quandŏ, { when? when. **quamdiū**, { how long? as long as. **quŏtiēs**, { how often? as often as.

quŏm, **cŭm**, when.
nunc, now.
tunc, **tŭm**, } then.
antehāc, before this.
posthāc, after this.
sŭbindĕ, immediately afterwards.
nondŭm, not yet.
ăliās, at another time.
intĕrĭm, **intĕreā**, } meanwhile.
quondăm, **ōlĭm**, } sometime, *i. e.*, formerly, *or* hereafter.

ălĭquamdiū, for some length of time.
quousquĕ, till when?
adhūc, hitherto.

tŏtiēs, so often.
ălĭquŏtiēs, several times.
ĭdentĭdĕm, repeatedly.
nonnunquăm, **ălĭquandŏ**, **quandōquĕ**, } sometimes (*i. e.*, not unfrequently).
interdŭm, sometimes (*i. e.*, occasionally).
unquăm, ever (*after negatives, etc.*).
usquĕ, ever (*of progressive continuance*).

Verbs.

64. Latin Verbs have **Two Voices**: the **Active**, as **ămo**, *I love*, and the **Passive**, as **ămor**, *I am loved.*

1. **Deponent Verbs** have the meaning of the Active Voice, but the forms chiefly of the Passive: as, **vēnor**, *I hunt;* **vĕreor**, *I fear.*

2. The **Passive** has sometimes a **reflexive** use, like the Greek **Middle Voice**: as, **vertor**, *I turn myself;* **lăvor**, *I wash myself, bathe.*

3. A Verb is called **Transitive** when its action *passes on to* an Object in the Accusative Case: as, **puĕrum laudo**, *I praise the boy;* **te hortor**, *I urge thee.*

4. An **Intransitive** Verb requires no Object: as, **surgo**, *I rise;* **prŏfĭciscor**, *I set out.*

5. Intransitive Verbs are not used in the Passive Voice, except sometimes impersonally: as, **surgĭtur**, lit. *there is a rising*, i. e., *we rise* or *they rise.*

65. The **Indicative Mood** states a fact or condition as real or absolute.

1. *a* The **Subjunctive Mood** states a fact or condition as thought of or contingent.

b The **Subjunctive** is also used in various dependent constructions, in which it is rendered in English by the Indicative.

2. The **Imperative Mood** is used in command or entreaty.

3. **The Infinitive Mood** is strictly a verbal noun, expressing action or state.

4. **The Participles** are verbal adjectives. There are two in the **Active Voice**, the **Present** and the **Future**; and two in the **Passive**, the **Perfect** and the **Gerundive**.

5. **The Gerund** is a verbal noun, of the second declension neuter.

6. **The Supines** are the **Accusative** and **Ablative** of a verbal noun of the fourth declension.

66. Of the **Tenses**, the **Present, Future,** and **Imperfect** denote **Incomplete Action**; the **Perfect, Future Perfect,** and **Pluperfect** denote **Completed Action.**

1. **The Present Tense** denotes an action as *now going on.* It may also state a *general truth;* an action *attempted;* a *past action*, in lively narration.

2. **The Future** represents an action in future time, either as continuing, or as indefinite; *I shall be reading*, or *I shall read.*

3. **The Imperfect** denotes an action as *going on at some past time* referred to. It may also state *a customary past action;* an action *begun* (and continued) at some definite past time; an action *attempted* at some definite past time. In letters, it is often used where we should use the present, the writer putting himself in the position of the receiver.

4. **The Perfect Definite** corresponds to our Perfect with **have**: as, *I have seen;* the **Historical Perfect** or **Aorist** states a past action simply: as, *I saw.*

5. **The Future Perfect** corresponds for the most part to the same tense in English, but is used more frequently and precisely.

6. **The Pluperfect** is used as the same tense in English. In epistolary style it may take the place of the Latin Perfect.

7. **The Present, Futures,** and **Perfect Definite** are called **Primary Tenses**; the **Imperfect, Historical Perfect,** and **Pluperfect, Secondary Tenses.**

8. The tenses of the Subjunctive Mood have peculiar uses, which will be explained under Syntax.

67. The Inflections of the Verb are attached to the Stem in the following order: inflections of *tense*, of *mood*, of *person*, of *number*, of *voice*.

1. The simplest forms are of the present indicative singular active; thus, **dăt** is the third person singular, present indicative active, of a verbal stem meaning *give*. It is composed of **dă-**, verb stem, and **t**, abbreviated pronoun of the third person; and thus is strictly *give-he* (she, it), for which *give-s* is, originally, the English equivalent, but English, having lost its sense of the meaning of the final **s**, now prefixes in addition the pronoun for the like purpose.

2. **Dă-r-ē-m-us** is the imperfect subjunctive, first person plural, active voice of the same stem, **dă-**, *give*. The sound **r** denotes past time, **ē** the mood of *thought* (instead of *fact*), **m** the speaker himself (it being the same **m** as in our word *me*), **us** the action of others with the speaker. Thus, **daremus** analyzed is *give-did-in-thought-I-they*. If for **-us** we have **-ur** (**dărēmur**), the speaker and others are **passive** instead of active.—ROBY.

68. The Verb Stem has three forms, the **Present Stem**, the **Perfect Stem**, and the **Supine Stem**.

1. **The Present Stem** is often identical with the Verb Stem, but sometimes more or less modified. From it are formed all the tenses and verbal forms which express *incomplete action:* namely, both in the Active and the Passive Voice, the *Indicative Present*, *Imperfect*, and *Future;* the *Subjunctive Present* and *Imperfect;* the *Imperative;* and the *Present Infinitive;* also the *Present Participle Active*, the *Gerunds*, and the *Gerundive*.

2. **The Perfect Stem** is sometimes identical with the Verb Stem and with the Present Stem, but usually is considerably modified. From it are formed all the tenses in the Active Voice, denoting *completed* action: namely, the *Indicative Perfect*, *Pluperfect*, and *Future Perfect;* the *Subjunctive Perfect* and *Pluperfect;* and the *Perfect Infinitive*.

3. **The Supine Stem** is always a modification of the Verb Stem, and from it are formed certain verbal nouns and adjectives, of which the *Future Participle Active*, the *Perfect Passive Participle*, and the *Accusative* and *Ablative Supines* are reckoned with the Verb. The *Perfect*, *Pluperfect*, and *Future Perfect Indicative*, and the *Perfect* and *Pluperfect Subjunctive*, in the *Passive Voice*, are formed with tenses of the auxiliary verb **esse**, *to be*, and the *Perfect Passive Participle;* the *Future Infinitive Passive* is formed by adding to the *Accusative Supine* the auxiliary **iri**.

69. The Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Accusative Supine are called the

Principal Parts of the Verb, as, they being known, all the other parts of the Verb may be formed from them.

70. The Irregular Verb **sum** is formed from two Roots,* **es-** (Sanskrit *as*, Greek ἐσ-), *to be*, and **fu-** (Sanskrit *bhû*, Greek φυ-), *to be* or *become*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Infin.	Perf. Ind.	Fut. Part.
sŭm, *I am;*	**essĕ**, *to be;*	**fuī**, *I have been, I was;*	**fŭtūrŭs**, *about to be.*

		INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
		PRESENT TENSE.	
SING.	1.	sŭm, *I am,*	sĭm, *I may be, may I*
	2.	ĕs, *thou art* (*you are*),	sīs, [*be, I am*, etc.†
	3.	est, *he* (she, it) *is,*	sĭt,
PLUR.	1.	sŭmŭs, *we are,*	sīmŭs,
	2.	estĭs, *you are,*	sītĭs,
	3.	sunt, *they are.*	sint.
		IMPERFECT.	
SING.	1.	ĕrăm, *I was,*	essĕm, *I should be*, etc.†
	2.	ĕrās, *thou wast,*	essēs,
	3.	ĕrăt, *he was,*	essĕt,
PLUR.	1.	ĕrāmŭs, *we were,*	essēmŭs,
	2.	ĕrātĭs, *you were,*	essētĭs,
	3.	ĕrant, *they were.*	essent.
		FUTURE.	
SING.	1.	ĕrō, *I shall be,*	
	2.	ĕrĭs, *thou wilt be,*	
	3.	ĕrĭt, *he will be,*	
PLUR.	1.	ĕrĭmŭs, *we shall be,*	
	2.	ĕrĭtĭs, *you will be,*	
	3.	ĕrunt, *they will be.*	

* The English forms *am, art, is, are*, belong to the root **as**; *be* to the root **bhu**.

† The tenses of the Subjunctive have many different translations in English, according to the construction of the sentences in which they stand. Their various uses are explained under *Syntax of the Subjunctive Mood.*

		INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
		PERFECT AND AORIST.	
SING.	1.	fuī, *I have been, I was,*	fuĕrĭm,
	2.	fuistī, *thou hast been, thou wast,*	fuĕrī̆s,
	3.	fuĭt, *he has been, he was,*	fuerĭt,
PLUR.	1.	fuĭmŭs, *we have been, we were,*	fuerī̆mŭs,
	2.	fuistĭs, *you have been, you were,*	fuerī̆tĭs,
	3.	fuērunt *or* fuērĕ, *they have been, they were.*	fuĕrint.

PLUPERFECT.

SING.	1.	fuĕrăm, *I had been,*	fuissĕm, *I should have been,*
	2.	fuĕrās, *thou hadst been,*	fuissēs, [etc.
	3.	fuĕrăt, *he had been,*	fuissĕt,
PLUR.	1.	fuĕrāmŭs, *we had been,*	fuissēmŭs,
	2.	fuĕrātĭs, *you had been,*	fuissētĭs,
	3.	fuĕrant, *they had been.*	fuissent.

FUTURE PERFECT.

SING.	1.	fuĕrō̆, *I shall have been,*
	2.	fuĕrī̆s, *thou wilt have been,*
	3.	fuĕrĭt, *he will have been,*
PLUR.	1.	fuĕrī̆mus, *we shall have been,*
	2.	fuĕrī̆tĭs, *you will have been,*
	3.	fuĕrint, *they will have been.*

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	sing.	2.	ĕs, *be thou.*
FUT.		2.	estō̆, *thou shalt be.*
		3.	estō̆, *he shall be* or *let him be.*
PRES.	plur.	2.	estĕ, *be ye.*
FUT.		2.	estōtĕ, *ye shall be.*
		3.	suntō̆, *they shall be* or *let them be.*

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
PRES. essĕ, *to be.*	FUT. fŭtūrŭs, -ă, ŭm, *about to be.*
PERF. fuissĕ, *to have been.*	
FUT. fŭtūrŭs essĕ, *to be about to be.*	

1. A form of the pres. subj. **siem, sies, siet** is frequent in Plautus and Terence. The pres. subj. **fuam, fuas, fuat, fuant** is also frequent in Plautus; (G. Curtius regards it as an aorist.) Forms like **fūvit, fūverit, fūvisset**, from the old Perfect stem, are met with in old writers.

2. For the imperf. subj., **fŏrĕm, fŏrēs, fŏrĕt, fŏrent** are frequently used.

3. **Fŏre** is often used for the future infinitive.

4. In old writers the forms **escit, escunt** occur, for **erit, erunt.**

5. **Es** in the pres. indic. is always long in Plautus and Terence.

6. When **est** came after a vowel or **m**, the **e** was omitted in speaking and sometimes in writing: as, **nata st, natum st, oratio st.** So sometimes with **es** after a vowel, and perhaps after **m**: as, **nacta's, lignum's.** In the comic writers a short final syllable in **s** coalesces with **est**: as, **factust, opust, similist,** for *factus est, opus est, simĭlis est;* and occasionally with **es**: as, **nactu's, simili's,** for *nactus es, similis es.*

71. Like **sum** are inflected its compounds **absum** (perf. **abfui** *or* **āfui**), **adsum** *or* **assum** (perf. **adfui** *or* **affui**), **dēsum** (**de-est, de-eram,** etc., pronounced **dēst, dēram,** etc.), **insum, intersum, obsum** (perf. **obfui** *or* **offui**), **praesum** (3d sing. **praest**, often written **praeest**), **prōsum** (which inserts **d** before a vowel: as, **prōdes, prōdĕro, prōdesse**), **subsum** (no perfect), **supersum.** Of these **absum** and **praesum** alone have a present participle, **absens, praesens.**

72. Possum, *I am able* or *I can*, is a compound of **pŏt-** (**pŏtĭs, pŏtĕ**) and **sum**, and usually retains the **t** before a vowel, but assimilates it to a following **s**.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
possŭm,	**possĕ,**	**potŭī.**

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

		Indicative	Subjunctive
SING.	1.	possŭm, *I can, I am able,*	possĭm,
	2.	pŏtĕs, *thou canst,*	possīs,
	3.	pŏtest, *he can,*	possĭt,
PLUR.	1.	possŭmŭs, *we can,*	possīmŭs,
	2.	pŏtestĭs, *you can,*	possītĭs,
	3.	possunt, *they can.*	possint.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	IMPERFECT.	
SING. 1.	pŏtĕrăm, *I could,*	possĕm,
2.	pŏtĕrās, *thou couldst,*	possēs,
3.	pŏtĕrăt, *he could,*	possĕt,
PLUR. 1.	pŏtĕrāmŭs, *we could,*	possēmŭs,
2.	pŏtĕrātĭs, *you could,*	possētĭs,
3.	pŏtĕrant, *they could.*	possent.
	FUTURE.	
SING. 1.	pŏtĕrŏ̄, *I shall be able,*	
2.	pŏtĕrĭs, *thou wilt be able,*	
3.	pŏtĕrĭt, *he will be able,*	
PLUR. 1.	pŏtĕrĭmŭs, *we shall be able,*	
2.	pŏtĕrĭtĭs, *you will be able,*	
3.	pŏtĕrunt, *they will be able.*	
	PERFECT AND AORIST.	
SING. 1.	pŏtuī, *I have been able, I could,*	pŏtuĕrĭm,
2.	pŏtuistī, *thou hast been able, thou couldst,*	pŏtuĕrĭ̄s,
3.	pŏtuĭt, *he has been able, he could,*	pŏtuĕrĭt,
PLUR. 1.	pŏtuĭmŭs, *we have been able, we could,*	pŏtuĕrĭ̄mŭs,
2.	potuistĭs, *you have been able, you could,*	pŏtuĕrĭ̄tis,
3.	potuērunt, *they have been able, they could.*	pŏtuĕrint.
	PLUPERFECT.	
SING. 1.	pŏtuĕrăm, *I had been able,*	pŏtuissĕm,
2.	pŏtuĕrās, *thou hadst been able,*	pŏtuissēs,
3.	pŏtuĕrăt, *he had been able,*	pŏtuissĕt,
PLUR. 1.	pŏtuĕrāmŭs, *we had been able,*	pŏtuissēmŭs,
2.	pŏtuĕrātĭs, *you had been able,*	pŏtuissētĭs,
3.	pŏtuĕrant, *they had been able.*	pŏtuissent.

FUTURE PERFECT.

SING. 1. pŏtuĕrō, *I shall have been able,*
2. pŏtuĕrīs, *thou wilt have been able,*
3. pŏtuĕrĭt, *he will have been able,*
PLUR. 1. pŏtuĕrīmus, *we shall have been able,*
2. pŏtuĕrītĭs, *you will have been able,*
3. pŏtuĕrint, *they will have been able.*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. possĕ, *to be able.*
PERFECT. pŏtuissĕ, *to have been able.*

PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT. pŏtens, *powerful* (used only as an adjective).

1. Early writers have sometimes **potesse** in the infinitive; Plautus and Terence sometimes **possiem** and **possiēs** in the pres. subjunctive. The full forms **potis sum**, etc., are found in prae-Augustan poets; and **pŏtis** and **pŏte** are even found as predicates without **sum**. **Potestur** occurs once in Lucretius. **Poterint** is found for *poterunt.*

CONJUGATIONS.

73. There are **Four Conjugations**, distinguished by the **vowel before -re** in the **Present Infinitive Active.** This vowel in the **First Conjugation** is **a long**, as **ămārĕ**, *to love;*
in the **Second Conjugation** is **e long**, as **mŏnērĕ**, *to warn;*
in the **Third Conjugation** is **e short**, as **rĕgĕrĕ**, *to rule;*
in the **Fourth Conjugation** is **i long**, as **audīrĕ**, *to hear.*

FIRST CONJUGATION.

74. In the **First Conjugation** the **Present Stem** is the same as the **Verb Stem**, and ends in **ā**. Its final vowel is united by contraction with the following vowel: as, **ama-o, amo; ama-im, amem.** The regular **Perfect** is formed by adding **-vi** to the Verb Stem, the regular **Supine** by adding **-tum**: as, **vŏco**, *I call*, Pres. Inf. **vocā-re**, Perf. Ind. **vocā-vi**, Supine **vocā-tum.**

THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

Ā- *VERBS.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
ămō̆,	ămārĕ,	ămāvī,	ămātŭm.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	PRESENT TENSE.	
SING. 1.	ămō̆, *I love,*	ămĕm,
2.	ămās, *thou lovest,*	ămēs,
3.	ămăt, *he loves,*	ămĕt,
PLUR. 1.	ămāmŭs, *we love,*	ămēmŭs,
2.	ămātĭs, *you love,*	ămētĭs,
3.	ămant, *they love.*	ăment.
	IMPERFECT.	
SING. 1.	ămābam, *I was loving, I loved,*	ămārĕm,
2.	ămābās, *thou wast loving,* etc.,	ămārēs,
3.	ămābăt, *he was loving,* etc.,	ămārĕt,
PLUR. 1.	ămābāmŭs, *we were loving,* etc.,	ămārēmŭs,
2.	ămābātĭs, *you were loving,* etc.,	ămārētĭs,
3.	ămābant, *they were loving,* etc.	ămārent.
	FUTURE.	
SING. 1.	ămābō̆, *I shall love,*	
2.	ămābĭs, *thou wilt love,*	
3.	ămābĭt, *he will love,*	
PLUR. 1.	ămābĭmŭs, *we shall love,*	
2.	ămābĭtĭs, *you will love,*	
3.	ămābunt, *they will love.*	
SING.	**PERFECT AND AORIST.**	
1.	ămāvī, *I have loved, I loved,*	ămāvĕrĭm,
2.	ămāvistī, *thou hast loved, thou lovedst,*	ămāvĕrī̆s,
3.	ămāvĭt, *he has loved, he loved,*	ămāvĕrĭt,

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PLUR.	
1. ămāvĭmŭs, *we have loved, we loved,*	ămāvĕrī̆mŭs,
2. ămāvistĭs, *you have loved, you loved,*	ămāvĕrī̆tĭs,
3. ămāvērunt, -ērĕ, *they have loved, they loved.*	ămāvĕrint.

PLUPERFECT.

SING.	1. ămāvĕrăm, *I had loved,*	ămāvissĕm,
	2. ămāvĕrās, *thou hadst loved,*	ămāvissēs,
	3. ămāvĕrăt, *he had loved,*	ămāvissĕt,
PLUR.	1. ămāvĕrāmŭs, *we had loved,*	ămāvissēmŭs,
	2. ămāvĕrātĭs, *you had loved,*	āmāvissētĭs,
	3. ămāvĕrant, *they had loved.*	ămāvissent.

FUTURE PERFECT.

SING. 1. ămāvĕrō̆, *I shall have loved,*
2. ămāvĕrī̆s, *thou wilt have loved,*
3. ămāvĕrĭt, *he will have loved,*
PLUR. 1. ămāvĕrī̆mŭs, *we shall have loved,*
2. ămāvĕrī̆tĭs, *you will have loved,*
3. ămāvĕrint, *they will have loved.*

IMPERATIVE.

	Singular.	Plural.
PRES.	2. ămā, *love thou,*	ămātĕ, *love ye,*
FUT.	2. ămātō̆, *thou shalt love* or *do thou love,*	ămātōtĕ, *you shall love* or *do ye love,*
	3. ămātō̆, *he shall love* or *let him love.*	ămantō̆, *they shall love* or *let them love.*

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLES.
PRES. ămārĕ, *to love,*	PRES. ămans, -antis, *loving,*
PERF. ămāvissĕ, *to have loved,*	
FUT. ămātūrŭs essĕ, *to be about to love.*	FUT. ămātūrŭs,-a,-um, *about to love.*

GERUND.	SUPINE.
Gen. ămandī, *of loving,*	
Dat. ămandō, *for loving,*	
Acc. ămandŭm, *loving,*	Acc. ămātŭm, *to love,*
Abl. ămandō, *by loving.*	Abl. ămātū, *in the loving, to be loved.*

Passive Voice.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
ămor,	ămārī,	ămātŭs sŭm.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	PRESENT TENSE.	
sing. 1.	ămŏr, *I am loved,*	ămĕr,
2.	ămārĭs *or* -rĕ, *thou art loved,*	ămērĭs *or* -rĕ,
3.	ămātŭr, *he is loved,*	ămētŭr,
plur. 1.	ămāmŭr, *we are loved,*	ămēmŭr,
2.	ămāmĭnī, *you are loved,*	ămēmĭnī,
3.	ămantŭr, *they are loved.*	ămentŭr.
	IMPERFECT.	
sing. 1.	ămābăr, *I was loved,*	ămārĕr,
2.	ămābārĭs *or* -rĕ, *thou wast loved,*	ămārērĭs *or* -rĕ,
3.	ămābātŭr, *he was loved,*	ămārētŭr,
plur. 1.	ămābāmŭr, *we were loved,*	ămārēmŭr,
2.	ămābāmĭnī, *you were loved,*	ămārēmĭnī,
3.	ămābantŭr, *they were loved.*	ămārentŭr.
	FUTURE.	
sing. 1.	ămābŏr, *I shall be loved,*	
2.	ămābĕrĭs *or* -rĕ, *thou wilt be loved,*	
3.	ămābĭtŭr, *he will be loved,*	
plur. 1.	ămābĭmŭr, *we shall be loved,*	
2.	ămābĭmĭnī, *you will be loved,*	
3.	ămābuntŭr, *they will be loved.*	

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
	PERFECT AND AORIST.	
SING.	1. ămātŭs sŭm, *I have been loved, I was loved,*	ămātŭs sĭm,
	2. ămātŭs ĕs, *thou hast been loved,* etc.,	ămātŭs sīs,
	3. ămātŭs est, *he has been loved,* etc.,	ămātŭs sĭt,
PLUR.	1. ămātī sŭmŭs, *we have been loved,* etc.,	ămātī sīmŭs,
	2. ămātī estĭs, *you have been loved,* etc.,	ămātī sītĭs,
	3. ămātī sunt, *they have been loved,* etc.	ămātī sint.
	PLUPERFECT.	
SING.	1. ămātŭs ĕrăm, *I had been loved,*	ămātŭs essĕm,
	2. ămātŭs ĕrās, *thou hadst been loved,*	ămātŭs essēs,
	3. ămātŭs ĕrat, *he had been loved,*	ămātŭs essĕt,
PLUR.	1. ămātī ĕrāmŭs, *we had been loved,*	ămātī essēmŭs,
	2. ămātī ĕrātĭs, *you had been loved,*	ămātī essētĭs,
	3. ămātī ĕrant, *they had been loved.*	ămātī essent.

FUTURE PERFECT.

SING.	1. ămātŭs ĕrō̆, *I shall have been loved,*
	2. ămātŭs ĕrĭs, *thou wilt have been loved,*
	3. ămātŭs ĕrĭt, *he will have been loved,*
PLUR.	1. ămātī ĕrĭmŭs, *we shall have been loved,*
	2. ămātī ĕrĭtĭs, *you will have been loved,*
	3. ămātī ĕrunt, *they will have been loved.*

IMPERATIVE.

	Singular.	Plural.
PRES.	2. ămārĕ, *be thou loved,*	ămāmĭnī, *be ye loved,*
FUT.	2. ămātŏr, *thou shalt be loved,*	
	3. ămātŏr, *he shall be loved* or *let him be loved.*	ămantŏr, *they shall be loved* or *let them be loved.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. ămārī, *to be loved,*
PERF. ămātŭs essĕ, *to have been loved,*
FUT. ămātŭm īrī, *to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. ămātŭs, *having been loved.*
GERUNDIVE. ămandŭs, *to be loved* or *worthy to be loved.*

Note 1. — In all the conjugations, the auxiliaries **fui, fuĕram, fuĕro, fuĕrim, fuissem,** and **fuisse** are occasionally found instead of **sum, ĕram, ĕro, sim, essem,** and **esse**: as,

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PERF.	ămātus fuī,	ămātus fuĕrim,
	ămātus fuistī, etc.,	ămātus fuĕrīs, etc.,
PLUP.	ămātus fuĕram,	ămātus fuissem,
	ămātus fuĕrās, etc.,	ămātus fuissēs, etc.
FUT. PERF.	ămātus fuĕro,	
	ămātus fuĕrīs,	INFINITIVE.
	ămātus fuĕrit, etc.	PERF. ămātus fuisse.

The meaning of compound tenses thus made is sometimes indistinguishable from that of the more common forms; but sometimes it differs very much as the auxiliaries themselves differ in meaning.

Note 2.—**Fŏrem** is sometimes used as an auxiliary with the perfect passive participle, forming either a pluperfect subjunctive, like **essem,** or a future perfect subjunctive. In a very few cases **fŏre** is used instead of **esse** as the auxiliary in the future active infinitive. With the perfect participle, **fŏre** forms a future perfect infinitive passive.

Note 3.—The **participle** in compound tenses is varied in **gender,** to agree with the subject of the verb. (See **83, 1.**)

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the present stem, **amā-**, are formed

	Active.	Passive.
IND. PRES.	amo,	amor,
IMPERF.	amābam,	amābar,
FUT.	amābo,	amābor,
SUBJ. PRES.	amem,	amer,
IMPERF.	amārem,	amārer,
IMPERAT. PRES.	amā,	amāre,
FUT.	amāto,	amātor,
INF. PRES.	amāre,	amāri,
PRES. PART.	amans,	
GERUNDIVE.	amandi.	amandus.

From the perfect stem, ămāv-, are formed		From the supine stem, ămāt-, are formed
	Active.	**Passive.**
IND. PERF.	amāvi,	amātus sum,
PLUP.	amavĕram,	amātus eram,
FUT. PERF.	amavĕro,	amātus ero,
SUBJ. PERF.	amavĕrim,	amātus sim,
PLUP.	amavissem,	amātus essem,
INF. PERF.	amavisse.	amātus esse.

From the supine stem, ămāt-, are formed

INF. FUT.	amatūrus esse,	amātum irī,
FUT. PART.	amatūrus,	
PERF. PART.		amātus,
SUPINE.	(*Acc.*) amātum.	(*Abl.*) amātu.

75. In the **Second Conjugation**, the **Present Stem** is the same as the Verb Stem, and ends in **e**; the **Perfect** drops the vowel characteristic of the Verb Stem, and adds **ui** (as **mŏn-ui**), or adds **vi** to the full Stem (as **dēlē-vi**); the **Supine** drops the characteristic and adds **ĭtum** (as **mŏn-ĭtum**), or adds **tum** to the full Verb Stem (as **dēlē-tum**).

THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

E– VERBS.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
mŏnĕō,	mŏnērĕ,	mŏnŭī,	mŏnĭtum.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	PRESENT TENSE.	
SING.	1. mŏneō, *I remind,*	mŏneăm,
	2. mŏnēs, *thou remindest,*	mŏneās,
	3. mŏnĕt, *he reminds,*	mŏneăt,
PLUR.	1. mŏnēmŭs, *we remind,*	mŏneāmŭs,
	2. mŏnētĭs, *you remind,*	mŏneātĭs,
	3. mŏnent, *they remind.*	mŏneant.

		INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
		IMPERFECT.	
SING.	1.	mŏnēbăm, *I was reminding, I reminded,*	mŏnērĕm,
	2.	mŏnēbās, *thou wast reminding,* etc.	mŏnērēs,
	3.	mŏnēbăt, *he was reminding,* etc.	mŏnērĕt,
PLUR.	1.	mŏnēbāmŭs, *we were reminding,* etc.	mŏnērēmŭs,
	2.	mŏnēbātĭs, *you were reminding,* etc.	mŏnērētĭs,
	3.	mŏnēbant, *they were reminding,* etc.	mŏnērent.
		FUTURE.	
SING.	1.	mŏnēbo, *I shall remind,*	
	2.	mŏnēbĭs, *thou wilt remind,*	
	3.	mŏnēbĭt, *he will remind,*	
PLUR.	1.	mŏnēbĭmŭs, *we shall remind,*	
	2.	mŏnēbĭtĭs, *you will remind,*	
	3.	mŏnēbunt, *they will remind.*	
		PERFECT AND AORIST.	
SING.	1.	mŏnuī, *I have reminded, I reminded,*	mŏnuĕrĭm,
	2.	mŏnuistī, *thou hast reminded,* etc.	mŏnuĕrĭs,
	3.	mŏnuĭt, *he has reminded,* etc.	mŏnuĕrĭt,
PLUR.	1.	mŏnuĭmŭs, *we have reminded,* etc.	mŏnuĕrĭmŭs,
	2.	mŏnuistĭs, *you have reminded,* etc.	mŏnuerĭtĭs,
	3.	mŏnuērunt (rĕ), *they have reminded,* etc.	mŏnuĕrint.
		PLUPERFECT.	
SING.	1.	mŏnuĕrăm, *I had reminded,*	mŏnuissĕm,
	2.	mŏnuĕrās, *thou hadst reminded,*	mŏnuissēs,
	3.	mŏnuĕrăt, *he had reminded,*	mŏnuissĕt,
PLUR.	1.	mŏnuĕrāmŭs, *we had reminded,*	mŏnuissēmŭs,
	2.	mŏnuĕrātĭs, *you had reminded,*	mŏnuissētĭs,
	3.	mŏnuĕrant, *they had reminded.*	mŏnuissent.
		FUTURE PERFECT.	
SING.	1.	mŏnuĕrŏ, *I shall have reminded,*	
	2.	mŏnuĕrĭs, *thou wilt have reminded,*	
	3.	mŏnuĕrĭt, *he will have reminded,*	
PLUR.	1.	mŏnuĕrĭmŭs, *we shall have reminded,*	
	2.	mŏnuĕrĭtĭs, *you will have reminded,*	
	3.	mŏnuĕrint, *they will have reminded.*	

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Pres. 2. mŏnē, *remind thou,*
Fut. 2. mŏnētō̆, *thou shalt remind* or *do thou remind,*
3. mŏnētō̆, *he shall remind* or *let him remind.*

Plural.

Pres. 2. mŏnētĕ, *remind ye,*
Fut. 2. mŏnētōtĕ, *ye shall remind* or *do ye remind,*
3. mŏnentō̆, *they shall remind* or *let them remind.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. mŏnērĕ, *to remind,*
Perf. mŏnuissĕ, *to have reminded,*
Fut. mŏnĭtūrŭs essĕ, *to be about to remind.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. mŏnens, *reminding,*
Fut. mŏnĭtūrŭs, *about to remind.*

GERUND.

Gen. mŏnendī, *of reminding,*
Dat. mŏnendō, *for reminding,*
Acc. mŏnendŭm, *reminding,*
Abl. mŏnendō, *by reminding.*

SUPINE.

mŏnĭtŭm, *to remind,*
mŏnĭtū, *in the reminding, to be reminded.*

Passive Voice.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
mŏneŏr,	mŏnērī,	mŏnĭtŭs sŭm.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

		Indicative	Subjunctive
Sing.	1.	mŏneŏr, *I am reminded,*	mŏneăr,
	2.	mŏnērĭs (rĕ), *thou art reminded,*	mŏneāris (rĕ),
	3.	mŏnētŭr, *he is reminded,*	mŏneātŭr,
Plur.	1.	mŏnēmŭr, *we are reminded,*	mŏneāmur,
	2.	mŏnēmĭnī, *you are reminded,*	mŏneāmĭnī,
	3.	mŏnentŭr, *they are reminded,*	mŏneāntŭr.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	IMPERFECT.	
SING. 1.	mŏnēbăr, *I was reminded,*	mŏnērĕr,
2.	mŏnēbārĭs (rĕ), *thou wast reminded,*	mŏnērērĭs (rĕ),
3.	mŏnēbātŭr, *he was reminded,*	mŏnērētŭr,
PLUR. 1.	mŏnēbāmŭr, *we were reminded,*	mŏnērēmŭr,
2.	mŏnēbāmĭnī, *you were reminded,*	mŏnērēmĭnī,
3.	mŏnēbantŭr, *they were reminded.*	mŏnērentŭr.

FUTURE.

SING. 1.	mŏnēbŏr, *I shall be reminded,*	
2.	mŏnēbĕrĭs (rĕ), *thou wilt be reminded,*	
3.	mŏnēbĭtŭr, *he will be reminded,*	
PLUR. 1.	mŏnēbĭmŭr, *we shall be reminded,*	
2.	mŏnēbĭmĭnī, *you will be reminded,*	
3.	mŏnēbuntŭr, *they will be reminded.*	

PERFECT AND AORIST.

SING. 1.	mŏnĭtŭs sŭm, *I have been reminded, I was reminded,*	mŏnĭtŭs sĭm,
2.	mŏnĭtŭs ĕs, *thou hast been reminded, thou wast reminded,*	mŏnĭtŭs sīs,
3.	mŏnĭtŭs est, *he has been reminded, he was reminded,*	mŏnĭtŭs sĭt,
PLUR. 1.	mŏnĭtī sŭmŭs, *we have been reminded, we were reminded,*	mŏnĭtī sīmŭs,
2.	mŏnĭtī estĭs, *you have been reminded, you were reminded,*	mŏnĭtī sītĭs,
3.	mŏnĭtī sunt, *they have been reminded, they were reminded,*	mŏnĭtī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

SING. 1.	mŏnĭtŭs ĕrăm, *I had been reminded,*	mŏnĭtŭs essĕm,
2.	mŏnĭtŭs ĕrās, *thou hadst been reminded,*	mŏnĭtŭs essēs,
3.	mŏnĭtŭs ĕrăt, *he had been reminded,*	mŏnĭtŭs essĕt,
PLUR. 1.	mŏnĭtī ĕrāmŭs, *we had been reminded,*	mŏnĭtī essēmŭs,
2.	mŏnĭtī ĕrātĭs, *you had been reminded,*	mŏnĭtī essētĭs,
3.	mŏnĭtī ĕrant, *they had been reminded.*	mŏnĭtī essent.

FUTURE PERFECT.

SING. 1. mŏnĭtŭs ĕrŏ, *I shall have been reminded,*
2. mŏnĭtŭs ĕrĭs, *thou wilt have been reminded,*
3. mŏnĭtŭs ĕrĭt, *he will have been reminded,*

PLUR. 1. mŏnĭtī ĕrĭmŭs, *we shall have been reminded,*
2. mŏnĭtī ĕrĭtĭs, *you will have been reminded,*
3. mŏnĭtī ĕrunt, *they will have been reminded.*

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

PRES. 2. mŏnērĕ, *be thou reminded,*
FUT. 2. mŏnētŏr, *thou shalt be reminded,*
3. mŏnētŏr, *he shall be reminded* or *let him be reminded.*

Plural.

PRES. 2. mŏnēmĭnī, *be ye reminded,*
FUT. 3. mŏnentŏr, *they shall be reminded* or *let them be reminded.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. mŏnērī, *to be reminded,*
PERF. mŏnĭtŭs essĕ, *to have been reminded,*
FUT. mŏnĭtum īrī, *to be about to be reminded.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERF. mŏnĭtŭs, *having been reminded,*
GERUNDIVE. mŏnendŭs, *to be reminded* or *worthy to be reminded.*

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the present stem, mŏnē-, are formed

	Active.	Passive.
IND. PRES.	moneo,	moneor,
IMPERF.	monēbam,	monēbar,
FUT.	monēbo,	monēbor,
SUBJ. PRES.	moneam,	monear,
IMPERF.	monērem,	monērer,
IMPERAT. PRES.	monē,	monēre,
FUT.	monēto,	monētor,
INF. PRES.	monēre,	monēri,
PRES. PART.	monens,	
GERUNDIVE.		monendus.
GERUND.	monendi.	

From the perfect stem, mŏnŭ-, are formed	Active.	From the supine stem, mŏnĭt-, are formed Passive.
Ind. Perf.	monui,	monĭtus sum,
Plup.	monuĕram,	monĭtus eram,
Fut. Perf.	monuĕro,	monĭtus ero,
Subj. Perf.	monuĕrim,	monĭtus sim,
Plup.	monuissem,	monĭtus essem,
Inf. Perf.	monuisse,	monĭtus esse.

From the supine stem, mŏnĭt-, are formed

Inf. Fut.	monitūrus esse,	monĭtum iri,
Fut. Part.	monitūrus,	
Perf. Part.		monĭtus,
Supines.	(*Acc.*) monĭtum.	(*Abl.*) monĭtū.

76. In the **Third Conjugation**, the **Present Stem** is sometimes the same as the Verb Stem, and sometimes modified (94). It ends (or is regarded as ending) in a **consonant**, or in **u** or **ĭ**. The endings of the **Perfect** and **Supine** are various.

The Third Conjugation.

CONSONANT VERBS.

Active Voice.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Infin.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
rĕgō̆,	rĕgĕrĕ,	rexī,	rectŭm.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	PRESENT TENSE.	
SING. 1.	rĕgō̆, *I rule*,	rĕgam,
2.	rĕgĭs, *thou rulest*,	rĕgās,
3.	rĕgĭt, *he rules*,	rĕgăt,
PLUR. 1.	rĕgĭmŭs, *we rule*,	rĕgāmŭs,
2.	rĕgĭtĭs, *you rule*,	rĕgātĭs,
3.	rĕgunt, *they rule*.	rĕgant.

		INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
		IMPERFECT.	
SING.	1.	rĕgēbăm, *I was ruling*, *I ruled*,	rĕgĕrĕm,
	2.	rĕgēbās, *thou wast ruling*, etc.,	rĕgĕrēs,
	3.	rĕgēbăt, *he was ruling*, etc.,	rĕgĕrĕt,
PLUR.	1.	rĕgēbāmŭs, *we were ruling*, etc.,	rĕgĕrēmŭs,
	2.	rĕgēbātĭs, *you were ruling, etc.*,	rĕgĕrētĭs,
	3.	rĕgēbant, *they were ruling*, etc.	rĕgĕrent.
		FUTURE.	
SING.	1.	rĕgăm, *I shall rule*,	
	2.	rĕgēs, *thou wilt rule*,	
	3.	rĕgĕt, *he will rule*,	
PLUR.	1.	rĕgēmŭs, *we shall rule*,	
	2.	rĕgētĭs, *you will rule*,	
	3.	rĕgent, *they will rule*.	
		PERFECT AND AORIST.	
SING.	1.	rexī, *I have ruled*, *I ruled*,	rexĕrĭm,
	2.	rexistī, *thou hast ruled*, *thou ruledst*,	rexĕrī̆s,
	3.	rexĭt, *he has ruled*, *he ruled*,	rexĕrĭt,
PLUR.	1.	rexĭmŭs, *we have ruled*, *we ruled*,	rexĕrī̆mus,
	2.	rexistĭs, *you have ruled*, *you ruled*,	rexĕrī̆tĭs,
	3.	rexērunt *or* (rĕ), *they have ruled*, *they ruled*.	rexĕrint.
		PLUPERFECT.	
SING.	1.	rexĕrăm, *I had ruled*,	rexissĕm,
	2.	rexĕrās, *thou hadst ruled*,	rexissēs,
	3.	rexĕrăt, *he had ruled*,	rexissĕt,
PLUR.	1.	rexĕrāmŭs, *we had ruled*,	rexissēmŭs,
	2.	rexĕrātĭs, *you had ruled*,	rexissētĭs,
	3.	rexĕrant, *they had ruled*.	rexissent.
		FUTURE PERFECT.	
SING.	1.	rexĕrō̆, *I shall have ruled*,	
	2.	rexĕrī̆s, *thou wilt have ruled*,	
	3.	rexĕrĭt, *he will have ruled*,	
PLUR.	1.	rexĕrī̆mus, *we shall have ruled*,	
	2.	rexĕrī̆tis, *you will have ruled*,	
	3.	rexĕrint, *they will have ruled*.	

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

PRES. 2. rĕgĕ, *rule thou*,
FUT. 2. rĕgĭtō̆, *thou shalt rule* or *do thou rule*,
3. rĕgĭtō̆, *he shall rule* or *let him rule*.

Plural.

PRES. 2. rĕgĭtĕ, *rule ye*,
FUT. 2. rĕgĭtōtĕ, *ye shall rule* or *do ye rule*,
3. rĕguntō̆, *they shall rule* or *let them rule*.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. rĕgĕrĕ, *to rule*,
PERF. rexissĕ, *to have ruled*,
FUT. rectūrŭs essĕ, *to be about to rule*.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. rĕgens, *ruling*,
FUT. rectūrŭs, *about to rule*.

GERUND.

GEN. rĕgendī, *of ruling*,
DAT. rĕgendō, *for ruling*,
ACC. rĕgendŭm, *ruling*,
ABL. rĕgendō, *by ruling*.

SUPINE.

ACC. rectŭm, *to rule*,
ABL. rectū, *in the ruling*, *to be ruled*.

PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Inf.
rĕgŏr,	rĕgī,	rectus sŭm.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

	Indicative	Subjunctive
SING. 1.	rĕgŏr, *I am ruled*,	rĕgăr,
2.	rĕgĕrĭs (rĕ), *thou art ruled*,	rĕgārĭs (rĕ),
3.	rĕgĭtŭr, *he is ruled*,	rĕgātŭr,
PLUR. 1.	rĕgĭmŭr, *we are ruled*,	rĕgāmŭr,
2.	rĕgĭmĭnī, *you are ruled*,	rĕgāmĭnī,
3.	rĕguntŭr, *they are ruled*.	rĕgantŭr.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	IMPERFECT.	
SING. 1.	rĕgēbăr, *I was ruled,*	rĕgĕrĕr,
2.	rĕgēbārĭs (rĕ), *thou wast ruled,*	rĕgĕrērĭs (rĕ),
3.	rĕgēbātŭr, *he was ruled,*	rĕgĕrētŭr,
PLUR. 1.	rĕgēbāmŭr, *we were ruled,*	rĕgĕrēmŭr,
2.	rĕgēbāmĭnī, *you were ruled,*	rĕgĕrēmĭnī,
3.	rĕgēbantŭr, *they were ruled.*	rĕgĕrentŭr.

FUTURE.

SING. 1.	rĕgăr, *I shall be ruled,*	
2.	rĕgērĭs (rĕ), *thou wilt be ruled,*	
3.	rĕgētŭr, *he will be ruled,*	
PLUR. 1.	rĕgēmŭr, *we shall be ruled,*	
2.	rĕgēmĭnī, *you will be ruled,*	
3.	rĕgentŭr, *they will be ruled.*	

PERFECT AND AORIST.

SING. 1.	rectŭs sŭm, *I have been ruled, I was ruled,*	rectŭs sĭm,
2.	rectŭs ĕs, *thou hast been ruled,* etc.,	rectŭs sīs,
3.	rectŭs est, *he has been ruled,* etc.,	rectŭs sĭt,
PLUR. 1.	rectī sŭmŭs, *we have been ruled,* etc.,	rectī sīmŭs,
2.	rectī estĭs, *you have been ruled,* etc.,	rectī sītĭs,
3.	rectī sunt, *they have been ruled,* etc.	rectī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

SING. 1.	rectŭs ĕrăm, *I had been ruled,*	rectŭs essĕm,
2.	rectŭs ĕrās, *thou hadst been ruled,*	rectŭs essēs,
3.	rectŭs ĕrăt, *he had been ruled,*	rectŭs essĕt,
PLUR. 1.	rectī ĕrāmŭs, *we had been ruled,*	rectī essēmŭs,
2.	rectī ĕrātĭs, *you had been ruled,*	rectī essētĭs,
3.	rectī ĕrant, *they had been ruled.*	rectī essent.

FUTURE PERFECT.

SING. 1.	rectŭs ĕrŏ̄, *I shall have been ruled,*	
2.	rectŭs ĕrĭs, *thou wilt have been ruled,*	
3.	rectŭs ĕrĭt, *he will have been ruled,*	
PLUR. 1.	rectī ĕrĭmŭs, *we shall have been ruled,*	
2.	rectī ĕrĭtĭs, *you will have been ruled,*	
3.	rectī ĕrunt, *they will have been ruled.*	

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

PRES. 2. rĕgĕrĕ, *be thou ruled,*
FUT. 2. rĕgĭtŏr, *thou shalt be ruled,*
3. rĕgĭtŏr, *he shall be ruled* or *let him be ruled.*

Plural.

PRES. 2. rĕgĭmĭnī, *be ye ruled,*
FUT. 3. rĕguntŏr, *they shall be ruled* or *let them be ruled.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. rĕgī, *to be ruled,*
PERF. rectŭs essĕ, *to have been ruled,*
FUT. rectŭm īrī, *to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERF. rectŭs, *ruled, having been ruled,*
GERUNDIVE. rĕgendŭs, *to be ruled, worthy to be ruled.*

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the present stem, **rĕg-**, are formed

	Active.	Passive.
IND. PRES.	rego,	regor,
IMPERF.	regēbam,	regēbar,
FUT.	regam,	regar,
SUBJ. PRES.	regam,	regar,
IMPERF.	regĕrem,	regĕrer,
IMPERAT. PRES.	rege,	regĕre,
FUT.	regĭto,	regĭtor,
INF. PRES.	regĕre,	regi,
PRES. PART.	regens,	
GER. AND GERUNDIVE.	regendi.	regendus.

From the perfect stem, **rex-**, are formed — From the supine stem, **rect-**, are formed

	Active.	Passive.
IND. PERF.	rexi,	rectus sum,
PLUP.	rexĕram,	rectus eram,
FUT. PERF.	rexĕro,	rectus ero,
SUBJ. PERF.	rexĕrim,	rectus sim,
PLUP.	rexissem,	rectus essem,
INF. PERF.	rexisse.	rectus esse.

From the Supine stem, rect-, are formed

	Active.	Passive.
INF. FUT.	rectūrus esse,	rectum iri,
FUT. PART.	rectūrus,	
PERF. PART.		rectus,
SUPINES.	(*Acc.*) rectum.	(*Abl.*) rectu.

77. In Verbs in -io of the Third Conjugation, the i falls out when an i or er follows: as, capis, for *capi-is;* capĕrem, for *capi-ĕrem.* They are inflected as follows:

ACTIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Sup.
căpĭō̆,	căpĕrĕ,	cēpī,	captŭm.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	PRESENT TENSE.	
SING. 1.	căpĭō̆, *I take,*	căpiăm,
2.	căpĭs, *thou takest,*	căpiās,
3.	căpĭt, *he takes,*	căpiăt,
PLUR. 1.	căpĭmŭs, *we take,*	căpiāmŭs,
2.	căpĭtĭs, *you take,*	căpiātĭs,
3.	căpiunt, *they take.*	căpiant.
	IMPERFECT.	
SING. 1.	căpiēbăm, *I was taking, I took,*	căpĕrĕm,
2.	căpiēbās, *thou wast taking, thou didst take,*	căpĕrēs,
3.	căpiēbăt, *he was taking, he took,*	căpĕrĕt,
PLUR. 1.	căpiēbāmŭs, *we were taking, we took,*	căpĕrēmŭs,
2.	căpiēbātĭs, *you were taking, you took,*	căpĕrētĭs,
3.	căpiēbant, *they were taking, they took.*	căpĕrent.
	FUTURE.	
SING. 1.	căpiăm, *I shall take,*	
2.	căpiēs, *thou wilt take,*	
3.	căpiĕt, *he will take,*	
PLUR. 1.	căpiēmŭs, *we shall take,*	
2.	căpiētĭs, *you will take,*	
3.	căpient, *they will take.*	
	PERFECT AND AORIST, *I have taken, I took.*	
	cēpī, *etc.*	cēpĕrĭm, *etc.*

PLUPERFECT, *I had taken.*

cēpĕrăm, *etc.*	cēpissĕm, *etc.*

FUTURE PERFECT, *I shall have taken.*

cēpĕrŏ̄, *etc.*

IMPERATIVE.

	Singular.	Plural.
Pres. 2.	căpĕ,	căpĭtĕ,
Fut. 2.	căpĭtŏ̄,	căpĭtōtĕ,
3.	căpĭtŏ̄,	căpiuntŏ̄.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. căpĕrĕ,
Perf. cēpissĕ,
Fut. captūrŭs essĕ.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. căpĭens,
Fut. captūrŭs.

GERUND.

căpiendī, *etc.*

SUPINES.

Acc. captŭm, Abl. captū.

Passive Voice.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
căpiŏr,	căpī,	captŭs sŭm.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

	Indicative	Subjunctive
SING. 1.	căpiŏr, *I am taken,*	căpiăr,
2.	căpĕrĭs (rĕ), *thou art taken,*	căpiārĭs (rĕ),
3.	căpĭtŭr, *he is taken,*	căpiātŭr,
PLUR. 1.	căpĭmŭr, *we are taken,*	căpiāmŭr,
2.	căpĭmĭnī, *you are taken,*	căpiāmĭnī,
3.	căpiuntŭr, *they are taken.*	căpiantŭr.

IMPERFECT.

	Indicative	Subjunctive
SING. 1.	căpiēbār, *I was taken,*	căpĕrĕr,
2.	căpiēbārĭs (rĕ), *thou wast taken,*	căpĕrērĭs (rĕ),
3.	căpiēbātŭr, *he was taken,*	căpĕrētŭr,

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PLUR. 1. căpiēbāmŭr, *we were taken,*	căpĕrēmŭr,
2. căpiēbāmĭnī, *you were taken,*	căpĕrēmĭnī,
3. căpiēbantŭr, *they were taken.*	căpĕrentŭr.

FUTURE.

SING. 1. căpiăr, *I shall be taken,*
2. căpiērĭs (rĕ), *thou wilt be taken,*
3. căpiētŭr, *he will be taken,*
PLUR. 1. căpiēmŭr, *we shall be taken,*
2. căpiēmĭnī, *you will be taken,*
3. căpientŭr, *they will be taken.*

PERFECT AND AORIST, *I have been taken, I was taken.*

captŭs sŭm,	captŭs sim.

PLUPERFECT, *I had been taken.*

captŭs ĕrăm,	captŭs essĕm.

FUTURE PERFECT, *I shall have been taken.*

captŭs ĕrō̆.

IMPERATIVE.

	Singular.	Plural.
PRES. 2.	căpĕrĕ,	căpĭmĭnī,
FUT. 2.	căpĭtŏr,	
3.	căpĭtŏr.	căpiuntŏr.

INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLES.	
PRES.	căpī,		
PERF.	captŭs essĕ,	PERF.	captŭs, ă, ŭm.
FUT.	captŭm īrī.	GERUNDIVE.	căpiendŭs, ă, ŭm.

78. In the **Fourth Conjugation**, the **Verb Stem** and the **Present Stem** end in ī; to this termination the **Perfect** adds **vi**, and the **Supine**, **tum**.

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

I– VERBS.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
audiŏ,	audīrĕ,	audīvī,	audītŭm.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	PRESENT TENSE.	
SING. 1.	audiŏ, *I hear*,	audiăm,
2.	audīs, *thou hearest*,	audiās,
3.	audĭt, *he hears*,	audiăt,
PLUR. 1.	audīmŭs, *we hear*,	audiāmŭs,
2.	audītĭs, *you hear*,	audiātĭs,
3.	audiunt, *they hear*.	audiant.
	IMPERFECT.	
SING. 1.	audiēbăm, *I was hearing*, *I heard*,	audīrĕm,
2.	audiēbās, *thou wast hearing*, etc.,	audīrēs,
3.	audiēbăt, *he was hearing*, etc.,	audīrĕt,
PLUR. 1.	audiēbāmŭs, *we were hearing*, etc.,	audīrēmŭs,
2.	audiēbātĭs, *you were hearing*, etc.,	audīrētĭs,
3.	audiēbant, *they were hearing*, etc.	audīrent.
	FUTURE.	
SING. 1.	audiăm, *I shall hear*,	
2.	audiēs, *thou wilt hear*,	
3.	audiĕt, *he will hear*,	
PLUR. 1.	audiēmŭs, *we shall hear*,	
2.	audiētĭs, *you will hear*,	
3.	audient, *they will hear*.	
	PERFECT AND AORIST.	
SING. 1.	audīvī, *I have heard*, *I heard*,	audīvĕrĭm,
2.	audīvistī, *thou hast heard*, *thou heardst*,	audīvĕrĭs,
3.	audīvĭt, *he has heard*, *he heard*,	audīvĕrĭt.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PLUR. 1.	audīvĭmŭs, *we have heard, we heard,*	audīvĕrĭmŭs,
2.	audīvistĭs, *you have heard, you heard,*	audīvĕrĭtĭs,
3.	audīvērunt (rĕ), *they have heard, they heard.*	audīvĕrint.

PLUPERFECT.

SING. 1.	audīvĕrăm, *I had heard,*	audīvissĕm,
2.	audīvĕrās, *thou hadst heard,*	audīvissēs,
3.	audīvĕrăt, *he had heard,*	audīvissĕt,
PLUR. 1.	audīvĕrāmŭs, *we had heard,*	audīvissēmŭs,
2.	audīvĕrātĭs, *you had heard,*	audīvissētĭs,
3.	audīvĕrant, *they had heard.*	audīvissent.

FUTURE PERFECT.

SING. 1. audīvĕrŏ, *I shall have heard,*
2. audīvĕrīs, *thou wilt have heard,*
3. audīvĕrĭt, *he will have heard,*
PLUR. 1. audīvĕrīmŭs, *we shall have heard,*
2. audīvĕrītĭs, *you will have heard,*
3. audīvĕrint, *they will have heard.*

IMPERATIVE.

	Singular.	Plural.
PRES. 2.	audī, *hear thou,*	audītĕ, *hear ye,*
FUT. 2.	audītŏ, *thou shalt hear* or *do thou hear,*	audītōtĕ, *ye shall hear* or *do ye hear,*
3.	audītŏ, *he shall hear* or *let him hear.*	audiuntŏ, *they shall hear* or *let them hear.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. audīrĕ, *to hear,*
PERF. audīvissĕ, *to have heard,*
FUT. audītūrŭs essĕ, *to be about to hear.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. audiens, *hearing,*
FUT. audītūrŭs, *about to hear.*

GERUND.

GEN. audiendī, *of hearing,*
DAT. audiendō, *for hearing,*
ACC. audiendŭm, *hearing,*
ABL. audiendō, *by hearing.*

SUPINE.

Acc. audītŭm, *to hear*,
Abl. audītū, *in the hearing, to be heard.*

Passive Voice.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
audiŏr,	audīrī,	audītŭs sŭm.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	PRESENT TENSE.	
SING. 1.	audiŏr, *I am heard*,	audiăr,
2.	audīrĭs (rĕ), *thou art heard*,	audiārĭs (rĕ),
3.	audītŭr, *he is heard*,	audiātŭr,
PLUR. 1.	audīmŭr, *we are heard*,	audiāmŭr,
2.	audīmĭnī, *you are heard*,	audiāmĭnī,
3.	audiuntŭr, *they are heard.*	audiantŭr.
	IMPERFECT.	
SING. 1.	audiēbăr, *I was heard*,	audīrĕr,
2.	audiēbārĭs (rĕ), *thou wast heard*,	audīrērĭs (rĕ),
3.	audiēbātŭr, *he was heard*,	audīrētŭr,
PLUR. 1.	audiēbāmŭr, *we were heard*,	audīrēmŭr,
2.	audiēbāmĭnī, *you were heard*,	audīrēmĭnī,
3.	audiēbantŭr, *they were heard.*	audīrentur.
	FUTURE.	
SING. 1.	audiăr, *I shall be heard*,	
2.	audiērĭs (rĕ), *thou wilt be heard*,	
3.	audiētŭr, *he will be heard*,	
PLUR. 1.	audiēmŭr, *we shall be heard*,	
2.	audiēmĭnī, *you will be heard*,	
3.	audientŭr, *they will be heard.*	
	PERFECT AND AORIST.	
SING. 1.	audītŭs sŭm, *I have been heard, I was heard*,	audītŭs sĭm,
2.	audītŭs ĕs, *thou hast been heard*, etc.,	audītŭs sīs,
3.	audītŭs est, *he has been heard*, etc.,	audītŭs sĭt,

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
	PERFECT AND AORIST.	
PLUR. 1.	audītī sŭmŭs, *we have been heard*, etc.,	audītī sīmŭs,
2.	audītī estĭs, *you have been heard*, etc.,	audītī sītĭs,
3.	audītī sunt, *they have been heard*, etc.,	audītī sint.
	PLUPERFECT.	
SING. 1.	audītŭs ĕrăm, *I had been heard*,	audītŭs essĕm,
2.	audītŭs ĕrās, *thou hadst been heard*,	audītŭs essēs,
3.	audītŭs ĕrăt, *he had been heard*,	audītŭs essĕt,
PLUR. 1.	audītī ĕrāmŭs, *we had been heard*,	audītī essēmŭs,
2.	audītī ĕrātĭs, *you had been heard*,	audītī essētĭs,
3.	audītī ĕrant, *they had been heard*.	audītī essent.
	FUTURE PERFECT.	
SING. 1.	audītŭs ĕrŏ̆, *I shall have been heard*,	
2.	audītŭs ĕrĭs, *thou wilt have been heard*,	
3.	audītŭs ĕrĭt, *he will have been heard*,	
PLUR. 1.	audītī ĕrĭmŭs, *we shall have been heard*,	
2.	audītī ĕrĭtĭs, *you will have been heard*,	
3.	audītī ĕrunt, *they will have been heard*.	

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

PRES. 2. audīrĕ, *be thou heard*,
FUT. 2. audītŏr, *thou shalt be heard*,
3. audītŏr, *he shall be heard* or *let him be heard*.

Plural.

PRES. 2. audīmĭnī, *be ye heard*,
FUT. 3. audiuntŏr, *they shall be heard* or *let them be heard*.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. audīrī, *to be heard*,
PERF. auditŭs essĕ, *to have been heard*,
FUT. auditŭm īrī, *to be about to be heard*.

PARTICIPLES.

PERF. audītŭs, *heard*, *having been heard*,
GERUNDIVE. audiendŭs, *to be heard*, *worthy to be heard*.

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the present stem, **audī-**, are formed

	Active.	Passive.
IND. PRES.	**audio,**	**audior,**
IMPERF.	**audiēbam,**	**audiēbar,**
FUT.	**audiam,**	**audiar,**
SUBJ. PRES.	**audiam,**	**audiar,**
IMPERF.	**audīrem,**	**audīrer,**
IMPERAT. PRES.	**audi,**	**audīre,**
FUT.	**audīto,**	**audītor,**
INF. PRES.	**audīre,**	**audīri,**
PRES. PART.	**audiens,**	
GERUNDIVE.		**audiendus.**
GERUND.	**audiendi.**	

From the perfect stem, **audīv-**, are formed

From the supine stem, **audīt-**, are formed

	Active.	Passive.
IND. PERF.	**audīvi,**	**audītus sum,**
PLUP.	**audivĕram,**	**audītus eram,**
FUT. PERF.	**audivĕro,**	**audītus ero,**
SUBJ. PERF.	**audivĕrim,**	**audītus sim,**
PLUP.	**audivissem,**	**audītus essem,**
INF. PERF.	**audivisse.**	**audītus esse,**

From the supine stem, **audīt-**, are formed

INF. FUT.	**auditūrus esse,**	**audītum iri,**
FUT. PART.	**auditūrus,**	
PERF. PART.		**audītus,**
ACC. SUPINE.	**audītum.**	
ABL. SUPINE.		**audītu.**

79. DEPONENT VERBS.

Deponent verbs have the **inflections** of the Passive Voice with the **meanings** of the Active, and have also a present and future participle active and the gerunds and supines.

The following synopsis gives the first person singular, or other leading form, of the verbs **prĕcŏr,** *pray;* **vĕreŏr,** *fear;* **sĕquŏr,** *follow;* **partiŏr,** *divide:*

DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	1st Conjugation.	2d Conj.
PRESENT,	prĕcor, *I pray* or *I am praying,*	vĕreor,
IMPERFECT,	prĕcābar, *I was praying* or *I prayed,*	vĕrēbar,
FUTURE,	prĕcābor, *I shall pray,*	vĕrēbor,
PERF. AND AOR.,	prĕcātus sum, *I have prayed* or *I prayed,*	vĕrĭtus sum,
PLUPERFECT,	prĕcātus ĕram, *I had prayed,*	vĕrĭtus ĕram,
FUTURE PERF.,	prĕcātus ĕro, *I shall have prayed.*	vĕrĭtus ĕro.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT,	prĕcer, *I be praying, I pray,* etc.,	vĕrear,
IMPERFECT,	prĕcārer, *I were praying, I prayed,* etc.,	vĕrērer,
PERF. AND AOR.,	prĕcātus sim, *I prayed,* etc.,	vĕrĭtus sim,
PLUPERFECT,	prĕcātus essem, *I had prayed,* etc.	vĕrĭtus essem.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT,	prĕcārĕ, *pray* or *pray thou,*	vĕrērĕ,
FUTURE,	prĕcātor, *thou shalt pray.*	vĕrētor.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT,	prĕcārī, *to pray,*	vĕrērī,
PERFECT,	prĕcātus esse, *to have prayed,*	vĕrĭtus esse,
FUTURE,	prĕcātūrus esse, *to be about to pray.*	vĕrĭtūrus esse.

PARTICIPLES, ETC.

PRESENT,	prĕcans, *praying,*	vĕrens,
FUTURE,	prĕcātūrus, *going to pray,*	vĕrĭtūrus,
PERFECT,	prĕcātus, *having prayed,*	vĕrĭtus,
GERUND,	prĕcandī, *of praying,*	vĕrendī,
GERUNDIVE,	prĕcandus, *to be prayed,*	vĕrendus,
ACC. SUPINE,	prĕcātum, *to pray,*	vĕrĭtum,
ABL. SUPINE,	prĕcātū, *in praying.*	vĕrĭtū.

DEPONENT VERBS.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	3d Conjugation.	4th Conj.
PRESENT,	**sĕquor,** *I follow* or *I am following,*	**partior,**
IMPERFECT,	**sĕquēbar,** *I was following* or *I followed,*	**partiēbar,**
FUTURE,	**sĕquar,** *I shall follow,*	**partiar,**
PERF. AND AOR.,	**sĕcūtus sum,** *I have followed* or *I followed,*	**partītus sum,**
PLUPERFECT,	**sĕcūtus ĕram,** *I had followed,*	**partītus ĕram,**
FUTURE PERF.,	**sĕcūtus ĕro,** *I shall have followed.*	**partītus ĕro.**

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT,	**sĕquar,** *I be following, I follow,* etc.,	**partiar,**
IMPERFECT,	**sĕquĕrer,** *I were following, I followed,* etc.,	**partīrer,**
PERF. AND AOR.,	**sĕcūtus sim,** *I followed,* etc.,	**partītus sim,**
PLUPERFECT,	**sĕcūtus essem,** *I had followed,* etc.	**partītus essem.**

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT,	**sĕquĕrĕ,** *follow* or *follow thou,*	**partīrĕ,**
FUTURE,	**sĕcūtor,** *thou shalt follow.*	**partītor.**

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT,	**sĕquī,** *to follow,*	**partīrī,**
PERFECT,	**sĕcūtus esse,** *to have followed,*	**partītus esse,**
FUTURE,	**sĕcūtūrus esse,** *to be about to follow.*	**partītūrus esse.**

PARTICIPLES, ETC.

PRESENT,	**sĕquens,** *following,*	**partiens,**
FUTURE,	**sĕcūtūrus,** *going to follow,*	**partītūrus,**
PERFECT,	**sĕcūtus,** *having followed,*	**partītus,**
GERUND,	**sĕquendī,** *of following,*	**partiendī,**
GERUNDIVE,	**sĕquendus,** *to be followed,*	**partiendus,**
ACC. SUPINE,	**sĕcūtum,** *to follow,*	**partītum,**
ABL. SUPINE,	**sĕcūtū,** *in following.*	**partītū.**

80. Some Deponents originate in the reflexive use of the Passive, like the Greek Middle: as, **glōrior**, *I boast (myself)*; **vescor**, *I feed (myself)*. Others grow out of Passive verbs: as, **grăvor**, *I grudge*, *I am loth* (literally, *I am burdened*).

1. More than half of the Deponents are of the First Conjugation, mostly derived from nouns.

2. Some Deponents have also an Active form with a similar meaning: as, **pūnior** and **pūnio**, *I punish*; **ădūlor** and **ădūlo**, *I fawn*.

3. Many Deponents are occasionally used in a passive sense: as, **pŏpŭlāri**, *to plunder* or *to be plundered*; **partīri**, *to divide* or *to be divided*.

4. The **perfect participle** in **us** of Deponent verbs is often used in a passive sense: as, **ădeptus**, *being obtained*, as well as *having obtained*. The passive signification is confined chiefly, however, to material objects: as, **ădeptā lībertāte**, but not **ădeptō mărītō**.

5. The **gerundive** is found only in transitive verbs (as **hortandus**), or in the neuter in impersonal constructions (as **mŏriendum est omnĭbus**).

81. Quasi-Passives. — A few verbs of active form are used in a passive sense, and are called Quasi-Passive or Neutral Passive verbs. These are **exsŭlo**, *I am banished*, **vāpŭlo**, *I am beaten*, **fio**, when meaning *I am made*, **vēnĕo**, *I am on sale*, *I am sold*, **lĭceo**, *I am put to auction* (but **lĭceor**, *I bid at an auction*). To this list some add **pĕreo**, *I am lost* or *destroyed*.

1. **Semi-Deponents.**— The intransitive verbs **audeo**, *I dare*, **gaudeo**, *I rejoice*, **sŏleo**, *I am wont*, **fīdo**, *I trust*, and **fio**, *I become*, have the passive form in the perfect and its cognate tenses; hence they are called Semi-Deponents or Neuter Passives.

2. The following verbs have an active perfect, with a passive perfect participle, active in sense: **cēno**, cēnāvi, *I supped*, **cēnātus**, *having supped*; **jūro**, jūrāvi, *I swore*, **jūrātus**, *having sworn*; **prandeo**, prandi, *I dined*, **pransus**, *having dined*; **nūbo**, nupsi, lit., *I put on the veil*, i. e., *I was wedded*, **nupta**, *wedded*.

3. Other deponent perfect participles from active intransitive verbs are **ădultus**, *grown up*, from **ădŏlesco**; **crētus**, *sprung*, from **cresco**; **suētus**, *accustomed*, from **suesco**; **obsŏlētus**, *out of date*, from **obsŏlesco**; **plăcĭtus**, *pleasing*, from **plăceo**; **pōtus**, *having drunk*, from an old root, **po-**; **pĕrōsus**, *hating*, from **pĕrōdi**; **exōsus**, *hating* or *hating utterly*; **pertaesus**, *tired*, from **pertaedet**; also **coălĭtus** (from **coălesco**), **dēflagrātus**, **exŏlētus**, **ĭnĭtus**, **invĕtĕrātus**, **prōpensus**, and the compounds **conjūrātus**, **injūrātus**.

Scheme of the Active Voice.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	Singular. 1.	2.	3.	Plural. 1.	2.	3.
PRESENT.	*I*	*thou*	*he*, etc.	*we*	*ye*	*they*
	love	*lovest*	*loves*	*love*	*love*	*love*, etc.
	ăm -ō̆	-ās	-ăt	-āmŭs	-ātĭs	-ant
	mŏn -eō̆	-ēs	-ĕt	-ēmŭs	-ētĭs	-ent
	rĕg -ō̆	-ĭs	-ĭt	-ĭmŭs	-ĭtĭs	-unt
	aud -iō̆	-īs	-ĭt	-īmŭs	-ītĭs	-iunt
IMPERFECT.	*was*	*wast*	*was*	*were*	*were*	*were—loving*, etc.
	amā -băm monē -băm regē -băm audiē -băm	-bās	-băt	-bāmŭs	-bātĭs	-bant
FUTURE.	*shall*	*wilt*	*will*	*shall*	*will*	*will—love*, etc.
	amā -bō̆ monē -bō̆	-bĭs	-bĭt	-bĭmŭs	-bĭtĭs	-bunt
	reg -ăm audi -ăm	-ēs	-ĕt	-ēmŭs	-ētĭs	-ent
PERF. AND AOR.	*loved* or *have*	*lovedst* *hast*	*loved* *has*	*loved* *have*	*loved* *have*	*loved*, etc. *have—loved*, etc.
	amāv -ī monu -ī rex -ī audīv -ī	-istī	-ĭt	-ĭmŭs	-istĭs	-ērunt *or* -ērĕ
PLUPERFECT.	*had*	*hadst*	*had*	*had*	*had*	*had—loved*, etc.
	amāv -ĕrăm monu -ĕrăm rex -ĕrăm audīv -ĕrăm	-ĕrās	-ĕrăt	-ĕrāmŭs	-ĕrātĭs	-ĕrant
FUT. PERFECT.	*shall*	*wilt*	*will*	*shall*	*will*	*will—have loved*, etc.
	amāv -ĕrō̆ monu -ĕrō̆ rex -ĕrō̆ audīv -ĕrō̆	-ĕrĭ̄s	-ĕrĭt	-ĕrĭ̄mŭs,	-ĕrĭ̄tĭs	-ĕrint

FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
	I	*thou*	*he*, etc.	*we*	*ye*	*they are*
	am	*art*	*is*	*are*	*are*	*—loved*, etc.
am	-ŏr	-ārĭs	-ātŭr	-āmŭr	-āmĭnī	-antŭr
mon	-eŏr	-ērĭs	-ētŭr	-ēmŭr	-ēmĭnī	-entŭr
reg	-ŏr	-ĕrĭs	-ĭtŭr	-ĭmŭr	-ĭmĭnī	-untŭr
aud	-iŏr	-īrĭs	-ītŭr	-īmŭr	-īmĭnī	-iuntŭr
	was	*wast*	*was*	*were*	*were*	*were—being loved*, etc.
amā	-băr					
monē	-băr	-bār-ĭs (ĕ)	-bātŭr	-bāmŭr	-bāmĭnī	-bantŭr
regē	-băr					
audiē	-băr					
	shall	*wilt*	*will*	*shall*	*will*	*will be—loved*, etc.
amā	-bŏr	-bĕr-ĭs (ĕ)	-bĭtŭr	-bĭmŭr	-bĭmĭnī	-buntŭr
monē	-bŏr					
reg	-ăr	-ēr-ĭs (ĕ)	-ētŭr	-ēmŭr	-ēmĭnī	-entŭr
audi	-ăr					

was or have	*wast hast*	*was has*	*were have*	*were have*	*were—loved*, etc. *have—been loved*,
amātŭs, monĭtŭs, rectŭs, audītŭs			amātī, monĭtī, rectī, audītī [etc.		
sŭm (fuī)	ĕs (fuistī)	est (fuĭt)	sŭmŭs (fuĭmŭs)	estĭs (fuistĭs)	sunt (fuērunt, ĕ)
had	*hadst*	*had*	*had*	*had*	*had—been loved*,
amātŭs, monĭtŭs, rectŭs, audītŭs			amātī, monĭtī rectī audītī [etc.		
ĕrăm (fuĕrăm)	ĕrās (fuĕrās)	ĕrăt (fuĕrăt)	ĕrāmŭs (fuĕrāmŭs)	ĕrātĭs (fuĕrātĭs)	ĕrant (fuĕrant)
shall	*wilt*	*will*	*shall*	*will*	*will—have been loved*,
amātŭs, monĭtŭs, rectŭs, audītŭs			amātī, monĭtī, rectī, audītī [etc.		
ĕrŏ (fuĕrŏ)	ĕrĭs (fuĕrĭs)	ĕrĭt (fuĕrĭt)	ĕrĭmŭs (fuĕrĭmŭs)	ĕrĭtĭs (fuĕrĭtĭs)	ĕrunt (fuĕrint)

SCHEME OF THE ACTIVE VOICE.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

		Singular. 1	2	3	Plural. 1	2	3
PRESENT.	am	-ĕm	-ēs	-ĕt	-ēmŭs	-ētĭs	-ent
	mone	-ăm	-ās	-ăt	-āmŭs	-ātĭs	-ant
	reg	-ăm	-ās	-ăt	-āmŭs	-ātĭs	-ant
	audi	-ăm	-ās	-ăt	-āmŭs	-ātĭs	-ant
IMPERFECT.	amā	-rĕm	-rēs	-rĕt	-rēmŭs	-rētĭs	-rent
	monē	-rĕm					
	regĕ	-rĕm					
	audī	-rĕm					
PERFECT AND AORIST.	amāv	-ĕrĭm	-ĕrĭ̄s	-ĕrĭt	-ĕrĭ̄mus	-ĕrĭ̄tĭs	-ĕrint
	monu	-ĕrĭm					
	rex	-ĕrĭm					
	audīv	-ĕrĭm					
PLUPERFECT.	amāv- / monu- / rex- / audīv-	issĕm	-issēs	-issĕt	-issēmŭs	-issētĭs	-issent

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.			FUTURE.				
	S. 2.	Pl. 2.		S. 2.	S. 3.	Pl. 2.	Pl. 3.
love	*thou*	*ye*		*thou*	*he*	*ye*	*they*
am	-ā	-ātĕ	am	-ātō̆	-ātō̆	-ātōtĕ	-antō̆
mon	-ē	-ētĕ	mon	-ētō̆	-ētō̆	-ētōtĕ	-entō̆
reg	-ĕ	-ĭtĕ	reg	-ĭtō̆	-ĭtō̆	-ĭtōtĕ	-untō̆
aud	-ī	-ītĕ	aud	-ītō̆	-ītō̆	-ītōtĕ	-iuntō̆

must love, shall love, etc.

INFINITIVE.

VERB

PRES. (IMPF.)	PERF. (PLUP.)	FUTURE.
to love, etc.	*to have loved*, etc.	*to be about to love*, etc.
amā -rĕ	amāv -issĕ	amāt -ūrŭs essĕ
monē -rĕ	monu -issĕ	monĭt -ūrŭs essĕ
regĕ -rĕ	rex -issĕ	rect -ūrŭs essĕ
audī -rĕ	audīv -issĕ	audīt -ūrŭs essĕ

GERUNDS.	SUPINES.	PARTIC. PRES.	PARTIC. FUT.
loving, of, by, etc.	*to love, in loving*, etc.	*loving*, etc.	*about to love*, etc.
amand -ī -ō -ŭm	amāt -ŭm -ū	ama -ns	amatūr -ŭs -ă -ŭm
monend -ī -ō -ŭm	monĭt -ŭm -ū	mone -ns	monitūr -ŭs -ă -ŭm
regend -ī -ō -ŭm	rect -ŭm -ū	rege -ns	rectūr -ŭs -ă -ŭm
audiend -ī -ō -ŭm	audīt -ŭm -ū	audie -ns	auditūr -ŭs -ă -ŭm

FOUR CONJUGATIONS.
PASSIVE VOICE.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	Singular. 1.	2.	3.	Plural. 1.	2.	3
am	-ĕr	-ēr-ĭs(ĕ)	-ētŭr	-ēmŭr	-ēmĭnī	-entŭr
mone	-ăr	-ār-ĭs(ĕ)	-ātŭr	-āmŭr	-āmĭnī	-antŭr
reg	-ăr	-ār-ĭs(ĕ)	-ātŭr	-āmŭr	-āmĭnī	-antŭr
audi	-ăr	-ār-ĭs(ĕ)	-ātŭr	-āmŭr	-āmĭnī	-antŭr
amā	-rĕr	-rēr-ĭs(ĕ)	-rētŭr	-rēmŭr	-rēmĭnī	-rentŭr
monē	-rĕr					
regĕ	-rĕr					
audī	-rĕr					

amātŭs, monĭtŭs, rectŭs, audītŭs			amātī, monĭtī, rectī, audītī		
sĭm	sīs	sĭt	sīmŭs	sītĭs	sint
(fuĕrĭm)	(fuĕrĭs)	(fuĕrĭt)	(fuĕrĭmŭs)	(fuĕrĭtĭs)	(fuĕrint)

amātŭs, monĭtŭs, rectŭs, audītŭs			amātī, monĭtī, rectī, audītī		
essĕm	essēs	essĕt	essēmŭs	essētĭs	essent
(fuissĕm)	(fuissēs)	(fuissĕt)	(fuissēmŭs)	(fuissētĭs)	(fuissent)

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

	S. 2.	Pl. 2.
be	*thou*	*ye—loved*, etc.
amā	-rĕ	-mĭnī
monē	-rĕ	-mĭnī
reg	-ĕrĕ	-ĭmĭnī
audī	-rĕ	-mĭnī

FUTURE.

	S. 2.	S. 3.	Pl. 3.	
	thou	*he*	*they*	
amā	-tŏr	-tŏr	-ntŏr	*must be, shall be, loved, etc.*
monē	-tŏr	-tŏr	-ntŏr	
reg	-ĭtor	-ĭtŏr	-untŏr	
audī	-tŏr	-tŏr	-untŏr	

INFINITE.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. (IMPF.) *to be loved*, etc.

amā	-rī
monē	-rī
reg	-ī
audī	-rī

PERF. (PLUP.) *to have been loved*, etc.

amāt	-ŭs	essĕ
monĭt	-ŭs	
rect	-ŭs	
audīt	-ŭs	

FUTURE. *to be about to be loved*, etc.

amāt	-ŭm	īrī
monĭt	-ŭm	
rect	-ŭm	
audīt	-ŭm	

GERUNDIVE. *meet to be loved*, etc.

amand	-ŭs -ă -ŭm
monend	-ŭs -ă -ŭm
regend	-ŭs -ă -ŭm
audiend	-ŭs -ă -ŭm

PARTIC. PERF. (PLUP.) *loved*, etc.

amāt	-ŭs -ă -ŭm
monĭt	-ŭs -ă -ŭm
rect	-ŭs -ă -ŭm
audīt	-ŭs -ă -ŭm

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS.

82. The Participles in -urus and -dus may be combined with all the tenses of the verb sum. Thus are formed (1) the Periphrastic Future Conjugation and (2) the **Periphrastic Gerundive Conjugation.**

1. ămātūrŭs, -ă, -ŭm essĕ, *to be about to love.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRES.	**ămātūrŭs sŭm**, *I am about to love,*	**ămātūrŭs sĭm,**
IMPERF.	**ămātūrŭs ĕrăm**, *I was about to love,*	**ămātūrŭs essĕm,**
FUT.	**ămātūrŭs ĕrō̆**, *I shall be about to love,*	
PERF. AND AOR.	**ămātūrŭs fuī**, *I have been (was) about to love,*	**ămātūrŭs fuĕrĭm,**
PLUPERF.	**ămātūrŭs fuĕrăm**, *I had been about to love,*	**ămātūrŭs fuissĕm.**
FUT. PERF.	**ămātūrŭs fuĕrō̆**, *I shall have been about to love.*	

INFINITIVE.

PRES. **ămātūrŭs, ă, -ŭm essĕ**, *to be about to love,*
PERF. **ămātūrŭs, -ă, -ŭm fuissĕ**, *to have been about to love.*

2. ămandŭs, -ă, -ŭm essĕ, *to deserve to be loved.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRES.	**ămandŭs sŭm**, *I have to be loved,*	**ămandŭs sĭm,**
IMPERF.	**ămandŭs ĕrăm**, *I had to be loved,*	**ămandŭs essĕm,**
FUT.	**ămandŭs ĕrō̆**, *I shall deserve to be loved,*	
PERF. AND AOR.	**ămandŭs fuī**, *I have had (I had) to be loved,*	**ămandŭs fuĕrĭm,**
PLUPERF.	**ămandŭs fuĕrăm**, *I had been worthy to be loved.*	**ămandŭs fuissĕm.**

INFINITIVE.

PRES. **ămandŭs, -ă, -ŭm essĕ**, *to have* (or *to deserve*) *to be loved,*
PERF. **ămandŭs, -ă, -ŭm fuisse**, *to have been worthy to be loved.*

83. The Supine in -um is found in comparatively few verbs,—not more, it is said, than about three hundred,—but is often mentioned in giving the Principal Parts of a verb whenever there is a perfect participle (or, more properly, the neuter of the participle is given in its stead).

1. In the compound tenses of the indicative and subjunctive passive the participle is always in the nominative case, but may be used in both numbers and in all genders to suit the subject: as, **amāta erat**, *she was*

loved; **negōtium confectum est,** *the business has been finished;* **laudāti sunt viri,** *the men have been* (or *are*) *praised;* **accepta sunt vulnera,** *wounds were received.*

2. The participles in the **compound infinitive** are used either in the nominative or (commonly) in the **accusative** of both numbers and all genders.

84. *SPECIAL FORMS AND ABBREVIATIONS.*

1. In the older writers the **present subjunctive** is occasionally made in **-im, -is, -it,** etc.: as, **ĕdim, edīs, edit, edīmus, edītis, edint,** for *edam, edas, edat,* etc. So **comĕdim, exĕdint.** Also from **duo, duim,** etc., and **interduim, perduim** (as, **Di te perduint** (= *perdant*), **creduis,** etc. This form was retained in **sum** and **volo,** with their compounds.

2. **The imperfect indicative** of the fourth conjugation is often made by the older writers in **-ībam, -ībar,** instead of *-iēbam, -iēbar.* So in the future, **-ībo** and **-ībor** were used for *-iam* and *-iar;* **ībam** and **ībo** remain in **eo, queo,** and **nequeo.**

3. The termination **-re** (for *-ris*) in the **second person singular** of the passive voice is very common in all tenses except the present indicative, in which it is rarely found. In the fourth conjugation it is almost always avoided, unless in deponents, where it could not be taken for the infinitive active.

4. The four verbs **dīco, dūco, făcio,** and **fĕro** take in the second singular **imperative** the abbreviated forms **dīc, dūc, făc,** and **fĕr;** so also the compounds of these verbs (except those compounds of **facio** which change **a** into **i**; as, **effĭce, confĭce**). The old writers, and the poets occasionally, use the full forms **dice, duce,** and **face. Scio** has **scito** instead of *sci,* and in the plural usually **scitōte.**

5. The active form of the **future imperative** was often used by early writers instead of the passive, in deponent verbs: as, **arbĭtrāto,** for *arbitrator;* **utunto,** for *utuntor.* The forms **-mĭno,** for the second and third persons singular, and **-mĭnor,** for the second person plural were used rarely.

6. The antique **infinitive** often ended in **-ier** instead of **-i**: as, **amārier,** for *amāri.* Vergil and Horace sometimes use this form, as well as older writers.

7. In those verbs which have a **v** in the **perfect stem** a contraction often takes place, by omitting **v** and absorbing the first vowel of the termination in the final vowel of the stem: as, **amāsti,** for *amāvi-sti;* **amasse,** for *amāvi-sse;* **implessem,** for *implēvi-ssem;* **nosse,** for *novi-sse;* **mostis,** for *movistis;* **summosses,** for *submovi-sses;* **isse,** for *ivi-sse;* **amāram,** for *amāveram;* **implēro,** for *impleve-ro;* **complērunt,** for *complevē-runt:* **nōrunt,** for *novē-runt;* **adjūris,** for *adjuvĕ-ris;* **admōrunt,** for *admovē-runt;* **sīrĭs,** for *sīvĕ-ris* (from **sīno**). But this contraction is never made before the termination **ēre** (for **ērunt**) in the third plural of the perfect indicative.

When the **v** is preceded by **i**, the **v** is frequently *omitted* without contraction: as, **finiĕro**, for *finīv-ero;* **audiĕram**, for *audiv-ĕram;* **iĕro**, for *īv-ĕro;* **iĕram**, for *īv-ĕram.* The **i** also before **v** is sometimes dropped: as, **audisse**, for *aud-iv-isse;* **audisti**, for *aud-iv-isti.*

8. **In perfect stems** ending in **s** or **x** the letters **is, si, iss,** and **sis** are occasionally omitted in the perfect and derived tenses, more particularly in verbs of the third conjugation: as, **dixti** for *dixisti;* **evasti** for *evasisti;* **surrexe** for *surrexisse;* **erepsēmus** for *erepsissēmus;* **exstinxe** for *extinxisse;* **divisse** for *divisisse;* **accestis** for *accessistis.*

9. In the **perfect** of the first, third, and fourth conjugations we sometimes find such contracted forms as **fumāt, cupīt, audīt,** for *fumāvit, cupīvit* (*cupiit*), *audīvit* (*audiit*). So rarely in the first person, as **sepĕlī.**

10. **In the third person plural** of the **perfect** indicative the form in **ēre** is less common than that in **ērunt**, especially in prose.

11. An older form of the termination of the gerund and gerundive in **-undi, -undus** is common in Plautus, Terence, and Sallust. The same terminations, after **i**, and in the words **gerundus** and **ferundus**, occur frequently in the manuscripts of Caesar, Cicero, and Livy. The verb **īre,** *to go*, and its compounds, always have this form: as, **eundum, adeundus.** Some law phrases also: as, **rerum repetundarum; familiae erciscundae; finibus regundis; in jure dicundo.** But after **u** or **v** no other form of the suffix is found than **-endi, -endus.**

12. In the older language, of Plautus and ancient laws and formularies, **a future perfect indicative in -so (-sso), subjunctive perfect in -sim (-ssim), future or future perfect infinitive in -sĕre (-ssĕre), and passive indicative future perfect in -sĭtur (-ssĭtur)** are found.

a. Of all these forms **faxo, faxim** (= facso, facsim), and **ausim,** almost alone occur after the time of Terence. Instances are found in laws and other antique documents and formulæ in Livy and Cicero, but these do not belong to the age of their real or feigned recorders.

b. These forms are made by suffixing **s** to the verb-stem, as in the Greek future and aorist, a short **ĭ** or sometimes **e** of the stem being omitted. The double **s** in the forms from **a-** and (a few) **e-** verbs is either a mode of marking the place of the accent, or due to a mistaken etymology, as if the form were analogous to **amasse,** from **amavisse.** Possibly both causes may have combined.

85. *IRREGULAR VERBS.*

1. Fero * (Sansk., *bhar-;* Greek, φερ-), *I bear* or *bring.*

The peculiarities of this verb are, (1) that in the forms from the **present stem** it casts out **i** before **s** and **t**, as *fers* (feris), *fertur* (feritur); also **e** between **r** and **r**, as *ferre* (ferere): (2) it takes its **perfect stem, tŭl-,** from

* The irregular forms are given in italics.

the root **tol-**, and the **supine stem lāt-** (for t-lat-) from another form of the same root (**tal-** *or* **tla-**).

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.,	Pres. Inf.,	Perf. Ind.,	Supine.
fĕrō̆,	ferrĕ,	tŭlī,	lātŭm.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT TENSE.	
SING. 1. fĕrō̆, *I bear,*	fĕrăm,
2. *fers, thou bearest,*	fĕrās,
3. *fert, he bears,*	fĕrăt,
PLUR. 1. fĕrĭmŭs, *we bear,*	fĕrāmŭs,
2. *fertĭs, you bear,*	fĕrātĭs,
3. fĕrunt, *they bear.*	fĕrant.
IMPERFECT.	
SING. 1. fĕrēbăm, *I was bearing, I bore,*	*ferrĕm,*
2. fĕrēbās, *thou wast bearing, didst bear,*	*ferrēs,*
3. fĕrēbăt, *he was bearing, he bore,*	*ferrĕt,*
PLUR. 1. fĕrēbāmŭs, *we were bearing,* etc.,	*ferrēmŭs,*
2. fĕrēbātĭs, *you were bearing,* etc.,	*ferrētĭs,*
3. fĕrēbant, *they were bearing,* etc.	*ferrent.*
FUTURE.	
SING. 1. fĕrăm, *I shall bear,*	
2. fĕrēs, *thou wilt bear,*	
3. fĕrĕt, *he will bear,*	
PLUR. 1. fĕrēmŭs, *we shall bear,*	
2. fĕrētĭs, *you will bear,*	
3. fĕrent, *they will bear.*	
PERFECT AND AORIST.	
SING. 1. tŭlī, *I have borne, I bore,*	tŭlĕrĭm,
2. tŭlistī (*etc.*, regularly).*	tŭlĕrĭs, *etc.*

* Give the inflections in full: *tuli, tulisti, tulit, tulĭmus, tulistis, tulērunt* or *tulēre.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PLUPERFECT.	
tŭlĕrăm, *etc.*	tŭlissĕm, *etc.*
FUTURE PERFECT.	
tŭlĕrŏ, *etc.*	

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. 2.	*fĕr*, bear thou,	*fertĕ*, bear ye,
FUT. 2.	*fertŏ*, thou shalt bear *or* do thou bear,	*fertōtĕ*, ye shall bear *or* do ye bear,
3.	*fertŏ*, he shall bear *or* let him bear.	*fĕruntŏ*, they shall bear *or* let them bear.

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLES.
PRES. *ferrĕ*, *to bear*,	PRES. fĕrens, *bearing*,
PERF. tŭlissĕ, *to have borne*,	
FUT. lātūrŭs essĕ, *to be about to bear.*	FUT. lātūrŭs, *about to bear.*

GERUND.	SUPINES.
GEN. fĕrendī, *of bearing*, etc.	ACC. lātŭm,
	ABL. lātū.

PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.,	Pres. Inf.,	Perf. Ind.,
fĕrŏr,	**ferrī,**	**lātŭs sŭm.**

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	PRESENT TENSE.	
SING. 1.	fĕrŏr, *I am borne,*	fĕrăr,
2.	*ferrĭs, thou art borne,*	fĕrārĭs *or* -rĕ,
3.	*fertŭr; he is borne,*	fĕrātŭr,
PLUR. 1.	fĕrĭmŭr, *we are borne,*	fĕrāmŭr,
2.	fĕrĭmĭnī, *you are borne,*	fĕrāmĭnī,
3.	fĕruntŭr, *they are borne.*	fĕrantŭr.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
IMPERFECT.	
SING. 1. fĕrēbăr, *I was borne,*	*ferrĕr,*
2. fĕrēbārĭs *or* -rĕ, *thou wast borne,*	*ferrērĭs* or *-rĕ,*
3. fĕrēbātŭr, *he was borne,*	*ferrētŭr,*
PLUR. 1. fĕrēbāmŭr, *we were borne,*	*ferrēmŭr,*
2. fĕrēbāmĭnī, *you were borne,*	*ferrēmĭnī,*
3. fĕrēbantŭr, *they were borne.*	*ferrentŭr.*

FUTURE.

SING. 1. fĕrăr, *I shall be borne,*
2. fĕrērĭs *or* -rĕ, *thou wilt be borne,*
3. fĕrētŭr, *he will be borne,*
PLUR. 1. fĕrēmŭr, *we shall be borne,*
2. fĕrēmĭnī, *you will be borne,*
3. fĕrentŭr, *they will be borne.*

PERFECT AND AORIST.	
lātŭs sŭm, *etc.*	lātŭs sĭm, *etc.*
PLUPERFECT.	
lātŭs ĕrăm, *etc.*	lātŭs essĕm, *etc.*
FUTURE PERFECT.	
lātŭs ĕrŏ, *etc.*	

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

PRES. 2. *ferrĕ,* be thou borne,
FUT. 2. *fertor,* thou shalt be borne *or* do thou be borne,
3. *fertor,* he shall be borne *or* let him be borne.

Plural.

PRES. 2. fĕrĭmĭnī, *be ye borne,*
FUT. 3. fĕruntor, *they shall be borne* or *let them be borne.*

INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLES.	
PRES.	*ferrī, to be borne,*		
PERF.	lātŭs essĕ, *to have been borne,*	PERF.	lātŭs, *borne, having been borne,*
FUT.	lātŭm īrī.	GERUNDIVE.	fĕrendŭs, *to be borne.*

Note 1.—In like manner are inflected the **compounds** of **fĕro**; as, **affĕro** (adfero), **afferre, attŭli, allātum**; **aufĕro** (ab+fero), **auferre, abstŭli, ablātum**; **diffĕro, differre, distŭli, dīlātum**; **rĕfĕro, referre, rettŭli, relātum,** etc.

Note 2.—An archaic perfect, **tĕtŭli**, is found; also **tĕtŭlĕro, tĕtŭlissem, tĕtŭlisse.**

2. **Fīo** (Sansk., *bhū*; Greek, φυ-), *I am made, become.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.,	Pres. Inf.,	Perf. Part.,
fīŏ,	**fĭĕrī,**	**factŭs.**

		INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
		PRESENT TENSE.	
SING.	1.	fīŏ, *I am made, I become,*	fīăm,
	2.	fīs, *thou art made,* etc.,	fīās,
	3.	fĭt, *he is made,* etc.,	fīăt,
PLUR.	1.	(fīmŭs),* *we are made,* etc.,	fīāmŭs,
	2.	(fītĭs), *you are made,* etc.,	fīātĭs,
	3.	fīunt, *they are made,* etc.	fīant.
		IMPERFECT.	
SING.	1.	fĭēbăm, *I was made, I became,*	fĭĕrĕm,
	2.	fĭēbās, *thou wast made,* etc.,	fĭĕrēs,
	3.	fĭēbăt,	fĭĕrĕt,
PLUR.	1.	fĭēbāmŭs,	fĭĕrēmŭs,
	2.	fĭēbātĭs,	fĭĕrētĭs,
	3.	fĭēbant.	fĭĕrent.

* Forms in parentheses are seldom used.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
	FUTURE.	
SING.	1. fīăm, *I shall be made, I shall become,*	
	2. fīēs, *thou wilt be made, thou wilt become,*	
	3. fīĕt, *etc.*	
PLUR.	1. fīēmŭs,	
	2. fīētĭs,	
	3. fīent.	
	PERFECT AND AORIST.	
SING.	1. factŭs sum, *I have been made* (or *was made*), *I have become* (or *became*),	factŭs sĭm,
	2. factŭs ĕs, *thou hast been made*, etc.,	factŭs sīs,
	3. factŭs est,	factŭs sĭt,
PLUR.	1. factī sŭmŭs,	factī sīmŭs,
	2. factī estĭs,	factī sītĭs,
	3. factī sunt.	factī sint.
	PLUPERFECT.	
	factŭs ĕrăm, *etc.*	factŭs essĕm, *etc.*
	FUTURE PERFECT.	
	factŭs ĕrŏ, *etc.*	

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	2.	fī,	(fītĕ),
FUT.	2.	(fītŏ),	(fītōtĕ),
	3.	(fītŏ).	(fīuntŏ).

INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLES.	
PRES.	*fiĕri*,	PERF.	factŭs,
PERF.	factŭs essĕ,	GERUNDIVE.	făciendŭs.
FUT.	factŭm īrī.		

Note 1.—The **i** is long except before **er** and in **fĭt**. In **fierem** and **fieri**, Plautus and Terence often have the **i** of the stem long.

Note 2.—**Fio** (fu-i-o) is only a strengthened form of **fu-**. Hence **fore** and **futūrus** may be assigned to **fio** as well as to **sum**. Cf. Cic.: *neque ego ea, quae facta sunt, fore cum dicebam, divinabam futura;* and *quid fiat, factum, futurumve sit.*—[KENNEDY.]

Note 3.—**Fit**, *it happens*, and **fiebat**, *it happened*, are often used impersonally.

Note 4.—**Fio** is used as the **passive** of **facio**, from which verb it takes the participles. The compounds of **facio** with verbal roots have **-fio** for their passive: as, **calefacio**, *I warm*, **calefīo**, *I become warm, I am warmed.* So **liquefīo, satisfīo.** The compounds of **fio** with prepositions are only some forms of **confieri, defieri, ecfieri, interfieri, superfieri,** and **infit,** *begins* (*to speak*).

3. **Volo** (Sansk., *vri*; Greek, *βολ-*, *βουλ-*), *I wish, I will.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.,	Pres. Inf.,	Perf. Ind.
vŏlō,	**vellĕ,**	**vŏluī.**

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	PRESENT TENSE.	
SING.	1. vŏlō, *I wish, will*, or *am willing*,	*vĕlĭm,*
	2. *vīs, thou wishest*, etc.,	*vĕlīs,*
	3. *vult,*	*vĕlĭt,*
PLUR.	1. *vŏlŭmŭs,*	*vĕlīmŭs,*
	2. *vultĭs,*	*vĕlītĭs,*
	3. *vŏlunt.*	*vĕlint.*
	IMPERFECT.	
	vŏlēbăm, *etc.*	*vellĕm,* etc.
	FUTURE.	
	vŏlăm,	
	vŏlēs, *etc.*	
	PERFECT AND AORIST.	
	vŏluī, *etc.*	vŏluĕrĭm, *etc.*
	PLUPERFECT.	
	vŏluĕrăm, *etc.*	vŏluissĕm, *etc.*
	FUTURE PERFECT.	
	vŏluĕrŏ, *etc.*	

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
PRES. *vellĕ, to wish,* etc.	PRES. vŏlens.
PERF. vŏluissĕ.	

Special Forms.—**Volt, voltis,** were used before the time of Augustus. In conversational language **vin'** is used for **visne,** *will you?;* **sīs, sultis** for **si vis, si vultis; capsīs** for **cape si vis.** (Compare **pergin'** for **pergisne.**)

4. **Nōlo,** *I am unwilling,* is compounded of **nē** (**nōn**) with **volo.**

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.,	Pres. Inf.,	Perf. Ind.,
nōlŏ,	**nollĕ,**	**nōluī.**

		INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
		PRESENT TENSE.	
SING.	1.	nōlŏ, *I am willing,*	*nōlĭm,*
	2.	*nōn vīs,*	*nōlīs,*
	3.	*nōn vult,*	*nōlĭt,*
PLUR.	1.	*nōlŭmŭs,*	*nōlīmŭs,*
	2.	*nōn vultĭs,*	*nōlītĭs,*
	3.	nōlunt.	*nōlint.*
		IMPERFECT.	
		nōlēbăm, *etc.*	
		FUTURE.	
SING.	1.	(not used).	
		nōlēs, *etc.*	
		PERFECT AND AORIST.	
		nōluī, *etc.*	nōluĕrĭm, *etc.*
		PLUPERFECT.	
		nōluĕrăm, *etc.*	nōluissĕm, *etc.*
		FUTURE PERFECT.	
		nōluĕrŏ, *etc.*	

IMPERATIVE.

	Singular.	Plural.
PRES.	2. *nōlī,*	*nōlītĕ,*
FUT.	2. *nōlītŏ,*	*nōlītōtĕ,*
	3. *nōlītŏ.*	*nōluntŏ.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. *nollĕ,*
PERF. nōluissĕ.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. nōlens (*rare*).

Special Forms.—For **non vis, non vult,** Plautus has frequently **nĕvis, nĕvult;** for **nolis, nolit, nolint, nollem,** he has sometimes the full forms **non velis,** etc.

5. **Mālo,** *I am more willing, I prefer,* is compounded of **măgĭs** (mage, mā) with **volo.**

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.,	Pres. Inf.,	Perf. Ind.,
mālŏ,	**mallĕ,**	**māluī.**

		INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
		PRESENT TENSE.	
SING.	1.	mālŏ, *I prefer,*	*mālĭm,*
	2.	*māvīs,*	*mālīs,*
	3.	*māvult,*	*mālĭt,*
PLUR.	1.	*mālŭmŭs,*	*mālīmŭs,*
	2.	*māvultĭs,*	*mālītĭs,*
	3.	mālunt.	*mālint.*
		IMPERFECT.	
		mālēbăm, *etc.*	*mallem,* etc.
		FUTURE.	
SING.	1.	(not used).	
		mālēs, *etc.*	
		PERFECT AND AORIST.	
		māluī, *etc.*	māluĕrĭm, *etc.*
		PLUPERFECT.	
		māluĕrăm, *etc.*	māluissĕm, *etc.*
		FUTURE PERFECT.	
		māluĕrŏ, *etc.*	

INFINITIVE.

PRES. mallĕ. PERF. mālluissĕ.

PARTICIPLE (not used).

Special Forms in old Latin are māvŏlo, māvŏlet, māvĕlim, māvĕlis, māvĕlit, māvellem, māvelle.

6. **Pervŏlo**, *I wish much*, has **pervĕlim, pervellem, pervelle.**

7. The root of **eo** (for **ĭo**), *to go*, is **ĭ-** (found both in Sanskrit and Greek), which becomes **e** before **a, o, u.**

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.,	Pres. Inf.,	Perf.,	Supine.
eŏ,	**īrĕ,**	**īvī** or **ĭī,**	**ĭtŭm.**

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	PRESENT TENSE.	
SING. 1.	*ĕŏ, I go,*	*eăm,*
2.	īs,	*eās,*
3.	ĭt,	*eăt,*
PLUR. 1.	īmŭs,	*eāmŭs,*
2.	ītĭs,	*eātĭs,*
3.	*ĕunt.*	*eant.*
	IMPERFECT.	
	ībăm, *etc.*	īrĕm, *etc.*
	FUTURE.	
	ībŏ, ībĭs, *etc.*	
	PERFECT AND AORIST.	
	īvī *or* ĭī, īvistī *or* istī, *etc.*	īvĕrĭm *or* iĕrĭm, īvĕrĭs *or* iĕrĭs, *etc.*
	PLUPERFECT.	
	īvĕrăm *or* ierăm, *etc.*	īvissĕm *or* issĕm, *etc.*
	FUTURE PERFECT.	
	īvĕrŏ *or* iĕrŏ, *etc.*	

IMPERATIVE.

	Singular.	Plural.
Pres. 2.	ī,	ītĕ,
Fut. 2.	ītŏ,	ītōtĕ,
3.	ītŏ.	*euntŏ.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. īrĕ,
Perf. īvissĕ *or* issĕ,
Fut. ĭtūrŭs essĕ.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. iens, Gen. *euntĭs,*
Fut. ĭtūrŭs,
Gerundive. *eundŭs* (in composition).

GERUND.

Gen. *eundī,* Dat. *eundō,* Acc. *eundŭm,* Abl. *eundō.*

SUPINES.

Acc. ĭtŭm, Abl. ĭtū.

1. The **v** is usually dropped by **eo** and its compounds: as, **ii, ieram, issem, redii, redistis, redisse,** etc.

2. The **impersonal passive ĭtur, ĭtum est, īrī,** etc., is often used. **Iri** with the **supine** supplies a **future passive** to verbs. The active **eo** also with the supine expresses a future action: thus, **injurias istas ultum eunt,** *they are going to avenge those wrongs;* **aiunt injurias istas ultum iri,** *they say that those wrongs are going to be avenged* (literally, *that there is a tending to avenge those wrongs*).

3. Transitive compounds of **eo** have a personal passive voice, as **adeor.**

4. Besides the form **ībit,** a future in **-iet** is sometimes found in compounds: as, **veniet** (or *vaeniet*) from **veneo,** *to be sold;* **transiet,** etc.

5. **Ambio,** *I go round, I canvas,* is the only compound of **eo** which is inflected regularly, like **audio.**

8. **Edo** (Sansk., **ad**, Greek, ἐδ-), *I eat*, is inflected regularly, and *also* has some contracted forms, which omit the vowel after the root, and either change **d** to **s** or omit it. In the present subjunctive, in addition to the regular **ĕdam, ĕdās,** etc., it has a form with the old termination **im,** found also in **sim** and **velim.** The Principal Parts are

Pres. Ind.,	Pres. Inf.,	Perf.,	Perf. Part.
ĕdŏ,	**ĕdĕrĕ** or **essĕ,**	**ĕdī,**	**ēsŭs.**

The following are the anomalous forms:

IND. PRES.	Sing. 2.	ēs, *thou eatest*,	
	3.	est, *he eats*,	
	Plur. 2.	estĭs, *you eat*.	
SUBJ. PRES.	Sing. 1.	ĕdĭm, *may I eat*,	
	2.	ĕdīs, *etc.*	
	3.	ĕdĭt,	
	Plur. 1.	ĕdīmus,	
	2.	ĕdītis,	
	3.	ĕdint.	
SUBJ. IMP.		essĕm, *etc.*	
IMPERAT.	Sing. 2. ēs,		Plur. 2. estĕ,
	2 and 3. estŏ.		2 and 3. estōtĕ.
INF. PRES.	essĕ.		
PASSIVE.	estur (*for* editur),		
	essētur (*for* ederētur).		

Note.—The contracted forms are found also from **comĕdo,** and some (**exest, exesse, exesset**) from **exĕdo.**

86. *DEFECTIVE VERBS.*

1. Aio, *I say, say yes, affirm.*

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
	PRESENT TENSE.	
SING. ā-io, ăĭs, ăĭt,		ā-iās, ā-iat,
PLUR. ā-iunt.		ā-iant.

IMPERFECT.

SING. ā-iēbam, ā-iēbās, ā-iēbat,
PLUR. ā-iēbāmus, ā-iēbātis, ā-iēbant.

IMPERATIVE PRESENT, aī (*rare*).
PRESENT PARTICIPLE, ā-iens, ā-ientis (as adjective).

Note 1.—The **i** is *consŏnans* (pronounced like English *y*), except in the second and third persons singular of the present indicative.

Note 2.—**Ain'tu** (= aisne tu), *do you say so?* was a familiar expression.

2. Inquam, *I say.*

Pres.	inquam,	inquĭs,	inquĭt,	inquĭmus, inquĭtis, inquĭunt.
Subj. Pres.			inquĭat.	
Ind. Imperf.			inquiēbat.	
Fut.		inquĭēs,	inquĭet.	
Perf.	(inquii),	inquisti,	inquit.	
Imperat. Fut.		inquĭto.		

Note.—**Inquam** is used in direct quotations, in which it is inserted parenthetically.

3. Quĕo, *I can*, and Nĕquĕo, *I cannot.*

		Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Ind.	Subj.
Pres.	1.	quĕo,	quĕam,	nĕquĕo,	nĕquĕam,
	2.		queas,	non quīs,	nequeas,
	3.		queat,	nequit,	nequeat,
	1.	quīmus,	queāmus,	nequīmus,	nequeāmus,
	2.		queātis,	nequītis,	nequeātis,
	3.	queunt.	queant.	nequeunt.	nequeant.
Imperf.	1.			nequībam,	nequīrem,
	2. *etc.*			nequības, *etc.*	nequīres, *etc.*
Perf.	1.	quīvi,	quivĕrim,	nequii,	nequīvĕrim,
	2. *etc.*	quivisti, *etc.*	quivĕris, *etc.*	nequisti, *etc.*	nequivĕris, *etc.*
Pluperf.		quīvĕram, *etc.*	quivissem, *etc.*	nequīvĕram, *etc.*	nequivissem, *etc.*
Fut. Perf.		quivĕro, *etc.*		nequivĕro, *etc.*	
Inf. Pres.		quīre,		nequīre,	
Perf.		quivisse.		nequivisse.	
Part. Pres.		quiens, queuntis.		nequiens, nequeuntis.	
Sup. Acc.		quītum.		nequītum.	

Note.—Only the present ind. and subj. are at all frequent. Passive forms are found in old writers in connection with a passive infinitive: as, **nĕquītur sŭbĭgi.**

4. **Fāri**, *to speak*, has these forms: Indic. Pres. **fātur**, *he* (she) *speaks;* Fut. **fābor**, **fābĭtur**; Perf. **fātus est**; Pluperf. **fātus eram**, **fātus erat**; Imperative, **fāre**; Infinitive, **fāri**; Participles, **fantis**, etc. (the nominative wanting, except in the phrase **fans atque infans** in Plautus), **fātus**, **fandus**; Gerund. **fandi**, **fando**; Supine, **fātu**. In compounds we have also **-fāmur**, **-fāmĭni**; **-fābar**, **-fābĕre**, **-fābĭmur**, **-fārer**, and in the imperative **praefāto**, **praefāmĭno.**

5. **Coepi** (**co-** and the obsolete **apio**, Sansk. root **ap**, *to get, acquire*), *I have begun*, has the tenses derived from the Perfect Stem, **coepi**, **coepĕram**, **coepĕro**, **coepĕrim**, **coepissem**, **coepisse**, and from the Supine Stem, **coeptūrus**, **coeptūrus esse**, and **coeptus.** In connection with a passive infini-

tive **coeptus sum, coeptus eram**, are used more often than **coepi, coĕperam**: as, *comitia haberi coepta sunt.* (CIC.)

Note.—A few forms from the Present Stem (as **coepio**) are sometimes found in old writers.

6. Verbs which have no forms from the Present Stem in use are called **Præteritive**. In these the English idiom generally translates the Perfect by the Present, the Pluperfect by the Imperfect, the Future Perfect by the Future: as, **mĕmĭni**, *I remember;* **meminĕram**, *I remembered;* **meminĕro**, *I shall remember.* Strictly speaking, however, there is the proper force of the tenses in these forms; for **mĕmĭni** is the perfect of an obsolete verb **meno** (măno), connected with the Sansk. **man**, and means something like *I have minded*, I have fixed it in mind, and thus, I now *remember;* **ōdi** is from the obsolete **odio**, **odĕre**, and means *I have repelled*, thrust from me with loathing, then *hate;* **nōvi** is the perfect of **nosco**, and means *I have become acquainted*, I have come to know, i. e., *I know, I am acquainted with.* **Memini**, **odi**, and **novi** all have the Ind. Perf., Pluperf., and Fut. Perf., the Subj. Perf. and Pluperf., and the Inf. Perf., regularly. **Memini** has also the Imperative, 2d Sing. **memento**, 2d Plur. **mementōte**; **ōdi** has the Inf. Fut., **osūrus esse**, and Fut. Participle, **osūrus**; **ōsus sum** is a rare form of **odi**; and the Perf. Participles **exōsus** and **perōsus** are found. **Nōvi** has the Perf. Part. **nōtus**, only as an adjective.

7. **Ŏvāre**, *to triumph, to rejoice*, has the third persons singular **ovat**, **ovet**, **ovaret**, the participles **ovans**, **ovātus** (Persius), and the gerund **ovandi**.

8. **Quaeso** and **quaesŭmus**, *prythee*, are old colloquial forms.

9. **Salvē**, *hail!* has the Imperative **salvē**, **salvēto**, **salvēte**, Future **salvēbis**, Inf. **salvēre**. Plautus uses once the Pres. Ind. **salveo**, playing on the original meaning of the word, *to be in good health.*

10. **Ăvē** (or **hăvē**), *hail!* has the Imperative **ăvē**, **ăvēto**, **ăvēte**, and the Inf. **ăvēre**.

11. **Vălē**, *farewell!* has Imperative **vălē**, **vălēto**, **valēte**, Ind. Fut. **vălēbis**, Inf. **vălēre**.

12. **Ăge**, **ăgĭte**, *come! come on!* is sometimes called a defective verb, used only in the imperative. It is properly considered, however, as the imperative of **ăgo**, with a special meaning.

13. **Ăpăge**, *away! be off!* is a Greek imperative.

14. The imperative cĕdŏ, *pray tell me, give me*, has also the plural cĕdite, cette.

87. *IMPERSONAL VERBS.*

1. **Impersonal verbs** are conjugated in the third persons singular of the finite verb and in the infinitive.

2. **Active impersonals** have no passive voice. The principal of these are of the second conjugation:

ŏportet, taedet, mĭsĕret,	*it behoves, disgusts, moves pity.*
pĭget, pŭdet, paenĭtet,	*it irks, shames, repents.*
dĕcet, dēdĕcet,	*it beseems, misbeseems.*
lĭbet, lĭcet, lĭquet,	*it pleases, is lawful, is clear.*
attĭnet, pertĭnet,	*it relates, belongs.*

TABLE OF IMPERSONAL VERBS (Second Conjugation).

me, te, eum, / **nos, vos, eos,**	**1. oport**
	2. taed
	3. miser
	4. pig
	5. pud
	6. paenit
	7. dec
	8. dedec
mihi, etc.	**9. lib**
	10. lic
ad me, etc.	**11. attin**
	12. pertin

INDIC.	SUBJ.	INFIN.	
-et	**-eat**	**-ēre**	Pres.
-ēbat	**-ēret**		Imperf.
-ēbit			Fut.
-ŭit	**-uerit**	**-uisse**	Perf.
-uerat	**-uisset**		Pluperf.
-uerit			Fut. Perf.

The following perfects are also used: 2, **pertaesum est**; 3, **mĭsĕrĭtum est**; 4, **pĭgĭtum est**; 5, **pŭdĭtum est**; 9, **lĭbĭtum est**; 10, **lĭcĭtum est**.

Mĭsĕrescit is also found; sometimes **mĭsĕrētur.**

The gerundives **pĭgendus, pŭdendus, paenĭtendus,** and the participles **mĭsĕrĭtus, pertaesus, attĭnens, pertĭnens** are in use. **Paenĭtens, dĕcens, lĭbens, lĭcĭtus** are used as adjectives.

The Persons are expressed by the Case: as,

SING.	**oportet me ire,**	*it behoves me*	*to go* =	*I*	*ought to go:*
	oportet te ire,	“ *you*		*you*	
	oportet eum ire,	“ *him*		*he*	
PLUR.	**oportet nos ire,**	“ *us*		*we*	
	oportet vos ire,	“ *you*		*ye*	
	oportet eos ire,	“ *them*		*they*	

SING.	licet mihi ire,	*it is allowed me*		*I*	
	licet tibi ire,	" " *you*		*you*	
	licet ei ire,	" " *him*	*to go* =	*he*	*may go;*
PLUR.	licet nobis ire,	" " *us*		*we*	
	licet vobis ire,	" " *you*		*ye*	
	licet iis ire,	" " *them*		*they*	

and so in the other tenses.

3. Some **Personal** verbs are **used impersonally** with special meaning:

accĭdit,	*it happens* (ill),		**dēlectat,**	*it charms,*	me, te, eum, etc.
condūcit,	*it profits,*		**jŭvat,**	*it delights,*	
contingit,	*it befalls* (well),	**mihi.**	**fallit,**	*it eludes,*	
ēvĕnit,	*it turns out,*	**tibi.**	**fŭgit,**	*it escapes,*	
convĕnit,	*it suits,*	**ei.**	**intĕrest,**	*it concerns,*	meā, tuā, ejus, etc.
expĕdit,	*it is expedient,*	**nobis.**	**rēfert,**	*it imports,*	
plăcet,	*it pleases,*	**vobis.**	**est,**	*it is a fact.*	
restat,	*it remains,*	**iis, etc.**	**fit,**	*it comes to pass.*	
succurrit,	*it occurs,*		**constat,**	*it is acknowledged.*	
văcat,	*there is leisure,*		**praestat,**	*it is best.*	

So **usu venit, in mentem venit,** etc.

4. Some Impersonals express changes of season and weather; such are

fulgŭrat, *it lightens.*	**ningit,** *it snows.*	**lūcescit,** *it dawns.*
tŏnat, *it thunders.*	**pluit,** *it rains.*	**illūcescit,** *it gets light.*
grandĭnat, *it hails.*	**rōrat,** *there falls dew.*	**vespĕrascit,** *it gets late.*

5. **Intransitive verbs** may be **used impersonally** in the passive voice: as, **lūdĭtur,** from lūdo, *I play:*

	IND.	SUBJ.	INFIN.
PRESENT	**lūdĭtur,**	**ludatur,**	**ludi,**
IMPERF.	**ludebatur,**	**luderetur,**	
FUTURE	**ludetur,**		**lusum iri,**
PERFECT	**lūsum est,**	**lusum sit,**	**lusum esse,**
PLUPERF.	**lusum erat,**	**lusum esset.**	**lusum fuisse.**
FUT. PERF.	**lusum erit.**		

The persons may be expressed by an ablative case with the preposition **a** or **ab** following the verb:

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

SING.	**luditur a me,**	*there is playing by me*	= *I play,*
	luditur a te,	" " *thee*	= *thou playest,*
	luditur ab eo,	" " *him*	= *he plays,*

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

PLUR.	**luditur a nobis,**	*there is playing by*	*us*	= *we play,*
	luditur a vobis,	" "	*you*	= *ye play,*
	luditur ab iis,	" "	*them*	= *they play;*

and so in the other tenses.

The case is generally understood, and the verb is rendered usually as expressing the first or third person plural: as, **lūdĭtur,** *we play* or *they play;* sometimes, *one plays:* as the French, **on joue.**

6. The **neuter gerundive** is similarly used to express duty or necessity, with a dative or ablative of the person:

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

SING.	**ludendum est mihi,**	*there must be playing by*	*me*	= *I*	*must play;*
	ludendum est tibi,	" "	*thee*	= *thou*	
	ludendum est ei,	" "	*him*	= *he*	
PLUR.	**ludendum est nobis,**	" "	*us*	= *we*	
	ludendum est vobis,	" "	*you*	= *ye*	
	ludendum est iis,	" "	*them*	= *they*	

and so in the other tenses.

In this construction the case often occurs; but here, too, it may be absent, and *we, they,* or *one* supplied, as in the former instance. So French, **on doit jouer.**

88. *DERIVATIVE VERBS.*

1. **Inceptive** (or **Inchoative**) **Verbs** denote *the beginning* of an action or state. They are all of the third conjugation. Those derived from verbs add **sco** or **isco** to the Present stem: as, **lăbasco,** *I begin to totter*, from **lăbāre**; **călesco,** *I grow warm*, from **călēre**; **trĕmisco,** *I begin to tremble*, from **trĕmĕre**; **obdormisco,** *I get sleepy*, from **dormīre.** Those derived from nouns or adjectives add **esco,** more rarely **asco,** to the clipt stem: as, **dūresco,** *become hard*, from **dūrus**; **jŭvĕnesco,** *grow young*, from **jŭvĕnis**; **puĕrasco,** *become a boy*, from **puer.**

2. **Frequentative** or **Intensive Verbs** express repeated or intense action. They are of the first conjugation; and are formed either by adding **-ĭto** or **-ĭtor** to the clipt stem; as, **rŏgĭto,** *ask often*, from **rŏgo**; **mĭnĭtor,** *threaten much*, from **mĭnor**; or to the Supine stem: as, **lūsĭto,** *play often*, from **lūdo, lūsum**; or by adding **o** to supine stems in **t** or **s**: as, **curso,** *run often*, from **curro, cursum**; **dĭcto,** *keep saying*, from **dīco, dictum.**

a. Frequentatives may be formed from frequentatives: as, **cantĭto, cursĭto, dictĭto.**

3. There are a few **Intensives** in **esso** and **isso**, denoting eager action, as **căpesso**, *catch eagerly, take in hand;* **făcesso**, *make haste to do;* **pĕtisso**, *seek eagerly.* They are of the third conjugation, but with perfect and supine of the fourth. Sometimes such derivatives differ little in meaning from the primitive verb.

4. **Desiderative verbs** denote desire after a thing, and are formed by adding **ŭrio** to the Supine stem: as, **ēsŭrio**, *desire to eat*, from **ĕdo, ēsum**; **cēnātŭrio**, *wish to dine*, from **cēno, cēnātum.** They are of the fourth conjugation. Such verbs are sometimes coined for rhetorical or comic effect, as **sullatŭrit**, *he wants to be a Sulla.*

5. **Diminutive verbs** denote a diminution or pettiness of the action. They are of the first conjugation, and are formed by adding **illo** to the Present stem: as, **cantillo**, *sing low*, from **canto**; **conscrībillo**, *scribble*, from **conscrībo**; **sorbillo**, *to sip*, from **sorbeo.**

6. A few verbs form what are at once **diminutives** and **frequentatives**, with the suffix **ĭco**: as, **fŏdĭco**, *keep nudging*, from **fŏdio**, *dig;* **vellĭco**, *keep plucking*, from **vello**, *pull.* So **missĭcŭlo**, *keep sending*, from **mitto, missum.** These are all of the first conjugation.

7. **Imitative verbs** add **isso** to the clipt stem of nouns or adjectives: as, **attĭcisso**, *to imitate the Attics;* **graecisso**, *to adopt a Grecian manner;* **patrisso**, *to take after one's father.* They are of the first conjugation. Compare Demosthenes's verb, *Philippize.*

The Inflections of Verbs.

89. *INFLECTIONS OF PERSON, NUMBER, AND VOICE.*

1. **The personal terminations** of verbs were originally **personal pronouns**; they have become modified in their form for smoothness of sound or from gradual changes in utterance.

2. The terminations in the different conjugations in the classical period will be seen by observation of the paradigms. The supposed primitive forms of the present indicative *lego* are thus given by G. Curtius, together with the supposed primitive forms of the Greek λέγω and the actual forms of the Sanskrit present *bharāmi, I bear:*

	Classical Latin.	Primitive Latin.	Primitive Greek.	Sanskrit.
SING.	1. lego,	lego-m (i),	λεγο-μι,	bharā-mi,
	2. legi-s,	lege-s (i),	λεγε-σι,	bhară-si,
	3. legi-t,	lege-t (i),	λεγε-τι,	bhară-ti,
PLUR.	1. legi-mus,	lego-mas,	λεγο-μες,	bharā-mas,
	2. legi-tis,	lege-tes,	λεγε-τε,	bhară-tha,
	3. legu-nt.	lego-nt (i).	λεγο-ντι.	bhara-nti.

3. The **-m** in the **First Person** singular and plural is the same as is seen in the oblique cases of the pronoun **me.**

This **-m** is dropped in the **singular** of the **present indicative** of all verbs (as **reg-o**); (except two; viz., **sum** (for **ĕs-om**), *I am*, and **inqua-m**, *quoth I;*) also in the future perfect of all verbs: as, **amavero**; and in the future indicative of all verbs with stems ending in **-a** or **-e**, and of some with stems ending in **-i**; **ămābo, mŏnēbo, ībo.**

In **a-** verbs the final **a** has blended with the suffix, and both are now represented simply by **-o**. Other vowel verbs retain their characteristic vowel: as, **trĭb-u-o, mŏn-e-o, aud-i-o, căp-i-o**. But three **i-** verbs change **i** to **e**; viz., **ĕo** (stem **i-**), **queo** (stem **qui-**), and its compound **nĕqueo**. **Inquam** has apparently a stem in **ă**, which except in the first singular present passes into **ĭ**.

The perfect indicative always ends in **ī**. The proper personal suffix (**m**) has dropped off altogether. It is probable that this final **ī** is part of the stem; but in practice it is more convenient to regard it as the personal termination.

In the Passive Voice the only change from the active is the addition of **r**, if the **m** has dropped away, or the substitution of it for **m** if the **m** has been retained in the active: as, active, **ămo, ămābo**; passive, **ămor, ămābor**; but active, **amabam, amem**; passive, **amabar, amer.**

This **r** is generally considered to be a substitute for **s**, the proper passive inflection being, as is supposed, the reflexive pronoun **se.**

(A passive formed by a reflexive pronoun is seen in German, *Das versteht sich von selbst*, "that is understood of itself;" French, *Le corps se trouva*, "the body was found;" Italian, *Si loda l'uomo modesto*, "the modest man is praised;" Spanish, *Las aguas se secaron*, "the waters were dried up."—KEY.)

Plural. The final **-us** is the part of the suffix which distinguishes the plural number. Its origin is uncertain. Some think it arose from the pronoun of the second person, so that *we* (**-mus**) was expressed by *I* + *thou.*

In the present indicatives of three verbs, viz., **sŭmus**, *we are*, **vŏlŭmus**, and their compounds, and the old form **quaesŭmus** (stem **quaes-**), *we pray*, we have before **m** the older vowel **u**. **dă-mus** retains the radical **ă**.

In the **passive** the final **s** is changed to **r**; thus, **ămāmŭs, āmāmŭr.**

4. The consonant of the **suffix of the Second Person** is **s** in the singular

(changed before another vowel to **r** in the passive), and **t** in the plural. The perfect indicative has **t** in the singular also. The personal pronoun of the second person singular in Latin (**tu**) and the Doric dialect of Greek (*τύ*) shows us this **t**; in the Attic dialect of Greek it has **s** (*σύ*).

Singular. In the present tense of **fĕro**, *I bear;* **vŏlo**, *I will;* **ĕdo**, *I eat;* the short vowel (ĭ) is omitted or absorbed; hence **fers** (for **fĕrĭs**), **vīs** (generally taken to be for **vŏlis, vĭlis, vils**), and **ēs** (for **ĕdĭs, eds**); **es** (**ēs** Plautus and Terence, **ĕs** in subsequent poets) is also the second person singular present indicative of **sum**, *I am.*

All **a-**, **e-**, and **i-** verbs have the final syllable long; viz., **ās, ēs, īs.** Not so the verbs with **ĭ**: as, **capio, capĭs.**

In the perfect indicative the ending of the second person singular is **-isti**, of which ending **-ti** is the proper personal suffix. The **s** is thought by Schleicher to be a remnant of **es** (Sansk. **as**); it may possibly be of pronominal origin.

In the **passive**, **-ĕris** (at first sight) appears to be formed by placing the characteristic passive **r** before the personal suffix; the true theory, however, is probably that the passive suffix, with a short preceding vowel, being placed after the personal suffix caused the **s** between two vowels to change to **r**, necessitating also the change of the vowel **i** to **e** before **r**. Thus **rĕgĕrĭs** is for **rĕgĭ-s-is.** The passive suffix itself (*i. e.*, **s** for **se**) was allowed to remain **s**, instead of being changed to **r**, as usually, in order to avoid having two **r**'s close together.

-re (as **amabāre**) is more common than **-ris** (as **amabāris**) in Plautus, and, except in the present tense, in Cicero and Vergil. It is frequent in Horace, rare in Livy; and is usually avoided by all writers where the form would then be the same as that of the present infinitive active. Hence **-ris** is retained in the present indicative (with rare exceptions) in verbs which have an active voice; but in deponents (where there is no risk of confusion, as the infinitive ends in **i**) **-re** is frequent in Plautus, sometimes found in Cicero; **-ris** is usual in Vergil and Horace.

Plural. The plural ending **-tĭs** contains the personal pronoun of the second person, **t**, and the syllable **-ĭs**, which contains either the pronoun of the second person in its other form, **s**, (*thou* + *thou* = *ye*) or is a suffix of plurality.

In the present tense of the four verbs named above, the **i** before the suffix is again omitted: **fertis** for **fĕrĭtis**; **voltis** or **vultis** for **vŏlĭtis**; **estis** for **ĕdĭtis**, *ye eat,* and for (originally) **ĕsĭtis**, *ye are.*

In the perfect **s** is simply suffixed to the singular form.

In the **passive** voice the ending **-ĭmĭni** is probably a masculine plural participial form. The Greek present passive participle is of similar form; viz., **-ŏmĕnŏs**, plur. **-ŏmĕnoi.** Originally, perhaps, **estis** was used with it, as it is used with a past participle to form the perfect passive.

5. The **-t** is the **suffix of the Third Person**, both singular and plural in

all tenses, is a demonstrative pronoun, found in the Greek (so-called) article, and in **iste, tot, talis, tantus**, etc.

Singular. In the present tense of **sum, ĕdo, fĕro, vŏlo**, the short vowel before **-t** is not found; viz., **est** (both from **sum** and from **ĕdo**), **fert, volt**, or (later) **vult**.

a. The third person singular active of **a-, e-**, and **i-** verbs was originally long, as may be inferred from the passive voice (**amāt-ur, monēt-ur, audīt-ur**), and is actually found long not unfrequently in Plautus, and sometimes in Augustan poets.

b. In the perfect active the ending is the same as in the present (**-ĭt**). Plautus sometimes, and more rarely Augustan poets, have this **-it** long.

To form the **passive, -ur** is suffixed to the active form.

Plural. The **plural** suffix is **-nt.** Instead of the ending **-unt**, in prae-Augustan inscriptions, in Plautus, and Varro, the older **-ont** was retained after **v** (or **u**): as, **vivont, confluont, loquontur.** Of this suffix the **t** is probably the same as in the singular; the origin of the **n** (which marks plurality) is uncertain.

The **passive** is formed (as in the singular) by suffixing **-ur** to the active form.

The perfect suffix is the same as the present, the ending being **er-unt**, of which the **-er** is the same as the **-is** (before **t**) of the second person. The penult (**-er**) is usually long (as, **rexērunt, amavērunt**), but the dactylic poets often, beginning with Lucretius (not Ennius), and others occasionally, shorten it: as, **dormiĕrunt, locāvĕrunt, subēgĕrunt**, etc. (Plaut.); **ēmĕrunt** (Ter.); **dedĕrunt, fuĕrunt, exiĕrunt**, etc. (Lucr.).

-ēre (for **ērunt**) is not uncommon in Plautus and Terence, rare in Cicero and Caesar, but frequent in dactylic poets and Livy.

In the future perfect indicative the suffix-vowel is **i** instead of **u** (**-ĕrint** for **-ĕrunt**); probably in order to avoid confusion with the perfect.

90. *INFLECTIONS OF MOOD.*

The imperative and subjunctive moods are distinguished from the indicative by certain modifications.

1. Imperative Mood.

a. **Present.**—The imperative present appears to consist of shortened forms of the indicative present. The final **s** is thrown off, and **-ĭ** is changed to **ĕ** (or rather, as the form probably originally ended in **-es**, the **s** is simply thrown off). Hence the active **rĕgĭs**, becomes **rĕgĕ**; **rĕgĭtĭs, regĭtĕ**; the passive **rĕgĕrĭs, rĕgĕrĕ**; the second person plural **rĕgĭmĭnī** is the same as in the indicative. But from verbs with vowel stems in **a-, e-, ī-** (not **ĭ-**)

the **s** is thrown off in the singular without further change; *e. g.*, **amā, monē, audī.** The exceptional form **noli** is formed as if from the second person singular of the *subjunctive* present.

b. (For a merely practical rule, we may say, *the imperative active is seen by dropping the termination* **re** *of the present infinitive.*)

In verbs which have short penult, and vowel stems in **a, e, i,** and also in the compounds of **eo**, the imperative forms in Plautus and Terence often shortened the final vowel: as, **commŏdă, mŏnĕ, jŭbĕ, ădĭ, ăbĭ**; especially in colloquial forms: as, **mănĕdum, tăcĕdum, mŏnĕsis, vĭdĕsis.**

c. **Future.**—The future imperative active is distinguished by a suffix, originally **-ōd.** In the form which is common to the second and third persons, *i. e.*, **reg-ĭt-ō,** and the form for the third person plural, *i. e.*, **reguntō,** the **-d** has fallen off, as in the ablative case of nouns.

The suffix appears to have been simply added to the present indicative forms of the third person singular and plural. (The use of this form for the second person singular was perhaps due to **-t** being a characteristic of the second personal pronoun.) The plural second person is formed by appending **-e** (for **-es,** later **-is**) as the sign of plurality in this person to a modified form of the singular: as, **rĕg-ĭt-ōt-e** (for **rĕg-ĭt-ōd-e**).

The passive forms substitute **-r** for the final **-d**: as, **rĕgĭt-or** for **rĕgĭt-od**; **rĕgunt-or** for **rĕgunt-od.**

In Plautus, Cato, and old inscriptions, a form in **-mĭno** is (rarely) found for the second and third person singular of the imperative of deponents: as, **profitē-mĭno, praefā-mĭno, progredĭ-mĭno, fru-ĭ-mĭno.** One instance of a passive verb **denuntiamino** is found. This old form is of the same origin as the second person plural indicative in **-mĭni.**

2. Subjunctive Mood.

The subjunctive is characterized by a lengthened vowel immediately before the consonant of the personal suffix.

Present.—This vowel is **ā** in the present tense of all verbs, except verbs with **ā-** stems, in which it is **ē**; *i. e.*, **reg-ā-mus, regāmur; moneāmus, moneāmur; audiāmus, audiāmur; tribuāmus, tribuāmur;** but **amēmus, amēmur.**

Except also a few in which it is **ī**; viz., **sim, sīs,** etc., from **sum; velim, velīs,** etc., from **vŏlo**; and the compounds of both; *i. e.*, **possim, absim,** etc., **nolim, malim;** so also **edim, duim,** and their compounds.

Sum and its compounds had an older form **siem, sies,** from which **sim, sis,** etc., are contracted. The **-es, -et** is perhaps only the older form of the ending **-ĭs, ĭt.** But more probably it corresponds to the long final syllable in Gr. *εἴην*, Sansk. *syâm.*

Imperfect and Pluperfect.—The long vowel in these tenses is ē in all verbs; *e. g.*, **rexissēmus, amavissēmus,** etc.

a. (For a practical rule, we may say, *the imperfect subjunctive active is seen by adding* **m**, *and the passive by adding* **r**, *to the present infinitive active.*)

Perfect.—The vowel (assumed to have been originally long) is ī, which, however, probably from confusion with the future perfect, is in dactylic poets as often short as long.

In Plautus and Terence there appears to be no instance incompatible with the rule of ī for the perf. subj., ĭ for the fut. perf. indic., in the second person singular and first and second persons plural.

The forms for the subjunctive have been thought best explicable by assuming the proper suffix to be ī (seen in the Greek optative), which was contracted with a preceding ā to ē. Thus **amas, ama-ī-s, amēs.** But as ī suffixed to the present indicative of vowel verbs other than those with **a** stems would have given still the same form when contracted, an ā (frequent in Aryan subjunctives) was substituted in all such cases. The consonant verbs eventually followed this analogy, the forms in **i** being either sporadically used or (if originally usual) only sporadically retained. **Sis** and **velis**, etc., retain the ī, because they have other points of difference from the indicative.

91. *TENSES FORMED FROM THE PRESENT STEM.*

1. The characteristic **tense-endings**, both in the forms from the present and those from the perfect stems, were probably originally **verbs**—added to the verb-stem with the force of **auxiliaries**—to which auxiliaries the terminations of number and person belong. It has been supposed that some of them were derived from **bhu** and **es**, meaning *to be;* others from **ya**, a form of **i**, *to go.*

2. **Present.**—The present indicative is formed simply by suffixing the inflections of number and person. The present subjunctive has a mood inflection in addition.

3. **Future.**—The future indicative is in consonant, in **i-** verbs, and in **u-** verbs a modified form of the present subjunctive. The first person singular is the same: the other persons have long ē where the present subjunctive has ā; *i. e.*, fut. **regēs, regēmus,** etc.; pres. subj. **regās, regāmus,** etc. In the third person sing. act. the final syllable was short in the ordinary language.

This ē perhaps arises from suffixing ī (meaning *to go*) to the present subjunctive of these verbs; *i. e.*, **reg-ā-mus, reg-ā-ī-mus, rēgēmus**; just as **amēmus**, pres. subj. was formed. But this formation would not do for

a- and **e-** verbs; because in **a-** verbs such a form (*e. g.*, **amēmus**) is already used for the pres. subj.; and in **e-** verbs, it (*e. g.*, **monēmus**) would be identical with the present indicative. Accordingly

In **a-** and **e-** verbs there is a different mode of forming the future indicative; viz., by suffixing **ĭb-** to the present stem, with the final vowel of which it is contracted; *e. g.*, **ama-**, **ama-ĭb-**, **amāb-**; first person plural **amab-imus**; **mon-e-**, **mone-ĭb-**, **monēb-**; first person plural **monēbimus.**

A similar future (besides the ordinary form in **-am**, **-es**, **-et**) is not unfrequently formed from **ī-** stems in early writers (Plautus, Terence, etc.); *e. g.*, **aperībo, adgredībor** (comp. **adgredīri** for **adgredi**), **largībere, opperībor, scībo,** etc. But of these forms none are found so late as the first century B. C., except **ībo, quībo, nequībo,** which are the only forms in use at any time in those three verbs. **Lenībo** is also found in Propertius.

The verb **do** has a short penultimate **dăbo.**

The verb **sum** and compounds may seem to have merely a different form of the present for the future; viz., **ĕr-o** (for **esom**), first person plural **ĕrĭmus** (compare pres. **sŭmus** for **ĕs-ŭm-us**). Most philologists, however, consider **ero**, etc., to be for **esio**, the **i** being similar to that of the present subj.

4. **Imperfect.**—The imperfect indicative has in all stems a long **a** preceding the personal inflections. Thus **ĕs-** with **ā** suffixed becomes **ĕsā-**, which with the personal **m** and the usual change of **s** to **r** becomes **ĕrā-m**, *I was.* In all stems except **ĕs-**, **b** is prefixed to this long **a.** Moreover, in all stems but **dă-** the vowel preceding **bā** is long.

The long **a**, which is always found (though shortened by final **m** and **t**), serves to distinguish the imperfect from the future where the forms are otherwise similar; *e. g.*, **amābāmus, amābĭmus; monebāmus, monebĭmus; ībāmus, ībĭmus; dăbāmus, dăbĭmus; ĕrāmus, ĕrĭmus.** It is apparently a sign of past time, and as such is found in the pluperfect also.

In consonant stems the ending is **-ēbā-**, and this is usually found also in verbs with **i** stems; *e. g.*, **reg-ēbā-mus, audi-ēbā-mus.** But this long **e** is not found in **eo, queo,** and their compounds, and is not unfrequently absent in the earlier language (Plautus, Ter., Varr., etc.); *e. g.*, **scībam, nescībam, aībam,** etc., **gestībat, grundībat, insanībat, mollībat, praesagībat, servības, stabilībat, vĕnībat.** So also, apparently for metrical reasons, in the dactylic poets; *e. g.*, **audībant, lenībat, saevībat, redimībat, molībar, ferībant,** etc.

5. **Imperfect Subjunctive.**—This tense had the suffix **-ĕr** (for **ĕs**), which with the modal suffix **ē** made **-ĕrē.** The first vowel coalesced with a preceding **a, e,** or **ī**; *e. g.*, **reg-ĕr-ēmus, tribu-ĕr-ēmus, am-ār-ēmus** (for **amā-ĕr-ēmus**), **mon-ēr-ēmus, aud-īr-ēmus,** and caused the omission of a preceding **ĭ**; *e. g.*, **capĭ-, capĕrem.**

In **ĕdo, vŏlo, fĕro,** and their compounds, the vowel **ĕ** was dropped out; *e. g.*, first person plural **es-sēm-us** (for **ĕd-ĕs-ēmus**); **vel-lēm-us** (for **vŏl-**

ĕr-ēm-us); **fer-rēm-us** (for **fĕr-ĕr-ēm-us**). **Do** has **dărēmus**. **Sum** (as well as **ĕdo**) has **essēmus**.

essem (from **sum**) may be formed from the imperfect indicative with the subjunctival suffix **ī**. Thus **ĕsā-ī-m** becomes **esē-m**, the first syllable being lengthened by a double **s** as a compensatory result of the contraction. The imperfect of **sum** in a somewhat different form appears to have been used to form the imperfect of regular verbs, *e. g.*, **reg-** with the imperfect indicative of **sum**, is **reg-eram**: hence **reg-era-i-m, regerem.**

6. **The Present Infinitive Active** has the suffix **-ĕre**, for **-ĕsĕ** (*s* between two vowels changed to *r*), in which the first **e** coalesces with a preceding **ā, e,** or **ī**; *e. g.*, **reg-ĕre, tribu-ĕre; am-āre, mon-ēre, aud-īre. Căpĕre** is formed analogously to **căpĕrem** (**5**).

In **sum, ĕdo, vŏlo, fĕro,** and their compounds, the first vowel **e** was dropped out, as in the imperfect subjunctive. Hence the infinitives are **esse** (for **esese** and for **edese**), **velle** (for **vŏlere**), **ferre** (for **ferere**).

a. **The infinitive** is generally considered to be the **dative** or **locative case** of a **verbal noun** with stem ending in **s-** or **si-**; *e. g.*, **dicer-e** for old **daikas-ai, viver-e** analogous to the Sanskrit **jîvas-ai.** The final **e** (=**ai**) would be originally long.

7. **The Present Infinitive Passive** has the suffix **i** appended to the stem, in verbs whose stem ends in a consonant, or in **ĭ** or in **u**: as, **reg-ī, tribu-ī, cap-ī.** In other vowel verbs **ī** takes the place of the final **e** of the active infinitive: as, **aud-īr-ī, mon-ēr-ī, am-ār-ī.**

a. A further suffix **-ĕr** is found appended to the **i**, frequently in the older and occasionally in later poets: as, **amārier, vestīrier.**

8. The suffix of the PRESENT PARTICIPLE is **-enti,** nom. sing. **-ens**: as, **reg-ens, tribu-ens, audi-ens.** In **eo** and its compounds an older form of the suffix, viz., **-unti,** is retained; the nom. sing. is, however, usually **iens.** In **-a** and **-e** verbs the suffix coalesces with the final stem vowel: as, **amans** (for **amā-ens**), **monens** (for **monē-ens**).

9. The suffix **-endo** forms, as a noun, the GERUND, as an adjective, the GERUNDIVE: as, **regendum, tribuendum, audiendum; amandum, monendum.**

An older form in **-undo** (probably for an earlier **-ondo**) is common in some writers. **Eo** and its compounds always have this form: as, **eundum, adeundus.**

92. *TENSES FORMED FROM THE PERFECT STEM.*

1. The suffixes for the tenses formed from the perfect stem, *i. e.*, for the perfect, future perfect, and pluperfect in the indicative, and perfect and pluperfect in the subjunctive, are the same in all verbs; viz., **future perfect, -ĕr-; perf. subj., -ĕr-ī; pluperf. ind., -ĕr-ā; pluperf. subj., -iss-ē.** The perfect infinitive ends in **isse.**

2. The great resemblance of these suffixes to the parts of the verb **sum,**

which are used to form the same tenses in the passive voice, suggests (and the suggestion has been generally adopted) that they are identical in origin.

This theory would give a complete explanation of the pluperfect and the future perfect indicative, with the exception that the third person plural of the latter has **ĕrint** instead of **ĕrunt**, perhaps in order to avoid confusion with the third person plural perfect indicative.

The perfect subjunctive would be explained by assuming as the suffix an older form of **sim**; viz., **-ĕsim**, or with the usual change of **s** to **r**, **-ĕrim.**

In the perfect infinitive and pluperfect subjunctive, **audivissem, audivisse** would stand for **aud-īvī-essem, audivī-esse.**

In the perfect indicative the second person singular, *e. g.*, **audivisti** would stand for **aud-īvī-esti** (the personal suffix **-ti** being *lost* in the simple verb, **es**, *thou art*); second person plural, *e. g.*, **audivistis**, for **aud-īvī-estis**; third person plural, *e. g.*, **audiverunt**, for **aud-īvī-ĕsunt.** The third personal singular may have the simple personal suffixes, or may possibly have been reduced from a fuller form; *e. g.*, **audivi-est, audivist, audivit.** The **-īt** is sometimes found long. The first person singular, *e. g.*, **audivi**, may then be for **audivī-esum, audīvism, audivim.** And the first person plural may have had a similar pedigree.

It must, however, be observed that the resemblance to the parts of the stem **es**, on which this theory rests, is in some degree deceptive, for it consists largely in personal and modal suffixes, which even on another hypothesis might be expected to be the same.

3. The perfect stem when formed by a suffixed **v**, is frequently modified by the omission of the **v** in all tenses and persons and both numbers, except in the first person singular and plural, and third person singular of the perfect indicative. The vowels thus brought together are contracted, excepting **-ie** and sometimes **-ii.** (See **83.**)

93. *PARTICIPLES AND COMPOUND TENSES FORMED FROM THE SUPINE STEM.*

From the so-called **supine stem** are formed the **future participle active** by suffixing **-ūro-**, sing. nom. **-ūrus** (m.), **-ūra** (f.), **-ūrum** (n.); and the **past participle passive**, by suffixing the ordinary case-endings of the first and second declension; *e. g.*, sing. nom. **-us** (m.), **-ă** (f.), **-um** (n.).

These participles, in the appropriate gender and number, are used in the nominative case with the finite tenses of the verb **sum**, and in the accusative as well as the nominative with the infinitive of the same verb to supply the place of certain tenses for which there is no special form. The future participle thus supplies additional future tenses in the active voice, especially in the subjunctive; the past participle supplies the perfect tenses of the passive voice, whether the passive voice have a strictly passive meaning, or, as in deponents, an active or reflexive meaning.

VERB STEMS.

94. *THE PRESENT STEM.*

Verbs may be divided into **consonant verbs** and **vowel verbs**, according as the present stem ends in a consonant or a vowel.

I. Consonant Verbs.

1. Most consonant verbs exhibit in the **present stem** no alteration of the regular stem of the verb: as, **rĕg-**, **rĕg-ĕre**; **caed-**, **caed-ĕre.**

In others such alteration is found: as,

1. The verb stem is **reduplicated** to form the **present tense**; thus, from the verb stem **gĕn-**, we have the present **gignĕre** for **gĭ-gĕnĕre** (gĕn-ui, gĕnĭtum); from **stă-**, **sistĕre** (stĭti, stătum); from **să**, **sĕrĕre** for **sĕsĕre** (sēvi, sătum).

2. The radical **vowel is lengthened**; thus from the stem **dŭc-** (compare dux, dŭcis) **dūcĕre**; from **dĭc-** (compare veridĭcus) **dīcere**; from **fĭd-** (compare fĭdes) **fīdere.**

3. **n** is **suffixed** to the stem of the verb: as, **tem-**, **tem-n-ĕre**; **cer-**, **cer-n-ĕre**; **sĭ-**, **sĭ-n-ĕre.**

(In early Latin are found such forms as **dă-n-unt** for **dant**, **solĭ-n-unt** for **solent**, **nequi-n-unt** for **nequeunt**, **obi-n-unt** for **obeunt.**)

4. A **nasal** is **inserted before** the final stem consonant: as, *a.* Labial stems: **cŭb-**, **cu-m-bĕre**; **rŭp-**, **ru-m-pĕre**; *b.* Guttural stems: **lĭqu-**, **li-n-qŭere**; **frăg-**, **fra-n-gĕre**; **vĭc-**, **vi-n-cĕre.** In some verbs the nasal is retained in the perfect and dropped in the supine stem: as, **fĭg-**, **fi-n-gere**, **fi-n-xi**, **fi-ctum.** In some the nasal is constant in the verb stem: as, root **jŭg-** (compare jŭg-um), **ju-n-gĕre**, **ju-n-xi**, **ju-n-ctum**; *c.* Dental stems: as, **fĭd-**, **fi-n-dere**; **tŭd-**, **tu-n-dĕre.**

5. **sc** or **isc** is suffixed to verb stems, especially to vowel stems in **e**, and gives often the special meaning of *beginning* or *becoming*. This **inchoative** form sometimes exists alone, sometimes is used besides the ordinary stem, sometimes is found in a compound, but not in the simple verb. The perfect and supine, if any, are the same as those of the ordinary stem (real or assumed). A very few stems carry the suffix **-sc** throughout all the tenses. Thus **sc** is suffixed:

a. To consonant stems: as, **ăl-** (**alĕre**), **ale-sc-ĕre**; **păc-**, **păc-isc-i**; **dĭc-**, **di-sc-ĕre** (for **dic-sc-ĕre**).

b. To vowel stems: as, **īrā-**, **ira-sc-i**; **nā-**, **na-sc-i**; **no-**, **no-sc-ĕre**; **crē-**, **cre-sc-ĕre**; **dormī-** (**dormīre**), **ob-dormi-sc-ĕre**; **scī-**, **sci-sc-ĕre.**

6. The guttural is omitted in some stems which probably ended in **gu-** (*i. e.*, **g** with a slight labial action after it): as, **flugu-**, **flu-ĕre**; **strugu-**, **stru-ĕre**; **frugu-**, **frui**; **vigu-**, **vīv-ĕre**; also the vowel stem **conigu-**, **conīvĕre.**

Other stems vary between **gu** and **g**: as, **stinguĕre, stingĕre**; **tinguĕre, tingĕre**; **unguĕre, ungĕre**; **ninguit, ningit** (compare **nix, nĭv-is**), and the vowel stems **urguēre, urgēre.**

7. **s** is changed between vowels to **r**: as, **gĕs-, gĕrĕre** (**gessi, gestum**); **quĕs-, quĕri** (**ques-tus**); **quaes-, quaerĕre** (compare **quaeso, quaesīvi**, etc.); **ūs-, ūrĕre** (**ussi, ustum**).

Also the vowel stem **hausi-, haurīre** (**hausi, haus-tum**).

8. A few verbs have **ll** in present stem, but not in other parts: as, **col-, percellĕre** (**per-cŭl-i, per-cul-sum**); **pol-, pellĕre** (**pe-pŭl-i, pul-sum**); **tol-, tollĕre** (**tŭl-i**); **vellĕre** retains **ll** in perfect **velli**, but has the supine **vul-sum.**

II. Vowel Verbs.

1. *Verbs with stems ending in* **a**:

Most of these verbs have the verb stem ending in **ā-**, and preserve it in all tenses: as, **flā-, flāre** (**flāvi, flātum**); **fā-, fāri** (**fātus**); in which a is radical.

In **nā-, nāre** (**nāvi, nātum**), the **ā** is constant, but the derivative **năto** shows that **ă** is radical. In **strā-, ster-n-ĕre** (**strāvi, strātum**); **tlā-, tollĕre** (**tĕtŭli, lātum** for **tlātum**); the present stem is consonantal.

2. *Verbs with stems ending in* **ă-**: as,

dă-, dăre (**dĕdi, dătum**), but **das** has **ā**. In all other verbs which may be considered to have a stem ending in **ă-**, the final **a-** combines with the initial vowel of the suffixes in tenses formed from the present stem, so as to present **ā**; e. g.,

Stă-, stāre (**stĕti, stătum**, but sometimes **stātum**), where **ă** is radical; **crĕpă-, crĕpāre**; **cŭbă-, cŭbāre**; **dŏmă-, dŏmāre**; **frĭcă-, frĭcāre**; **mĭcă-, mĭcāre**; **ēnĕcă, ēnĕcāre**, but **nĕcā-** usually is simple verb; **-plĭcă-** and **-plicā-, plicāre**; **secă-, sĕcāre**; **-sŏnă-, sonāre** (also **sonĕre**); **tŏnă, tonāre**; **vĕtă-, vetāre**; all of which have perfects in **-ui**, and most of them usually supines in **-ĭtum.** Also **lăvă-, lavāre** (and **lavĕre**); **jūvă-, juvāre**; which vocalize and contract the radical **v** with **-ui** of the perfect; and contract or omit it in the supine.

3. Of *verbs with stems ending in* **o**, the only traces are

nō-, which has the inchoative suffix in the present tense, **noscĕre** (**nōvi, nōtum**); the root has **ŏ**, comp. **nŏta** (noun), **nŏtāre, cognĭtum**, etc.; and **pō-** (**pōtum**), the frequentative **potā-re** being otherwise alone in use.

4. *Verbs with stems ending in* **u.**

a. Most have stems in **ū**, which, however, becomes short before the initial vowel of the suffixes: as, **acū-, acŭere, acŭis, acŭisti, acŭas, acŭēbam, acŭĕrem**, etc.; the supine has **ū. Plu-, pluĕre** (perf. **plūvi** and **plui**) is, apparently, contracted for **plŭv-** or **plov-** (compare **plŭvia**). And the same may be the case with all: compare **fluo, flŭv-ius.**

b. **ruo** has **rŭ-** in supine of compounds, but **rūta** (n. pl.) according to Varro. **Pŭ-** is found only in adj. **pŭtus** and frequentative **pŭtāre.**

c. A few verbs have u vocal in the supine, but consonantal usually in the present and perfect: as, **lŏqu-, lŏqui (locūtum); sequ-, sĕqui (secūtum); solv-, solvere (solvi, sŏlūtum); volv-, volvĕre (volvi, vŏlūtum).**

5. *Verbs with stems ending in* **e**:

a. Few verbs have the stem ending in **ē**, and these are monosyllables, where **e** is radical: as, **delē-** (compound), **delēre; flē, flēre; nē-, nēre; -plē, -plēre.**

All these have the perfect and supine in **-ēvi, -ētum.**

Other verbs with **ē (-ēvi, -ētum)** have consonantal present stems: as, **crē-, crescĕre; quiē-, quiescĕre.**

b. In most verbs with stems in **-e**, the **e** was probably short, as may be inferred from the perfect being in **-ui** (for **-eui**), and supine in **-ĭtum**, which in some verbs was reduced to **-tum**: as, **mŏnĕ-, monēre (monui, monĭtum)**, and many others; **căvĕ-, căvēre (căvi** for **căvūi, căvĭtum**, contracted to **cautum**), and others. Contraction with the initial vowel of suffixes gives **ē** in most forms of the present stem; *e. g.*, **monēre, monēs, monēmus, monēbam, monēbo, monērem, monētur (monĕt,** as **amăt, audĭt**, the vowel being shortened before **t** final).

c. Many verbs have **e** (probably **ĕ**) in the present stem, but drop it entirely and show consonantal stems in other parts of the verb: as, **morde, mordēre (momordi, morsum); vĭde-, vĭdēre (vīdi, vīsum); sĕde-, sedēre (sēdi, sessum)**, and many others.

d. Some have a present stem in **-e**, besides another (older or poetic) consonantal stem: as, **fervēre, fervĕre; strīdēre, strīdĕre; tuēri**, in compounds **-tui; ciēre**, in compounds **-cīre.**

6. *Verbs with stems ending in* **i**:

a. Some verbs with radical **i**, and many derivatives, have **ī**, and retain it through all the tenses: as, **scī-, scīrē; i-, īre; cī, -cīre** (also **ciēre**); **qui-, quīre.** In these the **i** is radical. So, too, **audī-, audīre; dormī-, dormīre**; and many other derivatives. In all these the perfect is in **-īvi**, and in the derivative verbs and **scio**, the supine is in **-ītum.** But **ĭtum, cĭtum, quĭtum.**

b. Some verbs have **ī** in the present stem, but drop it and show a consonantal stem in other parts; as, **amĭcī-, amĭcīre (amĭcui, amictum).**

c. Some verbs have the stem ending in **ĭ**, which fell away before **ĭ** or **ĕr**; and, as final in the imperative, was changed to **ĕ**. The **i** is generally dropped in the supine stem. Thus **căpĭ-, căpĕre (cēpi, captum); grădĭ-**, inf. **grădī (gressum).** Two have **ī** in other tenses than those derived from the present: **cŭpĭ-, cŭpĕre, cŭpīvi, cŭpītum** (in Lucretius also **cupīret**); **săpĭ, săpĕre, sapīvi**, in compound **rĕsīpui** and **rĕsĭpīvi.**

d. A few verbs have consonant stems in the present, but **ī** stems in other parts: as, **pĕt-, pĕtĕre, pĕtīvi, petītum; quaes-, quaerĕre, quaesīvi, quaesītum; arcess-, arcessĕre, arcessīvi, arcessītum.**

95. *FORMATION OF THE PERFECT STEM.*

The perfect stem is formed in six different ways:

1. **By reduplication.** The first consonant of the stem is prefixed with a short vowel, which is (1) **e** if the stem-vowel is **a** or **e**, and (2) is the same as the stem-vowel if that vowel is **o**, **u**, or **i**. (3) If the stem-vowel is **a**, it is changed to **e** before two consonants, to **i** before one; (4) **ae** is changed to **ī**. (5) Before single **l**, **e** and **o** become **u**. (6) If the stem begins with **sp**, **sc**, **st**, the **second consonant** is reduplicated, and the **s** prefixed to the reduplication syllable.

Thus: (1) and (3) **căn-**, **cĕ-cĭn-i**; **parc-**, **pe-perc-i**; (1) **pend-**, **pĕ-pend-i**; (2) **posc-**, **pŏ-posc-i**; **tŭd-** (present **tund-**), **tŭ-tŭd-i**; **dĭc-** (present **disc-** for **dic-sc-**), **dĭ-dĭc-i**; (4) **caed-**, **cĕ-cīd-i**; (5) **pŏl-** (present **pell-**), **pĕ-pŭl-i**; (6) **sponde-**, **spŏ-pond-i**; **stă-** (present **stā-**), **stĕ-ti.**

2. **By lengthening the stem-vowel**: as, **rŭp-** (present **rump-**), **rūp-i.** Short **a** is changed to **ē** (except in **scăbĕre**), as **ăg-**, **ēg-i.**

3. **By suffixing s**: as, **carp-**, **carp-s-i.** This suffix is supposed to be the same as that of the First Aorist in Greek. In stems in **m**, a euphonic **p** is generally inserted before **s**, as **dēm-**, **dēmp-s-i.** In **prĕmo** the **m** is assimilated: **pres-si.** The gutturals **c**, **g**, and **qu**, with **s** become **x**; as **dīc-**, **dī-x-i**; **c** and **g**, after **l** or **r**, are dropped before **s**; as, **mulce-**, **mul-s-i**; **sparg-**, **spar-s-i.** The labial **b** becomes **p**; as, **scrīb-**, **scrīp-s-i.** The dentals **t** and **d** fall away before **s**, or are assimilated to it: as, **flect-**, **flex-i** (**x** = **cs**); **mitt**, **mī-s-i**; **cēd-**, **ces-s-i**; **dīvĭd-**, **dīvī-s-i**; **vād-**, **vā-s-i.**

4. **By suffixing u**: as, **strĕp-**, **strep-u-i**; **dŏmă-**, **dom-u-i**; **dŏcĕ-**, **dŏc-u-i.**

5. **By suffixing v**: as, **ama-**, **ama-v-i**; **audi-**, **audi-v-i**; **no-** (present **nosco**), **nō-v-i.**

6. **By adopting the present-stem** as the **perfect-stem**: as, **bĭb-**, **bĭb-ī**; **īc-**, **īc-i**; **vert-**, **vert-i**; **ăcū-**, **acu-i.**

96. *FORMATION OF THE SUPINE STEM.*

The supine stem has the suffix **t.**

When the verb-stem ends in a vowel, that vowel is, if long, generally retained: as, **ămā-**, **ămā-tum**; if short, it is almost always changed, except in monosyllables, to **ĭ**, or omitted altogether: as, **dŏmă-**, **dŏmĭ-tum**; **hăbĕ-**,

hăbĭ-tum; **mŏvĕ-**, **mō-tum**. A few of the verbs which have a consonant stem have **-ĭt** (instead of **t**) in the supine, as if from a vowel-stem: thus, **frĕm-**, **frĕm-ĭtum**.

When the verb-stem ends in a consonant, or loses its final vowel, **t** is, when following certain consonants, changed to **s**. Before this **s**, **t** and **d** are dropped, or assimilated: as, **ed-**, **ē-sum**; **cēd-**, **cēs-sum** (ced-sum); **mitt-**, **mis-sum**. The **guttural characters**, **g**, **gu**, **qu**, **h** become **c** when **t** follows: as, **ăg-**, **ac-tum**; the labial **b** becomes **p**: as, **scrīb-**, **scrīp-tum**; **v** is vocalized into **u** in **solv-**, **solū-tum**, **volv-**, **volū-tum**; **r** (primitively **s**) becomes **s** again: as, **ger-**, **gestum**.—ROBY, *in part.*

97. *A TABLE OF VERBS, SHOWING THE PRESENT, INFINITIVE, PERFECT, AND SUPINE.*

NOTE.—Forms enclosed in parentheses, as (jutum), are rare or late.

I. First Conjugation.

	Present.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
Regular Form,	**-o,**	**-āre,**	**-āvi,**	**-ātum;**
as,	**ămo,**	**ămāre,**	**ămāvi,**	**ămātum.**

Exceptions :—

1. Those having **-ui** in Perfect, **-ĭtum** or **-tum** in Supine.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
crĕpo,	crepāre,	crepui,	crepĭtum,	*creak, rattle.*
cŭbo,	cubāre,	cubui,	cubĭtum,	*lie, lie ill.*
dŏmo,	domāre,	domui,	domĭtum,	*tame.*
explĭco,	explicāre,	explicui, explicāvi,	explicĭtum, explicātum,	*unfold.* 1
frĭco,	fricāre,	fricui,	frictum, frĭcātum,	*rub.*
mĭco,	micāre,	micui,	micātum,	*quiver, flash.* 2
sĕco,	secāre,	secui,	sectum,	*cut.*
sŏno,	sonāre,	sonui,	sonĭtum,	*sound.*
tŏno,	tonāre,	tonui,	tonĭtum,	*thunder.*
vĕto,	vetāre,	vetui,	vetĭtum,	*forbid.*

2. Those having **-vi** in Perfect, **-tum** in Supine.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
jūvo,	juvāre,	jūvi,	(jūtum),	*help, delight.* 3
lăvo,	lavāre,	lāvi,	lavātum, lautum, lōtum,	*wash.*

1 So nearly all compounds of plĭco, *to fold*, which has no perfect or supine.

2 Dīmĭco has dimicāvi and dimicŭi (twice in Ovid), dīmicātum; ēmĭco has fut. part. emicatūrus.

3 Fut. part. jŭvātūrus; adjŭvo has adjūtūrus.

3. Those having reduplicated[1] Perfect, **-tum** in Supine.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
do,	dăre,	dĕdi,	dătum,	*give.*
sto,	stāre,	stĕti,	stătum,	*stand.* [2]

II. Second Conjugation.

	Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.
Regular Form,	**-ĕo,**	**-ēre,**	**-ŭi,**	**ĭtum;**
as,	**mŏnĕo,**	**mŏnēre,**	**mŏnŭi,**	**mŏnĭtum.**

Exceptions:—

1. Those having regular Perf. in **-ui**, but **-tum** or **-sum** in Supine.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
censeo,	censēre,	censui,	censum,	*reckon, give opinion.*
dŏceo,	docēre,	docui,	doctum,	*teach.*
misceo,	miscēre,	miscui,	{ mixtum, mistum, }	*mix.*
rĕtĭneo,	retinēre,	retinui,	rĕtentum,	*retain.* [3]
torreo,	torrēre,	torrui,	tostum,	*parch.*

2. Those having **-vi** in Perf., **-tum** in Supine.

dēleo,	delēre,	delēvi,	delētum,	*destroy.*
fleo,	flēre,	flēvi,	flētum,	*weep.*
impleo,	implēre,	implēvi,	implētum,	*fill.* [4]

3. Those having **-si** in Perf., **-sum** or **-tum** in Supine.

algeo,	algēre,	alsi,		*be cold.*
ardeo,	ardēre,	arsi,	arsum,	*be on fire.*
augeo,	augēre,	auxi,	auctum,	*make bigger.*
haereo,	haerēre,	haesi,	haesum,	*stick.*
indulgeo,	indulgēre,	indulsi,	indultum (late)	*indulge.*
jŭbeo,	jubēre,	jussi,	jussum,	*bid.*
măneo,	manēre,	mansi,	mansum,	*remain, await.*
mulceo,	mulcēre,	mulsi,	mulsum,	*stroke, soothe.*

---

1 That is, having the first consonant of the present, together with a vowel, prefixed to the perfect tense, as, **do, de-di** (§ 95). In the perfects of compound verbs the initial consonants of the verb, not of the preposition, appear as the reduplication of the perfect, *e. g.*, **con-sto, con-stiti.**

2 The compounds generally make **-stĭti** in perf., as, **praesto, praestĭti,** and seldom have a supine; those with dissyllabic prepositions retain **e** in the perfect, as **circumstĕti.** Lucan has **stāturus.**

3 So all compounds of **teneo,** *to hold,* which has no supine.

4 So all compounds of **pleo,** *to fill,* which is never found in an uncompounded form.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
mulgeo,	mulgēre,	mulsi,		*milk.*
rīdeo,	ridēre,	rīsi,	rīsum,	*laugh.*
suādeo,	suādēre,	suāsi,	suāsum,	*advise.*
tergeo,	tergēre,	tersi,	tersum,	*wipe.*[1]
torquĕo,	torquēre,	torsi,	tortum,	*twist.*

4. Those having **-i** in Perf., **-tum** or **-sum** in Supine.

căveo,	cavēre,	cāvi,	cautum,	*beware.*
făveo,	favēre,	fāvi,	fautum,	*be favorable.*
fŏveo,	fovēre,	fōvi,	fōtum,	*keep warm, cherish.*
mŏveo,	movēre,	mōvi,	mōtum,	*move (transitive).*
prandeo,	prandēre,	prandi,	pransum,	*dine.*
respondeo,	respondēre,	respondi,	responsum,	*answer.*[2]
sĕdeo,	sedēre,	sēdi,	sessum,	*sit.*
vĭdeo,	vidēre,	vīdi,	vīsum,	*see.*
vŏveo,	vovēre,	vōvi,	vōtum,	*vow.*

5. Those having reduplicated Perf., **-sum** in Supine.

mordeo,	mordēre,	mŏmordi,	morsum,	*bite.*
pendeo,	pendēre,	pĕpendi,	pensum,	*be suspended.*
spondeo,	spondēre,	spŏpondi,	sponsum,	*promise.*
tondeo,	tondēre,	tŏtondi,	tonsum,	*shear.*

6. Semi-deponent Verbs.

audeo,	audēre,	ausus sum,		*dare.*
gaudeo,	gaudēre,	gāvīsus sum,		*rejoice.*
sŏleo,	solēre,	solĭtus sum,		*be accustomed.*

III. Third Conjugation.

Infinitive ends in **-ĕre**. The principal varieties of conjugation are the following:—

1. Those having **-si** in Perf., **-tum** in Supine.

Note.—Perfects in **-xi** are considered as ending in **-si**, since **x** is only a double letter standing for **cs**, **gs**, **ks**, or **qs**.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
allĭcio,	allicĕre,	allexi,	allectum,	*entice.*[3]
aspĭcio,	aspicĕre,	aspexi,	aspectum,	*behold.*[4]
carpo,	carpĕre,	carpsi,	carptum,	*pluck.*

1 A form **tergo, tergĕre,** is found less frequently.

2 So all compounds of **spondeo,** *to promise.*

3 So all compounds, except **elicio** (6), of the unused verb **lacio,** *to entice.* **Prolicio** has no perfect or supine.

4 So all compounds of the verb **specio,** *to look,* found only in Plautus.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Sup.	Meaning.
cingo,	cingĕre,	cinxi,	cinctum,	*gird.*
cōmo,	comĕre,	compsi,	comptum,	*adorn.*
cŏquo,	coquĕre,	coxi,	coctum,	*cook.*
dēmo,	demĕre,	dempsi,	demptum,	*take away.*
dīco,	dicĕre,	dixi,	dictum,	*say, tell.*
dūco,	ducĕre,	duxi,	ductum,	*lead, draw.*
extinguo,	extinguĕre,	extinxi,	extinctum,	*extinguish.* 1
fingo,	fingĕre,	finxi,	fictum,	*form, invent.*
gĕro,	gerĕre,	gessi,	gestum,	*carry on.*
jungo,	jungĕre,	junxi,	junctum,	*yoke, join.*
nūbo,	nubĕre,	nupsi,	nuptum,	*be married.* 2
pingo,	pingĕre,	pinxi,	pictum,	*paint.*
prōmo,	promĕre,	prompsi,	promptum,	*draw out.*
rĕgo,	regĕre,	rexi,	rectum,	*keep straight, rule.*
rēpo,	repĕre,	repsi,	(reptum),	*creep.*
scrībo,	scribĕre,	scripsi,	scriptum,	*write.*
stringo,	stringĕre,	strinxi,	strictum,	*graze, draw tight.*
struo,	struĕre,	struxi,	structum,	*build.*
sūmo,	sumĕre,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	*take up.*
tĕgo,	tegĕre,	texi,	tectum,	*cover.*
temno,	temnĕre,	tempsi,	temptum,	*despise.*
tingo, tinguo,	tingĕre, tinguĕre,	tinxi,	tinctum,	*dye.*
trăho,	trahĕre,	traxi,	tractum,	*draw.*
ungo, unguo,	ungĕre, unguĕre,	unxi,	unctum,	*grease.*
ūro,	urĕre,	ussi,	ustum,	*burn.*
vĕho,	vehĕre,	vexi,	vectum,	*carry.*
vīvo,	vivĕre,	vixi,	victum,	*live.*

2. Those having -si in Perf., -sum in Supine.

cēdo,	cedĕre,	cessi,	cessum,	*give way, yield up.*
claudo,	claudĕre,	clausi,	clausum,	*shut.* 3
concŭtĭo,	concutĕre,	concussi,	concussum,	*shake.* 4
dīvĭdo,	divĭdĕre,	divīsi,	divīsum,	*divide.*
ēvādo,	evādĕre,	evāsi,	evāsum,	*go out.*
fīgo,	figĕre,	fixi,	fixum,	*fix.*
flecto,	flectĕre,	flexi,	flexum,	*bend.*

1 So all compounds of **stinguo**, *to quench*, which has no perfect or supine.

2 As a bride; literally, *put on a veil.*

3 The compounds make **-cludo**; as, **reclūdo, -ĕre, -si, -sum,** *open.*

4 So all compounds of **quătio, quătĕre,** *to shake*, which has supine **quassum,** and no perfect.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Sup.	Meaning.
flŭo,	fluĕre,	fluxi,	(fluxus, adj.),	*flow.*
laedo,	laedĕre,	laesi,	laesum,	*hurt.*
lūdo,	ludĕre,	lūsi,	lūsum,	*sport.*
mergo,	mergĕre,	mersi,	mersum,	*sink* (trans.).
mitto,	mittĕre,	mīsi,	missum,	*let go, send.*
necto,	nectĕre,	nexi,	nexum,	*link together.*
plaudo,	plaudĕre,	plausi,	plausum,	*clap the hands.*1
rādo,	radĕre,	rāsi,	rāsum,	*scrape.*
rōdo,	rodĕre,	rōsi,	rōsum,	*gnaw.*
spargo,	spargĕre,	sparsi,	sparsum,	*scatter, besprinkle.*
trūdo,	trudĕre,	trūsi,	trūsum,	*thrust.*

3. Those having a reduplicated Perf., **-tum** or **-sum** in Supine.

addo,	addĕre,	addĭdi,	addĭtum,	*add.*2
cădo,	cădĕre,	cĕcĭdi,	cāsum,	*fall.*
caedo,	caedĕre,	cĕcīdi,	caesum,	*fell, cut, slay.*
căno,	cănĕre,	cĕcĭni,	(cantus,noun),	*sing, play.*
curro,	currĕre,	cŭcurri,	cursum,	*run.*3
disco,	discĕre,	dĭdĭci,		*learn.*
fallo,	fallĕre,	fĕfelli,	falsum,	*deceive.*
pango,	pangĕre,	{ pēgi, pĕpĭgi,	pactum, panctum, }	*fasten.*
parco,	parcĕre,	pĕperci,	{ parsum, (parcĭtum), }	*spare.*4
părio,	părĕre,	pĕpĕri,	partum,	*bring forth.*5
pello,	pellĕre,	pĕpŭli,	pulsum,	*drive back.*
pendo,	pendĕre,	pĕpendi,	pensum,	*weigh.*
posco,	poscĕre,	pŏposci,		*demand.*
pungo,	pungĕre,	pŭpŭgi,	punctum,	*prick.*6
rĕsisto,	resistere,	restĭti,	restĭtum,	*resist.*7

1 **Explōdo** (*hiss off*), **explodĕre, explōsi, explōsum.** So the other compounds, except **applaudo,** which does not change the vowel.

2 So most compounds of **do** (**dăre**), *to give, to put;* as, **abdo,** *hide;* **condo,** *found;* **crēdo,** *believe;* **dēdo,** *give up;* **ēdo,** *give forth;* **perdo,** *lose, destroy;* **prōdo,** *betray;* **reddo,** *restore;* **trādo,** *deliver up;* **vendo,** *sell.* But the half compounds, **circumdo,** *surround;* **pessumdo,** *ruin;* **sătisdo,** *give security;* and **vēnumdo,** *offer for sale,* form perfect, supine, and infinitive like **do,** and belong to the First Conjugation.

3 The compounds frequently retain the reduplication, as **accŭcurri;** more usually (in Cicero and Livy) drop it, as **accurri.**

4 Plautus always, and Terence sometimes, have perfect **parsi.**

5 The future participle is **părĭtūrus.**

6 Compounds have **punxi** in the perfect.

7 So all compounds of **sisto,** *to stop* (itself a reduplicated form of **sto**), which rarely has the perfect **stĭti,** and has no supine. **Sisto** is rarely intransitive, and then has the perfect **stĕti.**

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Sup.	Meaning.
tango,	tangĕre,	tĕtĭgi,	tactum,	*touch.*
tendo,	tendĕre,	tĕtendi,	tentum, (tensum),	*stretch.*
tollo,	tollĕre,	sustŭli,	sublātum,	*lift up, remove.*1
tundo,	tundĕre,	tŭtŭdi,	tūsum, tunsum,	*thump, pound.*

4. Those having -i in Perf., -tum in Supine.

ăgo,2	agĕre,	ēgi,	actum,	*do, drive.*
attingo,	attingĕre,	attĭgi,	attactum,	*touch.*3
bĭbo,	bĭbĕre,	bĭbi,	(bĭbĭtum),	*drink.*
căpio,4	căpĕre,	cēpi,	captum,	*take.*
contendo,	contendĕre,	contendi,	contentum,	*strive.*5
ĕmo,6	ĕmĕre,	ēmi,	emptum,	*buy* (orig. *take*).
făcio,7	facĕre,	fēci,	factum,	*make, do.*
frango,8	frangĕre,	frēgi,	fractum,	*break in pieces.*
fŭgio,	fugĕre,	fūgi,	fugĭtum,	*flee, fly from.*
impingo,	impingĕre,	impēgi,	impactum,	*strike upon.*9
jăcio,10	jăcĕre,	jēci,	jactum,	*throw, cast.*
lĕgo,11	lĕgĕre,	lēgi,	lectum,	*pick up, choose, read.*

1 The proper perfect and supine are tŭli (in prae-Augustan poets tĕtŭli) and **lātum** (for **tlātum**); but as **fero** takes these, **tollo** uses the perfect and supine of its compound **sustollo.**

2 The compounds make **-ĭgo, -igĕre, -ēgi, -actum,** as **exĭgo**; except **cōgo, cōgĕre, cŏēgi, cŏactum**; **dēgo,** which has no perfect or supine; and **circumăgo, perăgo,** which retain **a** in the present stem. **Sătăgo** is really two words: perfect **ēgi satis.**

3 So all compounds of **tango,** *to touch.*

4 The compounds (except **antecapio**) make **-cĭpio, -cipĕre, -cēpi, -ceptum,** as **excipio.**

5 So all compounds of **tendo,** *to stretch.* **Extendo,** *extend,* and **ostendo,** *shew,* have **-sum** as well as **-tum** in the supine.

6 The compounds make **-ĭmo, -imĕre, -ēmi, -emptum,** as **ădĭmo**; except **coĕmo, perĕmo, interĕmo,** which retain **e,** and the earlier compounds, **cōmo, dēmo, prōmo, sūmo,** which make **compsi, comptum,** etc.

7 The compounds make **-fĭcio, -ficĕre, -fēci, -fectum,** as **efficio.** The half compounds, **calĕfacio, tremĕfacio,** etc., retain **a.**

8 The compounds make **-fringo, -fringere, -frēgi, -fractum,** as **effringo.**

9 So compounds of **pango,** *to fasten;* but **oppango, dēpango** (wants the perf.), and **rĕpango** (wants perf. and sup.) retain **a** in the present stem.

10 The compounds make **-jicio, -jicĕre, -jēci, -jectum,** as **conjicio.** In these compounds **ji** is by recent editors written **i**; as **cōnĭcio, conĭcĕre, conjēci, conjectum.**

11 The compounds generally make **-lĭgo, -ligĕre, -lēgi, -lectum,** as **collĭgo. Dīlĕgo** or **dīlĭgo,** *love;* **intellĕgo,** *understand,* and **neglĕgo,** *neglect,* retain **e,** and usually have the perf. in **-xi** (rarely **intellēgi, neglēgi**). **Allĕgo, perlĕgo, praelĕgo, rĕlĕgo,** and **sublĕgo** also retain **e.**

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Sup.	Meaning.
rĕlinquo,	relinquĕre,	relīqui,	relictum,	*leave.*[1]
rumpo,	rumpĕre,	rūpi,	ruptum,	*burst through.*
vinco,	vincĕre,	vīci,	victum,	*conquer.*

5. Those having -i in Perf., -sum in Supine.

accendo,	accendĕre,	accendi,	accensum,	*set on fire.*[2]
compello,	compellĕre,	compŭli,	compulsum,	*compel.*[3]
contundo,	contundĕre,	contŭdi,	contūsum,	*bruise.*[4]
defendo,	defendĕre,	defendi,	defensum,	*defend.*[5]
ĕdo,	ĕdĕre,	ēdi,	ēsum (essum),	*eat.*
findo,	findĕre,	fĭdi,	fissum,	*cleave.*
fŏdio,	fŏdĕre,	fōdi,	fossum,	*dig.*
fundo,	fundĕre,	fūdi,	fūsum,	*pour, rout.*
occĭdo,	occĭdĕre,	occĭdi,	occāsum,	*set.*[6]
occīdo,	occīdĕre,	occīdi,	occīsum,	*kill.*[7]
pando,	pandĕre,	pandi,	passum, -pansum,	*spread out, open.*
percello,	percellĕre,	percŭli,	perculsum,	*strike down.*
prehendo,[8]	prehendĕre,	prehendi,	prehensum,	*lay hold of.*
scando,[9]	scandĕre,	scandi,	scansum,	*climb.*
scindo,	scindĕre,	scĭdi,	scissum,	*tear, cut.*
succurro,	succurrĕre,	succurri,	succursum,	*succor.*[10]
suspendo,	suspendĕre,	suspendi,	suspensum,	*hang up.*[11]
vello,	vellĕre,	velli, (vulsi),	vulsum,	*pluck.*
verto,	vertĕre,	verti,	versum,	*turn.*

6. Those having -ŭi in Perf., -tum in Supine [one -sum].

ălo,	alĕre,	alui,	altum,	*nourish.*[12]
cŏlo,	cŏlĕre,	cŏlui,	cultum,	*cultivate.*

---

1 So all compounds of **linquo**, perf. **liqui**, *to leave*, which has no supine.

2 So all compounds of the unused verb **cando**, *to set on fire*.

3 So all compounds of **pello**, *to drive*. **Rĕpello** always has **rēpŭli** or **reppŭli**.

4 So all compounds of **tundo**, *to beat* or *pound;* supines in **-tunsum** occur.

5 So all compounds of the unused verb **fendo**, *to strike*.

6 So all compounds of **cădo**, *to fall;* except that the supine is rarely found.

7 So all compounds of **caedo**, *to cut, fell, slay*.

8 Often contracted into **prendo**, etc.

9 **Scando** becomes **scendo** in compounds, as, **descendo, descendi, descensum,** *to descend*.

10 So all compounds of **curro**, *to run*. But some have the reduplicated form also; as, **dēcurro**, *to run down*, which has perf. **dēcurri** and **dēcŭcurri**.

11 So all compounds of **pendo**, *to weigh*.

12 A supine **ălĭtŭm** is found in post-Augustan writers.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Sup.	Meaning.
consŭlo,	consŭlĕre,	consŭlui,	consultum,	*consult.*
ēlĭcio,	ēlĭcĕre,	ēlĭcui,	ēlĭcĭtum,	*lure forth.*
frĕmo,	frĕmĕre,	frĕmui,	frĕmĭtum,	*roar, snort.*
gĕmo,	gĕmĕre,	gĕmui,	gĕmĭtum,	*sigh, groan.*
gigno,	gignĕre,	gĕnui,	gĕnĭtum,	*beget.*
mĕto,	mĕtĕre,	(messui),*	messum,	*reap, mow.*
mŏlō,	mŏlĕre,	molui,	molĭtum,	*grind.*
occŭlo,	occŭlĕre,	occŭlui,	occultum,	*hide.*
pōno, 1	pōnĕre,	pŏsui,	pŏsĭtum,	*put, place.*
răpio, 2	răpĕre,	răpui,	raptum,	*snatch.*
sĕro,	sĕrĕre,	sĕrui (*in compounds*)	-sertum,	*connect.*
strĕpo,	strĕpĕre,	strĕpui,	strĕpĭtum,	*make a din.*
texo,	texĕre,	texui,	textum,	*weave.*
trĕmo,	trĕmĕre,	trĕmui,		*tremble.*
vŏmo,	vŏmĕre,	vŏmui,	vŏmĭtum,	*vomit.*

7. Those having -vi in Perf., -tum in Supine.

arcesso, 3	arcessĕre,	arcessīvi,	arcessītum,	*summon.*
cerno,	cernĕre,	crēvi,	crētum,	*separate, discern.*
cognosco,	cognoscĕre,	cognōvi,	cognĭtum,	*know.* 4
cresco,	crescĕre,	crēvi,	crētum,	*grow.*
cŭpio,	cŭpĕre,	cŭpīvi,	cŭpītum,	*desire.*
lăcesso,	lacessĕre,	lacessīvi,	lacessītum,	*provoke.*
lĭno,	lĭnĕre,	lēvi,	lĭtum,	*besmear.*
nosco,	noscĕre,	nōvi,	nōtum,	*become acquainted with.*
pasco,	pascĕre,	pāvi,	pastum,	*feed.*
pĕto,	pĕtĕre,	pĕtīvi,	pĕtītum,	*seek.*
quaero, 5	quaerĕre,	quaesīvi,	quaesītum,	*inquire.*
quĭesco,	quĭescĕre,	quĭēvi,	quĭētum,	*rest.*
sĕro,	sĕrĕre,	sēvi,	sătum,	*sow, plant.*
sĭno,	sĭnĕre,	sīvi,	(sĭtum),	*allow.*
sperno,	spernĕre,	sprēvi,	sprētum,	*reject, despise.*

* Say **messem feci.**

1 **Posīvi** is frequent in Plautus; **postum** (simple and compound) is often found in poetry.

2 The compounds make **-rĭpio, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum,** as, **dīripio,** *to tear in pieces.*

3 Another form (perhaps of different origin) is **accerso.** In the passive infinitive **arcessīri** and **accersīri** sometimes occur.

4 So **agnosco,** *to recognize.* But all other compounds of **nosco,** *to become acquainted with,* have **-nōtum** in the supine, except **dignosco** and **internosco,** which have no supine.

5 The compounds make **-quīro, -quirĕre, -quisīvi, -quisītum**; as, **exquīro.**

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Sup.	Meaning.
sterno,	sternĕre,	strāvi,	strātum,	*throw down.*
suesco,	suescĕre,	suēvi,	suētum,	*be accustomed.*
tĕro,	tĕrĕre,	trīvi,	trītum,	*rub.*

8. Those ending in **-uo** in Present Indicative First Person Singular, which (with the exception of some already mentioned, as, struo, struxi, etc.) make **-ui** in Perf. and **-ūtum** in Supine, as,

trĭbuo,	trĭbuĕre,	trĭbui,	trĭbūtum,	*assign.*

In this class must be included

solvo,	solvĕre,	solvi,	sŏlūtum,	*loose, pay.*
volvo,	volvĕre,	volvi,	vŏlūtum,	*roll.*

9. Inceptives in **-sco**. These Verbs are formed (*a*) from Verbs of the Second Conjugation, (*b*) from Nouns. The former have no Perfects, except those of the Verbs from which they are derived, as, **pallesco** (from palleo), *I grow pale*, Perf. **pallŭi**; the latter either have no Perfects or form them in the same way in **-ui**, as, **dūresco** (from durus), *I grow hard*, Perf. **durŭi**. Few Inceptives have any Supine.

10. The Semi-Deponent, **fīdo**, *trust*, has Perfect **fīsus sum.**

IV. Fourth Conjugation.

	Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Sup.
Regular Form,	**-ĭo,**	**-īre,**	**-īvi,**	**-ītum;**
as,	**audĭo,**	**audīre,**	**audīvi,**	**audītum.**

Exceptions :—

1. Those having regular Perf., but **-tum** in Supine.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Sup.	Meaning.
ĕo,	īre,	īvi,	ĭtum,	*go.*
sĕpĕlio,	sepelīre,	sĕpĕlīvi,	sĕpultum,	*bury.*

2. Those having **-i** in Perf., **-tum** in Supine.

compĕrio,	compĕrīre,	compĕri,	compertum,	*ascertain.*
rĕpĕrio,	rĕpĕrīre,	reppĕri,	rĕpertum,	*find.*
vĕnio,	vĕnīre,	vēni,	ventum,	*come.*

3. Those having **-si** in Perf., **-tum** or **-sum** in Supine.

fulcio,	fulcīre,	fulsi,	fultum,	*prop.*
haurio,	haurīre,	hausi,	haustum,	*draw up.*
sancio,	sancīre,	sanxi,	sanctum,	*decree.*
sentio,	sentīre,	sensi,	sensum,	*feel.*
vincio,	vincīre,	vinxi,	vinctum,	*bind.*

4. Those having -ui in Perf., -tum in Supine.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Sup.	Meaning.
ămĭcio,	ămĭcīre,		ămictum,	*clothe.*
ăpĕrio,	ăpĕrīre,	ăpĕrui,	ăpertum,	*uncover, open.*
ŏpĕrio,	ŏpĕrīre,	ŏpĕrui,	ŏpertum,	*cover.*
sălio,[1]	sălīre,	salui,	saltum,	*leap.*

V. Deponent Verbs.

Deponent Verbs follow the Passive forms of the four Conjugations. It should be remembered that they have the four **Participles** complete : viz., the Present Active, in **-ns**; the Future Active, in **-ūrus**; the Perfect Passive (with an Active meaning), in **-us**; and the Gerundive, in **-ndus**. They have also the **Gerund**, and many of them the **Supine**.

1. Deponents of the First Conjugation are all regular, making the Infinitive in **-āri** and Perfect Participle in **-ātus**.

2. Deponents of the Second Conjugation make the Inf. in **-ēri** and Perf. Part. in **-ĭtus**, except

Pres.	Inf.	Perf. Part.	Meaning.
făteor,[2]	fatēri,	fassus,	*acknowledge.*
mĭsĕreor,	mĭsĕrēri,	mĭsĕrĭtus *or* (mĭsertus),	*pity.*
reor,	rēri,	rătus,	*think.*

3. Deponents of the Third Conjugation have various forms. A great number end in **-scor** in the Pres. Indic., e. g. :—

ădĭpiscor,	ădĭpisci,	ădeptus,	*obtain.*
commĭniscor,	commĭnisci,	commentus,	*devise.*
expergiscor,	expergisci,	experrectus,	*awake.*
īrascor,	īrasci,	īrātus,	*grow angry.*
nanciscor,	nancisci,	nactus *or* nanctus,	*obtain.*
nascor,	nasci,	nātus,	*be born.*
oblīviscor,	oblīvisci,	oblītus,	*forget.*
păciscor,	pacisci,	pactus, Perf. pĕpĭgi,	*bargain.*
pascor,	pasci,	pastus,	*feed.*
prŏfĭciscor,	prŏfĭcisci,	prŏfectus,	*set out, march.*
vescor,	vesci,		*eat.*
ulciscor,	ulcisci,	ultus,	*avenge.*

---

1 The compounds make **-sĭlio, -silīre, -silŭi, -sultum,** as, **rĕsĭlĭo,** *to leap back.*
2 The compounds make **-fĭtĕor, -fĭtēri, -fessus:** as, **confĭtĕor,** *to confess.*

The others are :—

Pres.	Inf.	Perf. Part.	Meaning.
amplector,	amplecti,	amplexus,	*embrace.*
fruor,	frui,	fructus *and* (fruĭtus),	*enjoy myself.*
fungor,	fungi,	functus,	*get quit.*
grădior,[1]	grădi,	gressus,	*step.*
lābor,	lābi,	lapsus,	*glide.*
lŏquor,	lŏqui,	lŏcūtus,	*speak.*
mŏrĭor,[2]	mŏri,	mortŭus,	*die.*
nītor,	nīti,	nīsus *or* nixus,	*strive.*
pătĭor,	păti,	passus,	*suffer, allow.*
quĕror,	quĕri,	questus,	*complain.*
rĕvertor,[3]	rĕverti,	rĕversus,	*return.*
sĕquor,	sĕqui,	secūtus,	*follow.*
ūtor,	ūti,	ūsus,	*avail oneself.*

4. Deponents of the Fourth Conjugation make the Inf. in **-īri**, and Perf. Part. in **-ītus**,[4] except,

assentĭor,	assentīri,	assensus,	*assent.*
expĕrĭor,	expĕrīri,	expertus,	*make trial of.*
mētĭor,	mētīri,	mensus,	*measure.*
oppĕrĭor,	oppĕrīri,	oppertus *and* opperītus,	*wait for.*
ordĭor,	ordīri,	orsus,	*begin.*
ŏrĭor,	ŏrīri,	ortus,	*rise.*[5]

PARTICLES.

98. **Adverbs, Conjunctions, Prepositions,** and **Interjections** are indeclinable. Some of them are cases of existing words, others cases of lost words, others words with case-terminations different from those in common use in Latin, others mutilated remnants of fuller expressions. Some of the interjections are simple natural ejaculations.

---

1 The compounds make **-grĕdĭor, -grĕdi, -gressus** : as, **aggrĕdior,** *to attack.*

2 The future participle is **mŏrĭtūrus.** An infin. **mŏrīri** and **ēmŏrīri** occurs several times in Plautus, once in Terence, and once in Ovid.

3 Properly the passive of **reverto.**

4 **Pŏtior,** *be master,* is of the Fourth Conjugation, but in some forms wavers between the Fourth and the Third. Almost always **pŏtĭtur, pŏtĭmur.**

5 **Orĭor** has some forms of the Third Conjugation (like **capior**): Pres. Ind., **orĕris, orĭtur, orĭmur**; Imperf. Subj., **orĭrer** and **orĕrer**; Fut. Part., **ŏrĭtūrus**; Gerundive, **oriundus** (used as adj.). The compound **adorior** has in Pres. Ind., **adorīris, adorītur.**

99. *ADVERBS.*

1. **Many Adverbs** contain the stem of some noun, adjective, or other part of speech, e. g.:

a. Those which are formed from **adjectives** of the first and second declension, and which end (1) in **ē** (perhaps an old ablative termination for **ed**): as, **plăcĭdē**, from **plăcĭdus**; (2) in **ō** (ablative): as, **falsō**, from **falsus**; (3) in **ŭm** (accusative): as, **multŭm**, from **multus**; (4) in **tĕr**: as, **dūrĭtĕr** (or **dūrē**), from **dūrus**; **hūmānĭtĕr** (or **hūmānē**), from **hūmānus**.

b. Those which are formed from adjectives of the third declension, and which end (1) in **tĕr**: as, **fortĭtĕr**, from **fortis**; (2) in **ĕ** (accusative neuter): as, **făcĭlĕ**, from **făcĭlis**; (3) in **o**: as, **omnīnō**, from **omnis**.

c. Those which are formed from **nouns, pronouns**, or **prepositions**, and which end (1) in **ĭm** (accusative): as, **partĭm**, from **pars**; **furtĭm**, from **fūr**; (2) in **tŭs**: as, **fundĭtŭs**, from **fundus**; (3) in **c, ī** (locative), **o** (ablative), **quĕ, dĕ, dĕm**, etc.: as, **hūc, hĕrī, eō, ŭbīquĕ, ĭbīdĕm, hinc, indĕ**, etc.

2. **Compound adverbs** are made up of two or more words: as, **hŏdiē** for **hoc die**; **tantummŏdŏ** for **tantum modo**; **quamobrem** for **quam ob rem**; **magnŏpĕrĕ** for **magno ŏpĕrĕ**; **quamvīs** for **quam vis**.

3. **As to meaning**, adverbs may be divided into many classes: e. g., (1) **Time**: as, **nunc**, *now;* **crās**, *to-morrow;* **jăm**, *already.* (2) **Place**: as, **hīc**, *here;* **hinc**, *hence;* **hūc**, *hither;* **undĕ**, *whence;* **ĭbĭ**, *there;* **intŭs**, *within.* (3) **Manner**: as, **cārē**, *dearly;* **ēlĕgantĕr**, *elegantly*, in an elegant manner; **perpĕrăm**, *wrongly;* **ĭtĕm**, *likewise;* **ŭt**, *how.* (4) **Degree**: as, **multō**, *much;* **ădeō**, *to such a degree;* **tantŏpĕrĕ**, *so greatly.* (5) **Cause**: as, **quŏd**, *because;* **eō**, *therefore.* (6) **Comparison**: as, **părĭtĕr**, *equally;* **pŏtĭŭs**, *rather.* (7) **Affirmation**: as, **vērō**, *indeed;* **sānē**, *of course;* **ŭtĭquĕ**, *anyhow, assuredly.* (8) **Negation**: as, **nōn**, *not;* **haud**, *not.* (9) **Interrogation**: as, **ŭtrŭm**, *whether or no?* **cūr**, *why?* **quōmŏdŏ**, *how?*

4. For the **Comparison of Adverbs**, see § 52.

100. *CONJUNCTIONS.*

1. In form, **Conjunctions** are **simple**: as, **et, āc, ut, aut**; or **compound**: as, **atquĕ, quamvīs, attămĕn**.

2. **Co-ordinative conjunctions** are employed to connect clauses which are on an equality with each other; that is, either primary clauses, or secondary clauses standing in the same relation to the governing clause. Such are **ĕt, -quĕ** (always attached to a word), **āc, atquĕ, sĕd, vĕl, aut, nĕc, nĕquĕ.**

3. **Subordinative conjunctions** connect a secondary clause to a primary or leading clause. Such are **ŭt, sī, cŭm (quŏm, quŭm), nē, quō, ŭbĭ, dŭm,** etc.

4. Some conjunctions are used in co-ordination as well as in subordination.

5. As to **meaning,** conjunctions may be arranged in thirteen classes.

I. Co-ordinative.

1. **Copulative**: as, **et, āc, atque, -que,** *and;* and a few more.

2. **Adversative**: as, **sed,** *but;* **autem,** *but, however;* **vērō,** *truly, but;* **vērum,** *but;* **at,** *but;* **atqui,** *and yet;* **tămen,** *yet;* **cētĕrum,** *on the other hand;* and the like.

3. **Alternative**: as, **aut,** *either, or;* **vel,** *either, or;* **sīve,** *whether;* **nĕc, nĕque,** *neither, nor;* and the interrogatives, **ŭtrum, an,** *whether or no.*

4. **Causal**: as, **nam, ĕnim, namque, ĕtĕnim,** *for;* **enimvēro,** *for in truth,* or adversative, *but in truth.*

5. **Illative**: as, **ĭgĭtur, ergō, ĭtăque,** *therefore.*

6. **Comparative**: as, **ut, sīcut,** *as;* **vĕlut,** *as if;* **quăsī,** *as if;* **quam,** *than, as;* **utpŏte,** *as being.*

II. Subordinative.

1. **Final,** expressing purpose or result: as, **ut,** *that, so that;* **ne,** *lest,* i. e., that not; **quin,** *that not, but that;* **quo minus,** *in order that not;* **nēve** or **neu,** *and in order that not.*

2. **Conditional,** expressing a condition or contingency: as, **sī,** *if;* **sin,** *if however, but if;* **nĭsi,** *unless, if not;* **dum,** *provided that,* etc.

3. **Concessive,** expressing a concession or admission: as, **ut,** *although;* **etsi, tămetsi, quamquam, quamvis,** *although;* also **cum,** *although;* and a few others.

4. **Temporal,** expressing time: as, **cum,** *when;* **sĭmŭl ac,**

as soon as; **ut**, *when, as soon as;* **dum**, *whilst;* **dōnec**, *until;* **ŭbi**, *when*, etc.

5. **Causal**, expressing cause, reason, or ground: as, **quod, quiă, quŏniam, cum**, *because;* **quippe**, *as, because, inasmuch as;* **quando**, *since (because).*

6. **Relative**, expressing a reference to something going before: as, **unde**, *whence, for which reason;* **quārē**, *on which account, wherefore, why;* **quămŏbrem**, *wherefore.*

7. **Comparative**, expressing comparison or likeness: as, **ut**, *as;* **sīcut**, *just as;* **vĕlut**, *as if;* **quăsī**, *as if.*

Note 1.—Many words in the above lists are used in more than one sense and one construction.

Note 2.—Many pronominal particles are Adverbs when interrogative, but Conjunctions when relative.

101. *PREPOSITIONS.*

Some prepositions govern the accusative case, some the ablative, and a few both the accusative and the ablative. (See SYNTAX, § 131; § 186.)

I. Prepositions in Composition.

Prepositions are often compounded with other words, and in many cases suffer a modification of their final letter, according to the principles of euphony.

A is used before the consonants **m** and **v**: as, **a-moveo, a-veho**; better also in **a-fui, a-fore**, from **absum**.

Ab is used before **vowels** and most consonants: as, **ab-ire, ab-duco, ab-icio (ab-jicio), ab-ripio, ab-latus, ab-nego**, etc.

Ab is changed into **au** in **au-fero, au-fugio**.

Abs is used before **c, q**, and **t**: as, **abs-condo, abs-cisio, abs-que, abs-tineo**.

Ab before **p** becomes **as**: as, **as-porto**.

Ad is found before **vowels, h**, and the consonants **d, j, m**, and **v**: as, **ad-amo, ad-hibeo, ad-duco, ad-icio (ad-jicio), ad-moneo, ad-veho**. It is often assimilated to the other consonants: as, **al-loquor** or **ad-loquor, af-fero** or **ad-fero, ac-colo** or **ad-colo**. Before **q, d** may become **c**: as, **ac-quiro** or **ad-quiro**. Before **gn**, or before **s** followed by a consonant, the **d** is often omitted: as, **a-gnosco** or **ad-gnosco, a-spicio** or **ad-spicio**.

Cum is represented by **com, con,** or **co.**

Com is often used before **p, b, m**: as, **com-paro, com-bibo, com-munio.** Before **l, n, r**, the **m** may be assimilated: as, **col-loquor** or **con-loquor, con-niveo** or **coniveo, cor-ripio** or **conripio.**

Con is used before the other consonants not mentioned under **com**: as, **con-fero, con-tego, con-sido.**

Co is used before **vowels**, and **h**: as, **co-eo, co-alesco, co-haereo**; but the **m** remains in some words: as, **comedo, comes, comitor,** and **comitium.**

Ex is used before **vowels, h,** and the consonants **c, p, q, s,** and **t**: as, **ex-oro, ex-cipio, ex-perior, ex-quiro, ex-solvo, ex-tendo.** Before **f** the **x** is assimilated, or sometimes becomes **c**: as, **ef-fero,** or, rarely, **ec-fero,** for **ex-fero.** It is omitted before other consonants: as, **e-ripio, e-volvo.**

Note.—But **e**, and not **ex**, is used for the most part in **e-scendo** and **e-poto**; while, on the contrary, **ex** is used in **ex-lex,** lawless.

In (both the preposition and the inseparable negative particle) may become **im** before the labials **p, b, m**: as, **im-pono** for **in-pono, im-buo** for **in-buo, im-mitto** for **in-mitto.** Before **l** and **r** the **n** is often assimilated: as, **il-ludo** or **in-ludo, ir-rideo** for **in-rideo.** Before **gn** it is dropped: as, **i-gnoro** for **in-gnoro.** In other cases it remains: as, **in-utilis, in-eptus, in-fero.**

Inter remains unchanged, except in **intellego** for **inter-lego,** and its derivatives.

Ob assimilates its final letter to **c, f, g,** and **p,** and generally remains unchanged before others: as, **oc-curro** for **ob-curro, of-fero** for **ob-fero, og-gero** for **ob-gero, op-primo** for **ob-primo (prĕmo).** Before **s** and **t** it is frequently written **op**; it becomes **obs** in **obsolesco**; and is written **ob,** sometimes **om,** before **m.** It drops **b** in **omitto, operio, ostendo** (for **obs-tendo**).

Per assimilates its final letter only in **pel-licio** for **per-licio,** and words derived from it. In **pējero** for **per-juro,** the **r** is omitted.

Pro generally remains unaltered; but we have **prod** when the second part of the compound begins with a vowel: as, **prod-erat.** The **r** and the **o** are sometimes transposed: as

in **por-rigo** for **pro-rigo** (i. e., **rego**), and **portendo** for **protendo.**

Sub assimilates its final letter before **c, f, g**, generally before p, and sometimes before **m** and **r**: as, **suc-curro** for **sub-curro, sug-gero** for **sub-gero.** Before other consonants it remains unchanged, except that we find **sus** (for **subs**) in **suscipio, suscito, suspendo, sustineo, sustento, sustuli,** and **su** in **suspicio, suspiro.**

Trans is often shortened into **tran** or **tra**: as, **tra-duco** for **transduco.**

Note.—Usage varies greatly in compounds, in regard to the retention of the final consonant of the preposition and its assimilation or other modification.

II. Inseparable Particles.

There are certain quasi-prepositions which are often found in composition. These are **amb-, dis-** or **di-, re-** and **se.**

1. **Amb,** *around; on both sides:* as, **amb-io,** *to go round.* The **b** is omitted when **p** follows: as, **am-plector** for *amb-plector.* Before gutturals and **f**, the **b** is omitted, and the **m** changed into **n**: as, **an-ceps.**

2. **Dis** or **di,** *in different directions, in twain:* as, **dis-pōno,** *to place in different positions.* Before a vowel or **h**, **dis** becomes **dĭr-**: as, **dĭr-ĭmo**; before **f** it becomes **dif-**: as, **dif-fĕro.** It remains **dis** before **c, p, q, s**: as, **dis-cŭtio**; before other consonants, and **sp, sc,** and **st,** it becomes **di.**

3. **Re** or **red,** *back; again:* as, **rĕ-tĭneo,** *to keep back;* **rĕd-ĭmo,** *to buy back.* Sometimes the **d** is assimilated or falls off, the vowel **e** being lengthened to compensate.

4. **Sē** or **sēd,** *apart,* remains the same: as, **sē-păro, sē-dūco, sēd-ĭtio.**

102. *INTERJECTIONS.*

1. **Interjections** may be divided into two classes, according as they are **imitations of sounds,** or **abbreviated sentences or mutilated words.**

1. Imitations of sounds.

ā or **āh** or **hā**	in warning or sorrow. Comp. *ἆ*; Eng., *ah!* Germ., *ach!*
ăhă	in reproof or denial, or laughter.

ējă / **hēiă** — in encouragement. Comp. *εἶα*; Engl., *hey.*

vāh or **vā** — in surprise or indignation. Comp. *ὀᾶ.*

ō — various. Comp. *ὦ, ὦ*; Engl., *oh!*

ĭō — a shout in excitement. Comp. *ἰώ* and *ἰού* or *ἰοῦ*; Engl., *yoho!*

ĕhŏ or **ŏho** — a cry of distress. Comp. Engl. *Ho!* In Terence sometimes with **dum** appended.

prō or **proh** — in surprise or indignation; especially in phrases, **pro Di immortales**, etc. Perhaps this is not imitative of a natural sound, but is a word.

euoe — for *εὐοῖ*: a cry in Bacchic rites.

au — in fear and warning.

fū or **fuī** — expression of disgust. Comp. *φεῦ* (?); Engl., *fie! faw! foh!* Germ., *pfui.*

phy — in impatience at unnecessary explanation. Ter. *Ad.*, 412. Probably same as last. Comp. Engl., *pooh.*

huī — various. Perhaps a whistle, which is written in Engl., *whew.*

băbāe / **păpae** — in wonder and delight: a quivering of the lips. Perhaps imitative of Greek *βαβαί, πόποι, παπαῖ.*

hahahae — laughing. Comp. *ἆ ἆ* or *ἀ ἀ*, Engl., *Haha.*

vae — in grief and anger. Represents a wail. Comp. *οὐαί,* in Alexandrine and later writers, perhaps imitation of the Latin; Germ., *weh;* Engl., *woe.* Compare also **vah** and the verb **vāgīre**.

ōhē — in annoyance, especially when a person is *sated;* probably between a groan and a grunt. Comp. Engl., *ugh.*

hei or **ei** — in grief. It represents a sigh. Comp. *ἒ ἒ* or *ἓ ἓ* or *ἐή,* and perhaps *αἰαῖ*; Engl., *heigh.*

heu, ēheu — *alas!*

ĕhem or / **hem** or **em** — the sound of clearing the throat. Comp. Engl., *hem, ahem.* In Plautus **em** is often found in MSS. for **en**.

st — to command silence. The corresponding sound in English, *hist*, is used to attract attention; and *sh, hush,* to command silence.

attat or **atat** or rarely **attatae** — in surprise, vexation, fear, etc.; smacking of the tongue against the teeth. Comp. *ἀτταταῖ, ἀτταταταῖ, ὀτοτοῖ, ὀτοτοτοῖ*; Engl., *tut, tut.*

heus a noise to attract attention; a combined whistle and hiss. Comp. Engl. *whisht!* and perhaps Germ. *heisa* (= Engl., *huzza*).

bombax apparently from *βομβάξ*: expression of wonder.

euax a cry of joy. Comp. *εὖα*, *εὐάζειν*, and perhaps Germ., *juchhe*.

taxtax the sound of blows. Comp. Engl. *thwack*.

tărătantără (Ennius), the sound of a trumpet.

2. Mutilated words or abbreviated sentences. The following are probably such:

(*a*) Latin:

ēn in Plaut. usually **em**, *lo!*

ecce *lo here!* The **ce** is perhaps the demonstrative particle. In the comic poets it is frequently combined with the accusative (as if it were equivalent to *see*) of the pronouns **is** and **ille**: **eccum, eccam, eccos, eccas, ecca; eccillum, eccillam, eccillut**; once also **eccistam.**

eccĕre used similarly to English *there!*

mehercŭles, mehercŭle, mehercle, hercŭles, hercle, abbreviations of **me Hercules juvet**, or **me, Hercule, juves.**

mĕdĭus fĭdĭus for **me deus Fidius juvet.**

ēcastor perhaps for **en Castor.**

pol for **Pollux.**

ĕdĕpol for **me, dee Pollux, juves**; or the **e** may be an old interjection.

sōdes *prythee; if you will be so good.*

(*b*) Borrowed from the Greek:

ăpăge *off! away!* for *ἄπαγε*.

eu *well done!* for *εὖ*.

euge *well done! bravo!* for *εὖγε*.

eugĕpae originally for *εὖγε παῖ?*

2. Several nouns and verbs are used in exclamation or invocation, like interjections. Such are:

1. **pax**, *hush!* **mălum**, *plague! the mischief!* **nĕfas, infandum**, *monstrous!* **indignum, horrendum, mĭsĕrum, mĭsĕrābĭle, turpe.** The vocative **macte**, plur. **macti**, is used with an ablative or genitive: as, **macte esto virtūte**, *go on and prosper.* It is, perhaps, the participle of a lost

verb, magĕre. The interrogative pronoun, **quid**, *what!* is sometimes used in exclamation.

2. **quaeso**, *prithee!* **prĕcor, ōro, obsĕcro**, *pray;* **ămābo**, *do please;* **sīs** (**si vis**), **sultis** (**si vultis**), *please;* **ăge, ăgĭte, ăgĕsis, ăgĕdum, ăgĭtĕdum**, *come now;* **cĕdo** (plur. **cette**), *here! give me:* so, **sōdes**.

3. Less properly it has been said that certain adverbs may sometimes be regarded as interjections: as, **prŏfectō, nē** (*truly*), **cĭtō, bĕnĕ, bellē**.

THE FORMATION OF WORDS.

103. Words are formed directly from roots, or from other words.

1. Root syllables may be **reduplicated**: as, *mur-mur, tin-tin-nare; bĭ-be-re, sŭ-sur-rus, cŭ-cū-lus;* (compare *papa;*) and they may undergo **internal change**, such as the lengthening of their vowel, or the insertion of a consonant, or other modifications: as, **vōc-is** (nom. *vōx*), root **vŏc** (as in *vŏcare*); stem **crūd-ō-** (nom. *crūdus*), root **cru-**; **flamm-a**, root **flag**.

2. Almost all words have some **suffix**.

3. The **suffixes of inflection** are used to form the cases and numbers of nouns, and the persons, moods, tenses, voices, etc., of verbs.

4. **Stem-suffixes** form the distinguishing marks of the declensions of nouns and the conjugations of verbs.

5. **Derivative suffixes** are additions placed between the root and the stem-suffix, or, when there is no stem-suffix, between the root and the suffix of inflection. They may originally have been words themselves, but are now merely significant terminations, modifying the meaning of the nouns to which they are annexed. The same suffix does not always express the same modification, and different suffixes sometimes seem to have the same effect. Sometimes the sense of the suffix has been obscured, and a further suffix is added to express what had already been denoted: thus, **puella** is a diminution of **puĕra**, but, having supplanted **puĕra** as the ordinary term for *girl*, a new diminutive, **puellŭla**, was formed for a *little* or *very young girl*.

6. The long vowel, often found in the same part of different derivatives, is sometimes part of the suffix, sometimes comes from contraction of the stem-suffix with a short initial vowel of the suffix, and is sometimes due to a false analogy.

104. *SIGNIFICANT ENDINGS.*

I. Nouns derived from Verbs.

1. The termination or signifies the action or condition: as, ămor, *love*, from ămo; tĭmor, *fear*, from tĭmeo.

2. **Note.**—But many nouns in **-or** seem to be simple or primary: as, **hŏnor, arbor, lăbor**.

3. The termination **-tŏr**, or **-sŏr**, signifies the **doer** or **agent**. Such words are formed from the stem of the supine : as,

> **vinco, victum,** *to conquer,* **victor,** *a conqueror.*
> **curro, cursum,** *to run,* **cursor,** *a runner.*

4. **Note.**—There is a fem. termination in **-trix,** corresponding to the masc. **-tor**: as, **victor,** fem. **victrix; vēnātor, vēnātrix.**

Rem.—The terminations **-a, -o,** and **-ber** sometimes denote an agent: as, **scrīb-a, prae-c-o** (praevŏ-co), **ĕd-o, fă-ber.**

5. The terminations **-io, -tio, -tus,** or **-sus,** and **-tūra,** denote **action** or make **verbal abstracts**: as,

> **obsĭdeo,** *to besiege,* **obsĭdio,** *a siege* (i. e., *a besieging*).
> **lĕgo,** *to enroll,* **lĕgio,** *a legion.*
> **ăgo,** (*Sup.*) **actum,** *to do,* **actio,** *a doing.*
> **mŏveo, mōtum,** *to move,* **mōtio,** *a moving.*
> **verto, versum,** *to turn,* **versio,** *a turning.*
> **ăgo, actum,** *to do,* **actus,** *a doing.*
> **mŏveo, mōtum,** *to move,* **mōtus,** *a moving.*
> **căno, cantum,** *to sing,* **cantus,** *a singing.*
> **verto, versum,** *to turn,* **versus,** *a turning.*
> **pingo, pictum,** *to paint,* **pictūra,** *a picture.*
> **cŏlo, cultum,** *to till,* **cultūra,** *a tilling.*

6. **Note.**—A few words in **-igo** denote **action** or **condition**: as, **vertīgo,** *a turning,* from **verto.**

7. The terminations **-men** and **-mentum** usually denote the **means** or **thing performing** the action, or its **result**: as,

> **lūceo,** *to light,* **lūmen,** *light.*
> **tĕgo,** *to cover,* **tegmen,** *a covering.*
> **flŭo,** *to flow,* **flūmen,** *a river.*
> **impĕdio,** *to hinder,* **impĕdīmentum,** *a hindrance.*
> **orno,** *to adorn,* **ornāmentum,** *an ornament.*

8. **Note 1.**— **-men** is sometimes used **passively**: as, **agmen** (a thing led), *an army on march;* **gestāmen,** *a thing carried.*

9. **Note 2.**—In some words of this class the stem is extended by a vowel: as, **rĕgĭmen,** from **rego.**

10. The instrument is also expressed by **-cŭlum** (**-clum**) and **-bŭlum,** which become **-crum** and **-brum** when l precedes: as,

> **gŭberno,** *to steer,* **gŭbernācŭlum,** *a rudder.*
> **vĕho,** *to carry,* **vĕhĭcŭlum,** *a carriage, cart.*

fĕro, *to bear*, fercŭlum, *a tray.*
sĕpĕlio, *to bury*, sĕpulcrum, *a sepulchre.*
sĭmŭlo, *to imitate*, sĭmŭlācrum, *an image.*
pasco, *to feed*, pābŭlum, *fodder.*
vēnor, *to hunt*, vēnābŭlum, *a hunting-spear.*
flo, *blow*, flābrum, *a blast.*

11. **Note 1.**— **-bŭlum** sometimes denotes **place**: as, **stăbŭlum**, *a stall* (standing-place), from **sto**, *to stand.*

12. **Note 2.**—When the stem of the verb ends in **c** or **g**, the termination is **-ulum**: as, **jacŭlum** (**jac-io**); **cingŭlum** (**cingo**).

13. **Note 3.**— **-trum** also denotes **the instrument.** When the stem of the verb ends in **d**, **s** is substituted for **d**: as,

ăro, *to plough*, ărātrum, *a plough.*
rādo, *to scrape*, rastrum, *a hoe.*

Rem.—**Masculines** and **feminines** occur: as, **căp-ŭlus**, **tēg-ŭla**, **scā-lae.**

14. The termination **-ium** denotes a **state**, or an **act**, or the **result of an action**: as,

gaudeo, *to rejoice*, gaudium, *joy.*
aedĭfĭco, *to build*, aedĭfĭcium, *a building.*
ōdī, *I hate*, ŏdium, *hatred.*

15. The termination **-ies** denotes **the thing made**, or the **result of the action**: as,

făcio, *to make*, făciēs, *figure*, *appearance.*
congĕro, *to heap up*, congĕriēs, *a heap.*

16. **Note.**—We sometimes meet other terminations: as, **cŭpīdo** (from **cŭpio**); **quĕrēla** (from **quĕror**); **erro** (from the verb **erro**), and a few more.

II. Nouns derived from Nouns.

17. The terminations **-al** and **-ar** denote **that which has** or **that which pertains to** something: as,

ănĭma, *breath*, ănĭmal, *a living creature* (*having breath*).
calx, *the heel*, calcar, *a spur.*

18. The termination **-ārius** denotes **one engaged in a trade**: as,

aes, *copper*, aerārius, *a coppersmith.*
argentum, *silver*, argentārius, *a silversmith; a banker.*

19. **-ārium** denotes the **place** where things are kept: as,

ăvis, *a bird*, **ăviārium**, *an aviary*, or place where birds are kept.
aes, *money*, **aerārium**, *a treasury*.

20. **-ātus** and **-ūra**, appended to the names of officers, indicate the office: as,

consul, **consŭlātus**, *the consulship*.
praetor, **praetūra**, *the praetorship*.

21. **-īna** denotes an employment, or the place (as of a business), or indicates the female: as,

mĕdĭcus, *a physician*, **mĕdĭcīna**, *the healing art*.
ŏpĭfex, *a workman*, **offĭcīna** (**ŏpĭfĭcīna**), *a workshop*.
piscis, *fish*, **piscīna**, *a fish-pond*.
rēx, *a king*, **rēgīna**, *a queen*.

22. **Note.**—**-cĭnium** denotes action or event: as, **latrō-cĭnium**.

23. **-ium** indicates occupation, state, assemblage, etc.: as,
săcerdos, *a priest*, **săcerdōtium**, *priesthood*.
exsul, *an exile*, **exsĭlium**, *exile*.
collēga, *a colleague*, **collēgium**, *an association*.

24. **-ētum** appended to the names of trees, shrubs, or plants denotes the place where they grow, or a collection of them, and **-īle** added to names of animals denotes the place of their abode: as,

quercus, *an oak*, **quercētum**, *an oak-grove*.
vīnea, *a vine*, **vīnētum**, *a vineyard*.
ŏvis, *a sheep*, **ŏvīle**, *a sheepfold*.
bōs (**bŏvis**), *an ox*, **bŏvīle**, *an ox-stall*.

25. There is a class of derivatives called Diminutives, which express smallness: hence also sometimes endearment, contempt, pity, or depreciation. Such are of the same gender as their primitives. They are formed by adding

1. **-ŭlus**, **-ŭla**, **-ŭlum**, with nouns of the First and Second Declensions, and sometimes other nouns, especially when the clipt stem ends in **c**, **g**, **t**, or **d**: as,

hortus, *a garden*, **hortŭlus**, *a little garden*.
rīvus, *a brook*, **rīvŭlus**, *a rill*.
saxum, *a rock*, **saxŭlum** (once in Cicero), *a little rock*.

rādix, *a root*, **rādīcŭla**, *a little root.*
rēx, *a king*, **rēgŭlus**, *a kingling*, *a petty king.*

2. **-cŭlus, -cŭla, -cŭlum**, with nouns of the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions: as,

frāter, *a brother*, **frātercŭlus**, *a little brother.*
versus, *a verse*, **versĭcŭlus**, *a short verse.*
nāvis, *a ship*, **nāvĭcŭla**, *a little ship.*
corpus, *a body*, **corpuscŭlum**, *a particle.*

26. **Note 1.**—When the suffix follows a vowel, the **u** becomes **o**: as,

fīlius, *a son*, **fīlĭŏlus**, *a little son.*
glădius, *a sword*, **glădiŏlus**, *a small sword.*
nĕgōtium, *business*, **nĕgōtiŏlum**, *a bit of business.*

27. **Note 2.**—A contraction is sometimes formed (especially when the clipt stem of the primitive ends in **l**, **n**, or **r**), and the termination is changed into **-ellus**, **-ella**, or **-ellum**; **-illus**, **-a**, **-um**; or **-ullus**, **-ulla**: as,

ŏcŭlus, *an eye*, **ŏcellus**, *a dear little eye.*
cătŭlus, *a puppy*, **cătellus**, *a little puppy.*
pŏpŭlus, *the people*, **pŏpellus**, *the rabble.*
lăpis, *a stone*, **lăpillus**, *a pebble.*
hŏmo, *a man*, **hŏmullus**, *a manikin.*

28. **Note 3.**—Nouns ending in **-ō** (**-ōnis** or **-ĭnis**), change **-on** or **-in** into **-un**: as, **homo**, **homuncŭlus** (or **homuncio**), *a little man;* **sermo**, **sermuncŭlus**. So also **ăvus**, **ăvuncŭlus**.

29. **Note 4.**—Adjectives also have diminutives: as, **mĭser**, **mĭsellus**; **frīgĭdus**, **frīgĭdŭlus**; **mĕlius-cŭlus**, *a little better.*

30. **Note 5.**—Many ordinary words in the Romance languages are formed from Latin Diminutives: as, from **luscĭni-ŏla**, Italian **usignuolo**, French **rossignol**, *nightingale;* **agn-ellus**, French **agneau**, *lamb.*

31. Female names are often made from the corresponding masculine forms by the termination **-a**: as,

cervus, *a stag*, **cerva**, *a doe.*
fīlius, *a son*, **fīlia**, *a daughter.*
măgister, *a master*, **măgistra**, *a mistress.*
cliens, *a client*, **clienta**, *a female client.*

32. Some nouns in **-io** denote persons: as,

restis, *a rope*, **restio**, *a rope-maker.*
pellis, *a skin*, *felt*, **pellio**, *a furrier.*

33. Some nouns ending in **-tus**, and denoting **quality** or **condition**, are formed from generic names: as,

> **vir**, *a man*, **virtūs**, *virtue* (*manliness*).
> **jŭvenis**, *a youth*, **jŭventūs**, *youth*.
> **servus**, *a slave*, **servĭtūs**, *slavery*.

34. From personal names (masc.) the Greeks formed a class of nouns called **Patronymics**, indicating descent: as, **Priămĭdēs**, *a son of Priam;* **Tantălĭs**, *a daughter of Tantalus;* **Aenēădēs**, *a descendant of Aeneas.* These words are most commonly employed in poetry, occasionally in prose. Thus,

1. Masculine Patronymics are formed in

a. **-ĭdēs**: as, **Priămus**, **Priămĭdēs**, *a son of Priam.*
b. **-īdēs**, from substantives in **-eus** and **-clēs**: as, **Atreus**; **Atrīdēs**, *a son of Atreus;* **Hērăclēs**; **Hērăclīdēs**, *a descendant of Heracles.*
c. **-ădēs**: as, **Aenĕădēs**, *a descendant of Aenēas.*
d. **-iădēs**: as, **Thestiădēs**, *a descendant of Thestius;* **Abantiădēs**, *a son of Abas.*

2. Feminine Patronymics end in

a. **-ĭs**, **-ĭdis**: as, **Tantălĭs**, *a daughter of Tantălus.*
b. **-ēĭs**, **-ēĭdis**: as, **Nērēĭs**, *a daughter of Nereus.*
c. **-ias**, **-iădis**: as, **Thestias**, *a daughter of Thestius.*
d. **-īnē**: as, **Neptūnīnē**, *a daughter of Neptune.*
e. **-ōnē**: as, **Acrĭsiōnē**, *a daughter of Acrisius.*

III. Nouns derived from Adjectives.

35. Nouns expressing a **quality** or **state** are formed from adjectives, with the following terminations:

1. **-ia**, **-tia**, and **-tas**: as,

> **audax**, *bold*, **audācia**, *daring.*
> **mollis**, *soft*, **mollĭtia**, *softness.*
> **moestus**, *sad*, **moestĭtia**, *sadness.*
> **bŏnus**, *good*, **bŏnĭtas**, *goodness.*

2. **-tūdo** and **mōnia**: as,

> **altus**, *high*, **altĭtūdo**, *height* (*highness*).
> **sanctus**, *holy*, **sanctimōnia**, *sanctity* (*holiness*).

IV. Adjectives formed from Verbs.

36. Adjectives are formed from verbs with the following terminations:

1. -dus or -ĭdus, denoting quality or condition: as,

răpio, *to hurry along*, răpĭdus, *swift.*
tĭmeo, *to fear*, tĭmĭdus, *fearful.*

2. -lis, -ĭlis, and -bĭlis, denoting capability or possibility, or belonging to, or sometimes actively, power: as,

făcio, *to make, to do*, făcĭlis, *able to be done* (*easy*).
dŏceo, *to teach*, dŏcĭlis, *teachable.*
ămo, *to love*, ămābĭlis, *lovable.*
terreo, *to frighten*, terrĭbĭlis, *creating terror.*

3. -ax, denoting an inclination or propensity, and usually in a bad sense: as,

audeo, *to dare*, audax, *daring* (*fool-hardy*).
lŏquor, *to talk*, lŏquax, *talkative.*

4. -bundus, -cundus, denoting action, capacity, or state, and -ŭlus, repeated action, are more rare: as,

mŏrior, *to die*, mŏrĭbundus, *in the agony of death.*
īrascor, *to be angry*, īrācundus, *angry.*
fāri, *to speak*, fācundus, *of ready speech.*
garrio, *to chatter*, garrŭlus, *babbling.*

V. Adjectives formed from Nouns.

37. Adjectives ending in -eus denote the material of which a thing is made, and sometimes resemblance: as,

lignum, *wood*, ligneus, *wooden.*
aurum, *gold*, aureus, *golden.*
rŏsa, *a rose*, rŏseus, *like a rose* (*rosy*).

38. **Note 1.**—To names of trees, and of materials, -neus or -nus is usually added: as,

pōpŭlus, *a poplar*, pōpulneus (*or* -nus, once in Plautus), *made of poplar.*
ĕbur, *ivory*, ĕburneus, *made of ivory.*

39. **Note 2.**—But -nus sometimes signifies belonging to, or arising from: as,

păter, *a father*, **păternus**, *belonging to one's father.*
ver, *spring*, **vernus**, *vernal.*

40. **-āceus**, **-ĭcius**, and **-ītius** indicate **material** or **relation**, or **property**: as,

argilla, *clay*, **argillāceus**, *made of clay* (*clayey*).
lăter, *a brick*, **lătĕrĭcius**, *made of brick.*
trĭbūnus, *a tribune*, **trĭbūnĭcius**, *relating* (or *belonging*) *to a tribune.*

41. **-ĭcus** or **īcus**, **-īlis**, and **-ālis** or **āris** denote **belonging or relating to**: as,

bellum, *war*, **bellĭcus**, *relating to war.*
ămor (**ămo**), *love*, **ămīcus**, *friendly.*
hostis, *an enemy*, **hostīlis**, *hostile.*
rēx, *a king*, **rēgālis**, *regal*, *of a king.*
pŏpŭlus, *the people*, **pŏpŭlāris**, *relating to the people.*

42. **-ius**, **īnus**, **ānus**, and **-ārius** denote **belonging or pertaining to**; **-ius** being usually added to the names of **persons**; **-īnus** to the names of **animals**; **-ānus** and **-ārius** are, more particularly, **local**: as,

păter, *a father*, **pătrius**, *of* or *pertaining to a father.*
ĕquus, *a horse*, **ĕquīnus**, *of* or *pertaining to a horse.*
urbs, *a city*, **urbānus**, *of* or *pertaining to a city.*
ăger, *a field*, **agrārius**, *of* or *pertaining to a field.*

43. **-ōsus** and **-lentus** mean **full of, abounding in**: as,

pĕrīcŭlum, *danger*, **pĕrīcŭlōsus**, *dangerous.*
vīs, *violence*, **viŏlentus**, *violent* (*full of violence*).

44. **-ātus**, **-ītus**, and **-ūtus** mean **supplied with**: as,

barba, *a beard*, **barbātus**, *having a beard.*
auris, *an ear*, **aurītus**, *having ears.*
cornu, *a horn*, **cornūtus**, *having horns.*

45. Many adjectives are formed from **proper names** by the suffix **-ānus** or **-iānus**, or **-īnus** or **-ĭcus** added to personal names: as,

Sulla, **Sullānus**, *of* or *pertaining to Sulla.*
Cĭcĕro, **Cĭcĕrōniānus**, *of Cicero*, *Ciceronian.*

Jŭgurtha, Jŭgurthīnus, *of* or *pertaining to Jugurtha.*
Gallus, Gallĭcus, *of* or *pertaining to Gaul, Gallic.*

46. **Note.**—In Greek words the usual terminations are **-ĭcus, -ēus,** or **-īus**: as,

Sōcrătēs, Sōcrătĭcus, *Socratic.*
Sŏphŏclēs, Sŏphŏclēus, *Sophoclēan.*
Aristŏtĕlēs, Aristŏtĕlīus, *Aristotĕlian.*

47. The termination **-ĕus** is poetical: as,

Hērcŭles, Hērcŭlĕus, *Hercúlean.*
Rōmŭlus, Rōmŭlĕus, *Romúlean.* Horace has **Rōmŭla gens.** We find also **dŏmus Augusta; portus Trajānus.**

48. Proper adjectives are formed **from names of places** by the terminations (*a*) **-ensis** (cf. **fŏrensis, castrensis,** etc.), and a few in **-iensis**, from words in **-o**, and from some in **-a, -ae, -um**; (*b*) **-īnus**, from words in **-ia** and **-ium**; (*c*) **-ānus** from words in **-a** and **-ae**, and sometimes **-um** and **-i**: as,

Cannae, Cannensis, *of* or *pertaining to Cannae.*
Carthāgo, Carthāgĭniensis, *of Carthage, Carthagĭnian.*
Amĕria, Amĕrīnus, *of Amĕria, Amerian.*
Alba, Albānus, *of Alba, Alban.*
Thēbae, Thēbānus, *of Thebes, Theban.*
Tuscŭlum, Tuscŭlānus, *of Tuscŭlum, Tusculan.*
Fundi, Fundānus, *of* or *pertaining to Fundi.*

49. The suffix **-as**, gen. **-ātis**, belongs to **names of places** in **-na, -nae,** and **-no**, but specially to those in **-num**: as,

Căpēna, Căpēnās, *of* or *pertaining to Capēna.*
Fĭdēnae, Fĭdēnās, *of* or *pertaining to Fidēnae.*
Arpīnum, Arpīnās, *of* or *pertaining to Arpīnum.*

50. **Note.**—These adjectives are often used as nouns indicating the inhabitants; as, **Duo Arpīnātes,** *the two men of Arpīnum.*

51. The suffixes **-ĭus, -aeus, ēnus,** belong to adjectives derived from the names of **Greek places**: as, **Cŏrinthius, Lārissaeus, Cўzĭcēnus.**

52. Adjectives are also derived from Particles; some from Adverbs: as, **crastĭnus** from **crās, hŏdiernus** from **hŏdie**; some from Prepositions: as, **antīquus** from **ante.**

105. *FORMATION OF VERBS.*

1. Verbs derived from other Verbs are called **Verbals.** Such are the Inchoatives, Imitatives, Frequentatives, Diminutives, and Desideratives (§ 88).

2. *a.* Verbs derived from Nouns or Adjectives are called **Denominatives**. Such are most verbs in the First and Fourth Conjugations, the greater number being transitive: as, **laud-āre**, *to praise;* **mīlĭt-āre**, *to serve in war;* **līběr-āre**, *to set free;* **laet-āri**, *to rejoice;* **fīn-īre**, *to end;* **vest-īre**, *to clothe;* **moll-īre**, *to soften;* **larg-īri**, *to bestow.*

b. The suffixes **-ŭl**, **-ŏl**, **-cĭn**, **-ĭt**, **-ĭg** (= **ăg**), **ĭc**, occur in the First Conjugation: as, **grāt-ŭl-āri**, **vi-ŏl-āre**, **sermō-cĭn-āre**, **dēbĭl-ĭt-āre**, **nāv-ĭg-āre**, **mīt-ĭg-āre**, **claud-ĭc-āre**, **commūn-ĭc-āre**. So **jūr-g-āre** for **jūr-ĭg-āre**, **pūr-g-āre** for **pūr-ĭg-āre**.

c. Most verbs in the Second Conjugation are from Nouns, a few from Adjectives; the greater number being intransitive: as, **call-ēre**, **lūc-ēre**, **flōr-ēre**, **flāv-ēre**.

d. A few U-verbs in the Third Conjugation are Denominatives: as, **ăcu-ěre**, **mětu-ěre**, **mĭnu-ěre**, **trĭbu-ěre**.

Note.—Some Verbs called Denominative may be really Primitive.

3. Some Roots have a Transitive and an Intransitive Verb corresponding to each other: as, **fŭgāre**, *to put to flight*, **fŭgěre**, *to fly;* **jăcěre**, *to throw*, **jăcēre**, *to lie;* **penděre**, *to suspend*, **pendēre**, *to hang.*

106. *COMPOUND WORDS.*

1. Two or more words may be so joined as to form one word.

2. Sometimes the words are so joined that one actually agrees with the other: as, **rēs-pūblĭca**; **jūs-jūrandum**; **trēs-vĭri**: or that the second governs the first: as, **sĕnātūs-consultum**; **vēri-sĭmĭlis**. Such compounds can be severed, thus: **resque pūblĭca**; **sĕnātūsve consulta**; so that they are not proper compounds in the strictest sense of the word. But generally one part or both lose the form of words: as, **magnănĭmus**; **Trojŭgěna**; **artĭfex**.

3. Some compounds indicate simple addition or association of their parts: as, **duŏdĕcim**, *twelve* (duo + decem); **suŏvĕtaurīlia** (plur.), a sacrifice of *a pig, sheep,* and *bull* (su- + ŏvi- + tauro-).

4. In some compounds the first part has the nature of a case governed by the second part: as (Nouns), **agrĭ-cŏla** (qui agrum colit), *a farmer;*

vītĭ-sător (vītium sător), *a vine-planter;* (Adjectives) **armĭ-ger** (arma gerens), *bearing arms* (as noun, *an armor-bearer*); **mellĭ-fluus,** *flowing with honey;* (Verbs) **bellĭ-gĕrāre** = bellum gĕrĕre; **aequĭ-părāre** = aequum părāre; **călĕ-făcĕre** = călēre făcĕre.

5. In some compound nouns the first part is an adjective or numeral: as, **plēnĭ-lūni-um,** *the full moon;* **tri-ennium,** *a space of three years.*

6. The first part sometimes modifies the second adverbially: as, (Nouns) **prin-ceps** (prīmus and căpio, *one who takes the first place*); **ĭn-ĕdia** (in, *negative,* and ĕdo, *to eat*), *fasting;* (Adjectives) **omnĭ-pŏtens,** *powerful in all things;* **bĭ-fĭdus** (bis and findo), *cleft in two;* **bĕnĕ-vŏlus,** *wishing well;* **sēmĭ-vīvus,** *half alive;* **septĕm-gĕmĭnus,** *seven-fold;* **im-mĕmor,** *unmindful;* (Verbs) **bĕnĕ-dīcĕre; nĕ-quīre; ad-dūcĕre; ef-fēmĭnāre** (ē and fēmĭna); **ē-rŭdīre** (ē and rŭdis).

7. Adjectives are sometimes so compounded as to imply "having" in some qualified manner, or "not having:" as, **magn-ănĭmus; centĭ-ceps** (centum and căput), *having a hundred heads;* **ā-mens, dē-mens,** *not having one's right mind;* **im-bellis,** *not warlike;* **ālĭ-pēs,** *wing-footed;* **ignĭ-cŏmus,** *with fiery hair;* **con-cors; in-numerus; prae-ceps** (căput) *headforemost.*

8. Most compound verbs are made up of a preposition and a verb. In composition, the stem-vowel of the simple verb is often changed:

1. a (short) is changed before a single consonant into i or **e**; **a** before two consonants into **e** or **u**: as, **făcio, rĕfĭcio; cădo, occĭdo; grădior, rĕgrĕdior; scando, descendo; calco, inculco.** But **pĕrăgo** and others retain **a.**

2. **e** (short) before a single consonant becomes **i**: as, **tĕneo, rĕtĭneo.** But **rĕlĕgo** and others retain **e.**

3. **ae** is changed into **ī**: **au** into **ō** or **ū**, and in one case **ē**: as, **caedo, occīdo; quaero, requīro; plaudo, explōdo; claudo, exclūdo; audio, obēdio.**

9. Similar changes of vowel take place in other compounds: as, **ămīcus, ĭnĭmīcus; barba, imberbis.**

10. **Stems ending in a, o, u** regularly weaken these vowels into the more easy and euphonic **ĭ** before consonants in composition: as, **causĭdicus; signĭfer; cornĭger;** but the vowel is sometimes dropped: as in **manceps** (manu + cap-). Stems in i retain i or drop it: as, **ignĭvomus; naufragus** (nāvi-). **Consonant stems** either drop their consonants or add **i**: as, **lapĭcīda** (lapid-); **mātrĭcīda** (mātr-).

Note.—For the changes which prepositions undergo in composition, see page 151.

SYNTAX.

SENTENCES.

107. **A simple sentence** expresses a single thought, or tells a single fact, and contains one finite verb.

1. Every Simple Sentence is either (1) a **Statement**, (2) a **Question**, (3) a **Command** or **Request**, or (4) an **Exclamation**.

Note.—There are two forms in which each of these kinds of sentences may be found, the **Direct**, and the **Indirect** or **Dependent**; as, **Brutus killed Caesar**, and *he said that* **Brutus killed Caesar**; where the first example is a Direct Statement, and the same words in the second example an Indirect Statement. **Do you live in Rome?** and, He asked him, "**Do you live in Rome?**" are examples of a Direct Question; in He asked him **whether he lived in Rome**, we have an example of an Indirect Question.

2. A **Compound Sentence** is made by the union of two or more simple sentences.

3. The Clause containing the Principal Assertion is called the **Leading Clause**; clauses depending upon it, explaining or modifying it, are called **Subordinate**; clauses connected with it but not dependent upon it in their construction, are called **Co-ordinate.**

SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

108. Every sentence contains a **Subject** and a **Predicate**.

1. The **Subject** is the person or thing of whom, or of which, something is told; the **Predicate** is that which is told of the subject. Thus in the sentences, **rosa flōret**, *the rose blooms*, and **rosa pulchra est**, *the rose is beautiful*, **rosa** is the Subject, and **flōret** and **pulchra est** are the Predicates.

2. The Subject is expressed either (1) by a **Noun**, as **rosa**, (2) a **Pronoun**, as **ille**, in **ille currit**, *he runs*, or (3) some word, phrase, or clause **standing for a Noun**; or (4) it is implied in **the termination of the Verb**, as **curr-o**, *I run*; **curri-t**, *he runs*.

1. Words which may **stand for Nouns are** (1) **Adjectives**, as **omnia flō-**

rent, *all things bloom;* (2) **Adverbs, as satis temporis datur,** *enough time is given;* (3) **Infinitives, as nāvigāre dēlectat,** *sailing gives delight;* (4) **Terms cited as words or Phrases** merely, as "**ad arma**" **clāmātur,** "*to arms" is shouted;* and (5) **Substantive Clauses,** as **Quae sit nātūra lūcis ambigitur,** *what is the nature of light is disputed.*

2. A full and definite sentence may be expressed by a single word, if that word is a verb in the first or second person; as, **curris,** *thou runnest;* **currimus,** *we run.* The verb in the third person requires the aid of the context for fuller definition of its subject.

3. The **Predicate** is either a Verb, as **flōrent,** or a Noun or Adjective connected with the Subject by some form of the verb **esse,** *to be;* as, rosa **flōs est,** *the rose is a flower;* rosa **pulchra est.**

1. When the verb **sum** is thus used, it is called the **Cōpŭla,** or connecting link. It can make a Predicate by itself, when it implies absolute existence; as, **seges est ubi Troja fuit,** *(there) is corn where Troy* WAS.

2. The verb **sum** is also, or appears to be, more than a mere copula, (1) in the expression **est ut,** *it is possible that;* (2) when it has for complement (*a*) an **adverb,** as **sic est vīta hominum,** (*b*) a **preposition and case,** as **est apud Caesarem,** (*c*) a **Possessive Genitive,** a Case (Gen., Abl., or Loc.) of **Quality** or **Place,** or a **Dative** expressing that which a person or thing **occasions** or **serves as**: as, **bona sunt viri; summae facultātis est; opertō capite est; Caesar Dyrrachiī est; ea dēdecorī sunt.**

3. A predicate noun, adjective, or participle is often added to the subject without a copula: as, **fortis Jūlius,** *brave* is *Julius;* **fūsi hostes,** *the enemies* are *routed.*

4. A single interjection or exclamation may be equivalent to a sentence; thus the cry, *Oh!* may imply, *I am surprised, I am pleased, I am pained,* or still other meanings, according to the circumstances, and the context (in writing) or the tone of voice (in utterance). Other interjections may be limited to a single meaning.

5. The Subject and Predicate may each be **modified** by additional words or clauses.

6. A simple sentence is enlarged by the addition of the **Object** to the verb. The object is that to which the action of the verb extends; and is either **Direct,** as, Rōmulus **Remum** interfēcit, Romulus killed *Remus;* or **Indirect,** as, do **tibi** librum, I give *thee* a book.

Note.—The indirect may also be called the remoter object.

109. *SUBJECT.*

1. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative:

As, **equus currit**, *the horse runs.*

Note.—A verb is called *finite* in those forms which are *limited* by **mood** and **person,** as well as **tense.** Hence all the forms of the verb in any mood except the infinitive are finite.

2. A personal pronoun is generally omitted, being implied in the termination of the verb. If expressed, it is for the sake of emphasis or distinction:

As, **nātūrā tu illi pater es, consiliis ego,** *thou art his father by nature, I by counsel.*

3. The **subject of an infinitive** is in the **accusative.** (See § 238–240.)

Exc.—The nominative stands sometimes with a present infinitive, used in lively discourse instead of a present or imperfect indicative:

As, **pars cēdere, alii insequi,** *a part* was *retiring, others advancing.*

110. *SUBJECT-NOMINATIVE AND VERB.*

1. A verb agrees with its subject-nominative in number and person:

As, **nos, consules, dēsumus,** *we, the consuls, are wanting.*

2. *a.* If there are several subjects, the verb is generally in the plural:

As, **aetas, metus, magister prohibēbant,** *age, timidity,* and *a tutor forbade.*

b. But if several subjects represent one whole, or one combined notion, they may take a verb in the singular:

As, **Senātus populusque Rōmānus intellegit,** *the Senate and people of Rome understand;* **Gallos a Belgis Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit,** *the Marne and the Seine separate the Gauls from the Belgae;* **religio et fides antepōnātur amīcitiae,** *let religion and honor be preferred to friendship.*

1. If the subject nearest the predicate is singular, and of particular importance, the verb may agree with this subject alone.

2. When the preposition **cum** unites the subjects, the verb is sometimes plural: as, **ipse dux cum aliquot principibus capiuntur,** *the commander himself with some leading men are captured.* The singular gives greater

importance to its subject: as, **tū cum Sexto scīre velim quid cōgites**, I should like to know what *thou* and Sextus think.

3. If there are subjects of different persons, the verb is generally of the first person rather than of the second, and of the second rather than of the third:

As, **si tu et Tullia valētis, ego et Cicero valēmus**, *if you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well.*

Note.—In Latin the first person is put before the second or the third: as, **ego et tu et rex meus**; and the second person before the third person.

4. Collective nouns may take a plural verb:

As, **pars Rōmam inermes dēlāti sunt**, *a portion were brought unarmed to Rome.*

a. Such nouns are **pars, multitūdo, vulgus, turba, vis, juventus, nōbilitas, plebs**, and others. This construction is rare in Caesar, and not used by Cicero.

b. **Mille** generally takes a plural verb, but sometimes a singular.

5. Distributive words and phrases, as **quisque, uterque, pars, alius . . . alium, alter . . . alterum, vir . . . virum**, are found with plural predicates, but may be explained as appositive to plural subjects understood: as, **alius alii subsidium ferunt**, *they bring support one to another.*

a. The adverb **partim** is found with the plural in Cicero: as, **partim e nobis timidi sunt, partim a re pūblicā āversi**, *one part of us are cowards, the other estranged from the state.*

6. Subjects connected by disjunctives generally take a singular verb:

As, **si Aeacus aut Mīnōs dīceret.**

a. But sometimes the verb is plural: as, **si quid Sōcrates aut Aristippus fēcerint.**

7. With **aut . . . aut** the singular alone is used; **et . . . et** and **neque . . . neque** usually lead to a singular predicate, but sometimes to a plural.

8. The verb is sometimes omitted:

As, **di meliōra piis**, may *the gods* grant *better things to the pious;* **tum ille**, *then he* replied; **quid multa?** (understand, *dicam.*)

1. This omission is very frequent with the verb **sum**: as, **nam Polydōrus ego**, *for I* am *Polydōrus.*

111. *PREDICATE NOUN AND ADJECTIVE.*

1. With verbs signifying *to be, become, remain, appear, be made, be chosen, be thought, be called*, and the like, a noun or adjective in the predicate is in the same case as the subject:

As, **Ancus Martius rēx creātus est,** *Ancus Martius was made king;* **quaestor es factus,** *you have become quaestor;* **Cato esse quam vidēri bonus mālēbat,** *Cato preferred being good to seeming good;* **Numidae quiēti mansērunt,** *the Numidians remained quiet;* **Antōnius hostis jūdicātur,** *Antony is adjudged an enemy;* **ego, quae incēdo rēgīna deūm,** *I, who walk proudly the queen of the gods.*

2. The predicate **adjective** agrees with the subject in **gender** and **number** also.

3. The **verb** may agree in **number** with the **predicate** instead of the subject: as, **amantium īrae amōris integrātio est;** more rarely in the plural: as, **contentum suis rēbus esse maximae sunt dīvitiae.**

4. The predicate of an infinitive with a subject accusative is in the accusative: as, **aiunt vītam esse somnium,** *they say that life is a dream.*

5. The predicate of an ablative absolute is in the ablative: as, **Cȳro rēge creāto,** *when Cyrus had been chosen king;* **consulibus certiōribus factis,** *when the consuls had been informed.*

6. When a predicate noun or adjective is found with **esse** (or a similar verb) after the impersonal **licet** with a **dative,** it is generally in the dative, if the subject accusative is not expressed; but sometimes in the accusative; as, **licuit Themistoclī esse ōtiōso,** *it was left free for Themistocles to be at leisure;* **cīvi Rōmāno licet esse Gāditānum.**

112. *APPOSITION.*

1. A noun added to another noun or pronoun to describe it, and denoting the same person or thing, agrees with it in case:

As, **Cicero ōrātor interfectus est,** *Cicero the orator was slain;* **hic liber est Titi, frātris tui,** *this book belongs to Titus, thy brother.*

Note.—A noun so added is called an *appositive.*

Exc.—An appositive to a noun meaning *name* is often attracted to the **dative** of the person:

As, **Scipio, cui Africāno cognōmen fuit,** *Scipio, who had the surname of Africanus;* **Africāno** being attracted to **cui.**

2. Sometimes the appositive denotes not a general or permanent character of the noun with which it is in apposition, but one belonging to it at the time implied in the sentence: as, Cicero **praetor** legem Maniliam suasit, **consul** conjūrātiōnem Catilīnae oppressit, *Cicero as consul . . . as praetor,* etc., or *when he was consul, when he was praetor;* Cato **senex** scrībere historiam instituit, *Cato in his old age.*

3. A genitive may stand in apposition to the person implied in a possessive personal pronoun: as, **meā unīus operā,** *by my activity alone* (mea = *of me*); **vestra omnium caedes,** *the slaughter of you all.*

4. An appositive to two or more nouns is usually in the plural: as, **Gnaeus et Publius Scipiōnes, duo fulmina belli,** *Gnaeus and Publius Scipio, two thunderbolts of war.*

5. If the appositive has two genders, it usually takes the gender of the noun explained: as, **leo, rēx bestiārum,** *the lion, king of beasts;* **aquila, rēgīna avium,** *the eagle, king of birds;* **philosophia, magistra vītae,** *philosophy, the guide of life;* **Athēnae, omnium doctrīnārum inventrīcēs,** *Athens, the inventor of all sciences.*

6. Such words as **urbs, oppidum, caput,** *city, town, capital,* appositive to plural names of places, are always in the singular: as, **Athēnae, urbs Graeciae,** *Athens, a city of Greece.*

113. *AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.*

1. Adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles, agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case:

As, **amīco fīdo,** *to a faithful friend;* **haec sententia,** *this opinion;* **carmina dulcia,** *sweet songs;* **doctārum fēminārum,** *of learned women.*

Note.—An adjective is used **attributively** when it accompanies its noun immediately, as **psittacus loquax,** *the talkative parrot;* **predicatively,** when it is connected with its noun by a copulative verb, as **psittacus est loquax,** *the parrot is talkative.*

2. Adjectives agree, in like manner, with substantive pronouns, expressed or understood:

As, **O me miserum** (spoken by a man); **me miseram** (spoken by a woman); **invītus fēci,** sc. **ego.**

3. An adjective agreeing with two or more nouns is put in the plural. If the nouns are of different genders, the adjective is generally masculine if they denote living beings, and neuter if they denote things without life:

As, **pater mihi et māter mortui sunt,** *my father and mother are dead;* **labor voluptasque, dissimillimă nātūrā, societāte quādam inter se nātūrāli sunt juncta,** *labor and pleasure, things most unlike by nature,* etc.

Exc.—The adjective often agrees with the nearest noun, and is understood with the rest:

As, **Orgetorigis fīlia atque ūnus e fīliis captus est.**

Note 1.—If the nouns denote things without life, even when they are all masculine or feminine, the adjective is generally neuter: as, **īra et avāritia imperio potentiōra erant,** *things more potent than empire.*

Note 2.—When nouns denoting persons are combined with nouns denot-

ing objects without life, the adjective may take the gender of the persons or be in the neuter: as, **rēx rēgiaque classis profecti sunt,** *the king and the royal fleet set out;* **inimīca inter se sunt lībera cīvitas et rex,** *a free state and a king are things hostile to each other.*

4. An adjective referring to a phrase or clause must be neuter: as, **hūmānum est errāre,** *it is natural to man to err.*

5. The gender of an adjective is sometimes determined by the meaning rather than by the grammatical form of the noun: as, **capita conjūrātiōnis caesi sunt,** *the heads* (*i. e.*, the chief men) *of the conspiracy were put to death.*

6. An adjective added to the subject often has the force of an adverb: as, **invītus fēci,** *I did it unwillingly;* **insiste audax mūris,** *advance on the walls boldly;* **Aenēas se mātūtīnus agēbat,** *Aeneas was astir in the morning;* **domesticus ōtior,** *I lounge at home;* **memini, tametsi nullus moneas,** *I remember, without any suggestion from thee;* **Hannibal princeps in proelium ībat, ultimus conserto proelio excēdēbat,** *Hannibal used to be the first to go to battle, and after the engagement the last to quit the field.*

Note 1.—Where the English usually uses a relative pronoun, as *he was the first* (or *the last* or *the only one*) who *came,* the Latin more concisely says **prīmus (ultimus, sōlus) vēnit.**

Note 2.—The distinction between **prīmus** and the adverbs **prīmum** and **prīmo,** appears from the following examples: (1) **hanc prīmam ōrātiōnem lēgi,** *this is the first oration that I read;* (2) **hanc ōrātiōnem prīmum lēgi, deinde transcripsi,** *this oration I first read and then copied;* **hōdie hanc ōrātiōnem prīmum lēgi,** *to-day I read this oration for the first time;* (3) **hanc ōrātiōnem prīmo libenter lēgi, posteā magis magisque mihi jejūna vīsa est,** *this oration I read at first with pleasure; afterwards it seemed to me drier and drier.*

7. Adjectives are often used as if they were nouns: as, **boni et sapientes ex urbe pulsi sunt,** *the good and wise have been banished from the city;* **Caesar suos mīsit,** *Caesar sent his soldiers* (see § **117,** 5); **dextra,** *the right hand;* **hīberna,** *winter quarters.*

8. A neuter adjective is often found in the predicate, with the force of a noun, although the subject is masculine or feminine: as, **triste lupus stabulis,** *the wolf is a pest* (lit., a sad thing) *for the stalls.*

9. An adverb is sometimes used as an adjective: as, **ignāri ante malōrum,** *ignorant of former evils.*

10. The adjectives **prīmus, medius, ultĭmus, extrēmus, intĭmus, infĭmus, īmus, summus, suprēmus, relĭquus,** etc., sometimes denote the *first part, middle part, last part,* etc., of any place or time: as, **summus mons,** *the top of the mountain;* **media nox,** *the middle of the night.*

114. *RELATIVE PRONOUNS.*

1. Pronouns agree with their antecedents in gender, number, and person; but their case depends on the construction of the clause in which they stand:

As, **signum Jovis, quod Phīdias fēcit,** *the statue of Jupiter, which Phidias made;* **litterae quas dedi,** *the letter which I sent;* **Jāsōn nāvem aedificat, quae Argo nōmināta est; in eam ascendit;** *Jason builds a ship, which is called Argo; on it he embarks;* **nōn sum quālis eram,** *I am not such as I was;* **adsum qui fēci,** *I, who did it, am here.*

2. *a.* Usually the noun is expressed only in the antecedent clause, but sometimes also with the relative pronoun:

As, **erant omnīno duo itinera, quibus itineribus domo exīre possent,** *there were only two routes, by which routes they could leave home.*

b. Sometimes the noun is expressed only in the relative clause, especially when that clause precedes that of the antecedent:

As, **urbem quam statuo, vestrā est** (*as for* the city which I found, *it* is yours), *yours is the city that I found.*

c. The noun is sometimes omitted in the antecedent clause even when it has an adjective there agreeing with it: as, **quis non malārum quas amor cūras habet haec inter oblīviscitur?** (= malarum curarum quas amor habet.)

d. Sometimes no noun is expressed: as, **qui bene latuit, bene vixit,** (he) *who has well escaped notice, has lived well.*

3. The relative is sometimes attracted to the case of the antecedent: as, **cum aliquid agas eōrum quōrum consuesti,** for **quae.**

4. When relative or demonstrative pronouns refer to more than one noun, the gender and person are determined by the same rules as those of predicate adjectives (§ **113**, 3, 4, 5).

115. *PERSONAL AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.*

1. Pronouns and verbs of the First Person Plural are often used by a single person speaking of himself: as,

nōris nos, docti sumus, *you should know me, I am a man of learning* (lit., with a certain humor, "you should know us, we are a learned man").

2. The personal pronouns are used with **ad, apud, ab,** to signify *house, abode:* as, **vēni ad me,** *I came to my villa;* **Scaurum rūri apud se esse audio,** *I hear that Scaurus is at his country seat;* **quisnam e nōbis ēgreditur foras?** *who is coming out of our house?*

3. Pronouns of the First and Second Persons, expressed only in the ter-

mination of the verb, may have a noun in apposition: as, **Hannibal peto pācem**, *I, Hannibal, sue for peace;* **omnes boni nōbilitāti favēmus**, *all we conservatives regard noble birth with favor;* **sōli Tusculāni vēra arma invēnistis**, *only you men of Tusculum have discovered genuine warfare.*

4. Possessive pronouns are usually omitted when not required for clearness or emphasis: as, **patrem video**, *I see my father.*

5. The possessive pronouns are sometimes used in the sense of *fit* or *propitious:* as, **ventis itūrus non suis**, *about to sail with unpropitious winds.* This is simply an extension of their proper meaning.

116. *DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.*

1. **Hic** is called the demonstrative of the First Person, **iste** the demonstrative of the Second Person, and **ille** the demonstrative of the Third Person; **hic** referring to that which is near or connected with **the speaker** in time, place, or idea; **iste** having similar reference to the person or persons **addressed,** and **ille** to persons or things **more remote:**

As, **huic homini** (= *mihi*); **Chrysis vīcīna haec**, *my neighbor here, Chrysis;* **hoc studium**, *this pursuit of mine* (or *ours*)*:*

mūta istam mentem, *change that purpose of thine;* **ista subsellia**, *those benches in thy neighborhood:*

Q. Catŭlus non antīquo illo mōre, sed hoc nostro, fuit ērudītus, *Quintus Catŭlus was learned not in that ancient manner but in this of our day.*

2. **Ille** is sometimes used to denote fame or dignity:

As, **Mēdēa illa**, *the celebrated Mēdēa;* **venerāmini illum Jovem**, *adore that great Jupiter.*

3. **Ille** may mean *the other* of two named; or, in the plural, *the other side, the other party.*

4. *a.* When **hic** and **ille** refer to two things, **hic** designates either what is last mentioned (and thus the *nearest* in the discourse, *the latter*), or what is the nearer to the speaker's *mind;* **ille** either *the former*, or what is *farther* from the speaker's mind.

b. The two pronouns are also used for distribution: as, **hoc et illud**, *this and that.* So **ille aut ille, ille et ille**, *this and that man.*

5. **Iste** sometimes implies contempt; not from its intrinsic meaning, but from its use in courts of law to imply the

opposing party (**iste,** *that fellow whom you are defending*), or from the speaker's apparently repelling what he names from himself to some one else.

6. **Is** is an unemphatic demonstrative. It is used:

a. In reference to a noun before mentioned, as **maximum ornāmentum amīcitiae tollit qui ex eā tollit verēcundiam,** *he takes away the chief grace of friendship, who takes from it respectfulness.* Its oblique cases are often left to be understood.

b. It is a simple antecedent of a relative: as, **is qui hoc fēcit,** *he who did this.*

c. It means *one* (of a kind), *such*, especially before **qui** or **ut** with the subjunctive.

7. **Idem** may often be rendered *also*, or *at the same time:* as, **quidquid honestum, idem est ūtile,** *whatever is morally right is also expedient.* Sometimes it implies a contrast, *but yet.*

8. Demonstratives are sometimes used where in English idiom they would be redundant.

9. The adverb **quidem** is elegantly joined to personal and demonstrative pronouns, especially **ille**, where a concession is made, but immediately qualified by an adversative clause (*certainly . . . but*): as, **tuus dolor hūmānus is quidem, sed tamen magnopere moderandus,** *yours is a grief natural to man, I admit, but one which should be very much repressed.*

10. Demonstratives and relatives are sometimes used concisely in a **suggestive** sense, in agreement with a noun, instead of adding what is suggested in the genitive case or some similar construction: as, **haec pulchritūdo,** *this beauty,* meaning *the beauty of these things around us;* **hic metus,** *the alarm thus occasioned;* **haec similitūdo,** *something like this;* **haec dēfensio** = *hujus rei dēfensio.*

117. *REFLEXIVES.*

1. **Se** and **suus** generally refer to a **subject nominative** of the third person in their own clause:

As, **fur tēlo se dēfendit,** *the thief defends himself with a weapon;* **sentit animus se vi suā movēri,** *the soul feels that it is moved by its own force.*

Note.—Quisque is a frequent subject of **se, suus.**

2. **Se** and **suus** may be referred to an **object** (which usually precedes):

As, **Caesarem sua nātūra mītiōrem facit,** *Caesar's own character makes him milder.*

3. **Se** and **suus** may be referred to an **indefinite** subject or object **aliquem** or **alicui**:

As, **habenda ratio non sua sōlum, sed etiam aliorum,** *one must take account not of himself alone, but also of others;* **bellum est sua vitia nōsse,** *it is a fine thing to know one's own faults.*

4. Where **se** and **suus** would be out of place, the cases of **is,** and sometimes of **ipse,** are used:

As, **Chīlius te rogat, et ego ejus rogātu,** *Chilius asks thee, and I at his request;* **aranti Quinctio nuntiātum est eum dictātōrem esse factum,** *news came to Quinctius while plowing that he was appointed dictator.*

5. **Sui,** the masculine plural possessive pronoun, is used idiomatically in the sense of *his, her,* or *their* **friends, family, soldiers,** etc.

118. *THE DEFINITIVE IPSE.*

1. **Ipse** may be appositive either to the subject or object, according as the one or the other is emphatic:

As, **me ipse consōlor** and **me ipsum consōlor,** where (though each is translated in English, *I comfort myself*) **ipse** with the subject means, *I* (rather than another); with the object, I comfort *myself* (rather than any body else).

2. **Ipse** is also used (1) to imply *of one's own accord,* as **ipsae lacte domum referent distenta capellae ūbera,** *the she-goats of their own accord will bring home their milk-swollen udders;* (2) to define time exactly, as **decem ipsos dies,** *exactly ten days;* **nunc ipsum,** *at this very moment;* (3) to express the chief person, as **Pȳthagorēi respondēre solēbant, Ipse dixit,** *the Pythagorēans used to reply, He himself said so* (i. e., *Pythagoras*). Hence slaves used to call their master and mistress, **ipse, ipsa**; and Catullus uses **ipsa** for **era.**

119. *INDEFINITE PRONOUNS, ETC.*

1. The **Indefinite** Pronouns **quis, quī,** cannot begin a sentence. They usually follow some particle (**si, nisi, nē, an, num, ut,** etc.), or a relative; but are sometimes used without a particle, as **dixerit quis,** *some one may say.*

2. **Nescio quis, nescio qui,** are used as indefinite pronouns in the sense of *some* (person or thing) *or other.* Compare the French, *je ne sais quoi.* **So nescio quo, nescio quando.**

3. **Aliquis, aliqui,** *some,* are somewhat less indefinite than **quis, qui.**

4. Occasionally **aliquis** means *a person of importance,* as **sēsē aliquem crēdens,** *considering himself* **somebody.**

5. **Quispiam** is used with more emphasis than **quis,** and rather less than **aliquis. Quispiam** is found chiefly in positive sentences; **quisquam** chiefly in negative and dubitative sentences; **nonnullus** only in a positive, **ullus** only in a negative or dubitative construction.

6. **Quīdam,** a certain one, implies that the subject is definitely known, though indefinitely described; thus: **quōdam tempore nātus sum, aliquo moriar,** *I was born at a certain time, I shall die some time or other.* It is joined with epithets: as, **spīnōsa quaedam et exīlis ōrātio,** *a certain prickly and lean style.* It occasionally means *some* as opposed to *the whole* or *others:* as, **nullis piscibus supra quaternas pinnae sunt, quibusdam bīnae, aliquibus nullae,** *no fishes have more than four fins, some two, a few none at all.* Hence it qualifies an expression not meant to be taken strictly: as, **in ideis Plato quiddam dīvīnum esse dīcēbat,** *Plato used to say that in ideas there is something divine.*

Quīdam also stands in contrast to **quīvis, quīlibet,** *any you will:* as, **ut saltātōri mōtus non quīvis sed certus quīdam est datus, sic vīta agenda est certo genere quōdam non quōlibet,** *as to a dancer is assigned not any optional movement, but a certain definite one, so must life be passed in a certain definite way, not in any we please.*

7. **Quisque** means *each* of any number. (It occurs in Plautus in the sense of **quisquis,** *whosoever.*)

8. The **Universal Relatives,** whether compounded with **-cumque,** or of the **duplicated** form, have no special idioms distinguishing them from other relatives.

9. **Pronominal Adjectives.**—*a.* **Alter** is *one of two:* as, **claudus fuit altero pede,** *he was lame of one foot.* It answers the question **uter,** *which of two?*

b. Two cases of **alter** (as of **alius**) may stand in the same clause, distributing **ambo, uterque,** etc.: as, **uterque hōrum medium quiddam volēbat sequi; sed ita cadēbat ut alter ex alterius laude partem, uterque autem suam tōtam habēret:** *both these men wished to attain a mean; but it so fell out that one had a share of the other's credit, while each possessed his own entire.* **Uterque** means *each* of two; **alterŭter,** *one or the other* of two.

Alter alterum amat, *they love one another;* (also expressed by, **amant se invicem; mūtuo amant; amant inter se.**)

Alteri . . . alteri, *one party, . . . the other party.*

c. **Alter** sometimes means *a second,* another besides one named or implied: **alter erit tum Tīphys,** *then will there be a second Tiphys;* **alterum tantum,** *as much again.*

d. **Alius** repeated in successive clauses means *one, another, another,* and so on, without limit of number. In like manner the adverbs of **alius,**

aliter, alias, alibi, alio, etc.: as, **alias contentius, alias remissius,** *at one time more vigorously, at another more slackly.*

e. Repeated in the same clause, or joined with one of its adverbs, **alius** may be translated by the word *different,* or more commonly, by two separate clauses, rendered in the first by *one . . . one,* and in the second by *another . . . another:* as, **aliud aliis vidētur optimum,** *one thing seems best to one, another to another;* **aliis aliunde perīculum est,** *danger threatens different persons from different sources.*

THE CASES.

120. *NOMINATIVE AND VOCATIVE.*

1. The nominative is used as the subject of a finite verb (§ 109), as an appositive (§ 112), or in the predicate after verbs signifying *to be, to be called,* etc. (§ 111.)

2. The vocative, with or without an interjection, is used in addressing a person or thing:

As, **vincere scis, Hannibal, adeste, āmīci! O dii boni! heu virgo! ah stulte!**

3. The nominative may stand with the interjections **en, ecce, O,** and others:

As, **ecce nuntii, ecce litterae, Caesarem ad Corfīnium,** *lo couriers and letters* stating that *Caesar is at Corfinium;* **O vir fortis atque amīcus!**

4. In the poets, and in antiquated style, the nominative is sometimes found for the vocative:

As, **almae fīlius Maiae!**

Thus often, when the noun is collective, or when the word is an attributive or an appositive:

As, **audi tu, pŏpŭlus Albānus; nūdus jacitūre sepulcro.**

5. In prose the vocative is usually placed after some other words in the proposition: as, **crēdo ego vos, jūdices, mīrāri.** But it may be prefixed with a kind of solemn dignity, or in vehement expressions of feeling.

ACCUSATIVE.

121. *ACCUSATIVE OF DIRECT OBJECT.*

1. The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative:

As, **māter alit pullos**, *the mother nourishes her young;* **in prīmis venerāre Deum**, *in the first place worship God;* **pudet me** (lit. it shames me), *I am ashamed.*

Rem.—The object of a transitive verb in the active voice becomes the subject of the verb in the passive voice: as, **pulli a matre aluntur**, *the young are nourished by the mother.*

Note 1.—**Impersonal verbs** governing the accusative are referred to this rule.

Note 2.—An infinitive or a clause may be the subject of a verb.

Note 3.—After verbs denoting the operations of the senses or intellectual powers, and some verbs of causing and effecting, the subject of the governed clause is sometimes (especially in the older writers) attracted as object to the governing verb: as, **nōsti Marcellum, quam tardus sit**, *you know Marcellus, how slow he is*, instead of **nosti quam tardus sit Marcellus.** Compare, *I know thee, who thou art.* This idiom is used sometimes where it cannot be imitated in English: as, **quis tuum patrem . . . qui esset audīvit**, *who heard who your father was.*

2. Some verbs are sometimes used as transitives in Latin, though translated in English by intransitives followed by a preposition. Such are

a. Many intransitive verbs denoting a feeling or state of the mind: as, **honōrēs dēspērant**, *they despair of honors;* **cāsum hunc doleo**, *I grieve for this misfortune.*

b. Verbs signifying to *have the smell of, have the taste of, to thirst for, breathe out, sound like,* etc.: as, **olet vīnum**, *he smells of wine;* **anhēlat scelus**, *he breathes out crime;* **vox hominem sonat**, *her voice sounds like a man.*

c. The poets go very far in giving intransitive verbs a transitive signification. (See § **124**.)

d. The passive of such verbs is used more rarely; but we find **rīdeor**, *I am laughed at;* **triumphātae gentis**; **nox vigilāta**; **regnāta rūra.**

3. In the comic poets, an accusative is sometimes found with verbal nouns: as, **istum tactio**; **hanc cūrātio rem.**

4. The participial in **-bundus** sometimes takes an accusative: as, **populābundus agros.**

5. The verb is sometimes omitted, in phrases in which it is easily supplied: as, **unde mihi lapidem?** *where* shall *I* get *a stone?*

122. *COMPOUNDS BECOMING TRANSITIVE.*

Intransitive verbs of motion sometimes become transitive when compounded with a preposition.

As, **hostes circumīre**; **transīre flūmen**; **occumbere mortem.**

a. So some verbs of position: as, **equites circumstant senātum.**

Note 1.—Most of these verbs can be used in the passive: as, **angustias Thĕmistŏclēs quaerēbat, nē multitūdine circumīrētur.**

Note 2.—Compounds with **trans, circum,** and **ad** can take two accusatives, if the simple verb is transitive: as, **transjicere exercitum flūmen.**

Note 3.—The preposition may be repeated: as, **trans Rhodănum cōpias trajēcit.**

Note 4.—When such compounds take on a new meaning, differing from the simple meaning of the verb, they are generally construed without a preposition: as, **inīre in urbem,** *to go into the city;* **inīre proelium,** *to begin a battle;* **adīre ad aliquem,** *to go to;* **adīre aliquem,** *to consult.*

123. *COGNATE ACCUSATIVE.*

An intransitive verb often takes an accusative of **kindred meaning.** This accusative repeats the idea already contained in the verb, and is usually modified by an adjective or pronoun:

As, **vītam jūcundam vīvere,** *to live a delightful life;* **hoc bellum bellāre,** *to wage this war;* **mīrum somniāre somnium,** *to dream a wonderful dream.*

124. *LIMITING OR DEFINING ACCUSATIVE.*

Intransitive verbs sometimes take an accusative limiting their meaning, especially in the poets:

As, **corōnāri Olympia,** *to be crowned as an Olympic victor;* **saltāre Cyclōpa,** *to dance the Cyclops.*

Note 1.—To this rule may be referred the use of the accusative of neuter adjectives and pronouns after intransitives: as, **dulce rīdēre** (= dulcem rīsum rīdēre), *to smile sweetly;* **torvum clāmāre; acerba tuēri,** *to look bitter things;* **aeternum vīvere; hoc studet ūnum,** *he makes this one thing his aim;* **id laetor,** *I am pleased at this;* **idem glōriātur,** *he makes the same boast.* This is the **accusative of the inner object.**

Note 2.—A limiting accusative of a pronoun may be added to a transitive verb with an accusative of the person: as, **hoc te hortor,** *I give thee this exhortation.*

125. *ACCUSATIVE AFTER PASSIVES USED REFLEXIVELY.*

The passive of some verbs in the poets and later prose writers is used like the Greek middle to describe an action done by the agent **to or for himself,** and takes an accusative:

As, **Priamus ferrum cingitur,** *Priam girds on his blade;* **Androgei**

galeam induitur, *he dons the helmet of Androgĕos;* **virgĭnes longam indūtae vestem.**

Note.—In classical prose we have the ablative, **cingitur ferro; indūtus veste albā.**

TWO ACCUSATIVES.

126. Verbs meaning *to name, call, make, choose, think, take,* and some others, may take two accusatives, one of the object, the other of the predicate:

As, **urbem Rōmam vocāvit,** *he called the city Rome;* **Sōcratēs tōtīus mundi se cīvem arbitrābātur,** *Socrates was wont to think himself a citizen of the whole world;* **jūdicem populum Rōmānum cēpēre,** *they took the Roman people as their judge;* **grātum me praebeo,** *I show myself grateful.*

127. Doceo, *I teach,* and its compounds, **cēlo,** *I conceal,* and some verbs of *asking* and *demanding,* govern two accusatives, one of the person and the other of the thing:

As, **te litteras doceo,** *I teach thee literature;* **iter omnes cēlat,** *he conceals his journey from all.*

1. Instead of the accusative, we often find the ablative of the thing with **de.**

2. **Peto** and **postulo** take always the ablative of the person with **ab,** and **quaero** takes the ablative of the person with **ab, de,** or **ex.**

3. While the art taught is put in the accusative, the **instrument** is put in the ablative: as, **aliquem fidibus docēre; docendum equo armisque. Doctus** generally takes the ablative.

4. Verbs that in the active voice take two accusatives, in the passive retain one, while the other becomes the subject.

128. *ACCUSATIVE OF SPECIFICATION AND ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVE.*

1. The accusative of **specification** may be joined with a verb or adjective to denote *that in respect to which* the expression is used:

As, **tremit artus,** *he trembles in his limbs;* **ōs humerosque deo similis,** *in face and shoulders like a god;* **cētera ēgregius,** *excellent in other respects;* **caput nectentur,** *their heads shall be bound.*

Note.—This is often called the Greek accusative, or the accusative by synecdŏche. It denotes particularly *the part affected.*

2. The accusative in certain expressions is used adverbially:

As, **maximam partem,** *for the most part;* **meam vicem,** *on my account;* **quod si,** *but if* (lit. as to which, if).

The accusative in these expressions is often an *accusative of extent.*

3. In a few phrases, the adverbial accusative stands where we might expect the genitive or ablative: as, **id temporis** (eo tempore), *at that time;* **id genus alia,** *other things of that kind.*

4. In the comic poets, and more rarely in other writers, a sentence sometimes begins with an accusative antecedent to a following relative in the same case.

129. *ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT OF TIME OR SPACE.*

1. The accusative is used to denote **extent of time or space:**

As, **decem annos urbs oppugnāta est,** *the city was besieged for ten years;* **fossa duos pedes lāta,** *a ditch two feet broad.*

2. **Time throughout which** may be denoted by **per** with the **accusative.**

3. Duration of time is sometimes expressed by the **ablative**; but rarely in the best writers. This is a free use of time *in which* for time *throughout which.* (See § **185, 10.**)

4. A specified distance may stand either in the **accusative of extent,** or the **ablative of measure.** If **spatium** or **intervallum** be used, they are in the ablative, and govern a defining genitive.

5. When the place from which the distance is reckoned is not mentioned, **ab** often stands before the words stating the distance: as, **a millibus passuum duōbus,** *two miles off.*

130. *TERMINAL ACCUSATIVE.*

1. After verbs implying motion, the names of *towns* and *small islands* are put in the accusative without a preposition, to denote the **place whither.**

As, **Athēnas profectus est,** *he set out for Athens;* **missi sunt Delphos,** *they were sent to Delphi.*

2. Names of countries and large islands generally take a preposition; but the preposition is sometimes omitted, especially in poetry.

3. **Domus** and **rus** are put in the accusative after verbs of motion, like names of towns:

As, **rus ībo,** *I shall go to the country;* **rediit domum,** *he returned home;* cohortes Latīnae Hernicaeque remissae (sunt) **domos,** *to their homes.*

131. ACCUSATIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS.

1. Twenty-eight Prepositions govern the accusative.

These are **ad**, **adversus** or **adversum**, **ante**, **apud**, **circā**, **circum**, **circĭter**, **cis** or **citrā**, **contrā**, **ergā**, **extrā**, **infrā**, **inter**, **intrā**, **juxtā**, **ob**, **penes**, **per**, **pōne**, **post**, **praeter**, **prope**, **propter**, **secundum**, **suprā**, **trans**, **ultrā**, and **versus**.

2. The comparative **propius** and superlative **proxime** also take an accusative: as, **propius urbem**, *nearer the city*.

3. **In** and **sub** are followed by the accusative when they denote **motion to** a place; denoting **situation**, they are followed by the ablative:

As, **īre in urbem**, *to go into the city;* **in urbe esse**, *to be in the city;* **sub scālas se conjēcit**, *he threw himself under the stairs;* **sub mensā jacet**, *he lies under the table.*

Note.—**In** with the accusative may mean *for*, *about*, *against*, etc.

4. **Super** and **subter** generally govern the accusative, but sometimes take the ablative in poetry; when **super** means *concerning*, it takes the ablative in prose.

5. **Versus** or **versum** always **follows** its case: as, **Rōmam versus contendit**, *he marched towards Rome.* The best writers subjoin it to a case governed by **ad** or **in**. Postpositive also sometimes are **propter**, **contra**, **ante**, **circa**, **circum**, **inter**, **juxta**, **penes**, **subter**, **super**, **supra**, and **per**, especially after personal and relative pronouns, and in the poets. See Verg. Aen. 4, 671.

132. ACCUSATIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS.

The accusative is used in exclamations, either with or without an interjection:

As, **me miserum!** or, **O me miserum!** *wretched me!*

The accusative is used as it would have been if some verb of emotion or declaration had preceded.

GENITIVE.

133. ADNOMINAL GENITIVE.

A noun that limits the meaning of another noun, denoting a different thing, is put in the Genitive.

Genitive of Possession.

1. The noun in the genitive may denote the *possessor*, the *author*, or the *source:*

As, **Caesaris horti**, *Caesar's gardens;* **Cicerōnis ōrātio**, *an oration of Cicero;* **labor discendi**, *the toil of learning.*

Note 1.—The noun limited is sometimes omitted: as, **ventum erat ad Vestae**, sc. **templum**; *we had come to* the temple *of Vesta* (compare, *he went to St. Paul's*); **hujus video Burriam**, *I see this man's* slave, *Burria;* **Verania Pīsōnis**, *Piso's* wife, *Verania.*

Note 2.—*a.* The possessive adjective pronouns are used to denote the possessor, instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns: as, **domus mea**, *my house.*

b. The genitive of pronouns or participles may be added to such possessive pronouns, agreeing with the genitive which they imply: as, **meā ūnīus operā**, *by my single exertion;* **nostros vīdisti flentis ocellos**, *you saw the eyes of me weeping.*

c. In connection with **omnium**, the genitives **nostrum** and **vestrum** are used: as, **commūnis omnium nostrum parens**, *the common parent of us all.* But **nostrum** and **vestrum** are ordinarily used after partitives.

Note 3.—**Aliēnus** is often used instead of the genitive of **alius**, and other possessive adjectives instead of the genitive of the nouns from which they are derived: as, **aliēnus puer**, *the child of another;* **Hectoreum caput**, *Hector's head;* **erīlis fīlius**, *the master's son.* See also § **116**, 10.

Subjective Genitive.

2. The noun in the genitive may denote the **subject** of the action or feeling denoted by the governing noun: as, **amor parentum**, *parents' love*, meaning the love *which parents feel* for their children.

Objective Genitive.

3. The noun in the genitive may denote the **object** of the action or feeling denoted by the governing noun: as, **amor parentum**, *the love of parents*, meaning the love which children feel *for their parents.*

Note 1.—The objective genitive is often translated by other prepositions than *of:* as, **fuga perīculi**, *flight from danger;* **contentio honōrum**, *the struggle for office;* **Boiōrum triumphus**, *a triumph over the Boii;* **fīdūcia vīrium**, *confidence in strength.*

Note 2.—Both genitives may limit the same noun: as, **Agamemnonis glōria belli**, *Agamemnon's* (subject) glory *in war* (object).

Note 3.—The possessive adjective pronouns, though generally subjective, may be used objectively or passively: as, **neglegentia tua**, *disregard for you;* **ōdium tuum**, *hatred for you.*

Genitive after Partitives.

4. Words denoting a *part* are followed by a genitive denoting *the whole:*

As, **juvenum princeps**, *foremost of the youth.*

Note 1.—Words denoting a part are called **partitives**. They are,

a. Nouns which express partition: as, **pars, numerus, nēmo, nihil;**

b. Some adverbs of quantity, measure, place, or time: as, **partim, parum, satis, affatim, nimis, abunde; eo, huc, adhuc, quo, quoad; hic, huc, nusquam, ibi, ubi; interea;**

c. Pronouns and pronominals, as **hic, ille, is; qui, quis**, and their compounds; **tot, quot**, and their derivatives; **alius, alter, uter**, and its compounds, **ullus, nullus, plērīque, multi, pauci, reliqui, cēteri, sōlus;**

d. Cardinal and ordinal numerals; also **princeps** and **medius;**

e. Neuter adjectives and pronouns used as nouns;

f. Adjectives in the comparative and superlative; as, **major Nerōnum**, *the elder of the Neros;* **avium loquāciōres**, *the noisier sort of birds;* **maximus frātrum**, *the elder of the brothers;*

g. Adverbs in the superlative;

h. Any noun or adjective which can imply distribution: as, **piscium fēminae; lecti juvenum.**

Note 2.—The genitive of the **thing measured** or **counted** is used after words of **measure** or **quantity**: as, **vīni tres amphorae; tria millia equitum; magna vis argenti.**

Note 3.—The genitive of the whole is sometimes the predicate: as, **fīes nōbilium tu quoque fontium**, *thou also shalt become* one *of the fountains of fame.* An object partitive, also, is sometimes omitted.

Note 4.—After numerals, where **all** are embraced, the genitive is not used in Latin: as, **nos duo sumus**, *there are two of us;* **cognāti quos paucos habeo**, *kinsmen of whom I have few.* In such cases *of* is generally used in English; but compare "we are seven."

Note 5.—Instead of the genitive, the prepositions **ex, de, in**, or **inter** are sometimes used: as, **melior ex duōbus; aliquis de hērēdibus; sapientissimus in septem. Unus** is generally construed with **ex** or **de** and the ablative.

Note 6.—The genitive of the whole after neuter adjectives or pronouns or **nihil**, is often an adjective of the second declension, standing as a noun: as, **aliquid pulchri; nihil boni.** Adjectives of the third declension are

not used in this way (unless rarely in connection with adjectives of the second), many of them having the same form in the genitive as in the nominative masculine and feminine.

Note 7.—The poets and later prose-writers use frequently the neuter plural of adjectives and participles with a defining genitive: as, **strāta viārum** = strātae viae.

Genitive of Definition.

5. The **genitive of definition** generally corresponds to an appositive in English:

As, **Būthrōti urbs,** *the city of Buthrōtum;* **virtus justitiae,** *the virtue of justice;* **arbor fīci,** *the fig-tree;* **sprētae injūria formae,** *the injury of slighting her beauty.*

Genitive of Material.

6. The genitive may denote the **substance** or **material**: as, **flūmina lactis,** *rivers of milk.* But seeming cases of this kind may often be referred to other rules. The material is more frequently denoted by an adjective, or by an **ablative** (generally with **ex**) after a verb or participle.

Genitive after Prepositional Nouns, etc.

7. The nouns **causā** and **gratiā,** *for the sake of,* also **ergō** (in old writers) *on account of,* and **instar,** *as large as, like,* old nouns used like prepositions or adverbially, govern the genitive: as, **hominum causā,** *for the sake of mankind;* **virtūtis ergō,** *on account of manliness;* **Plato sōlus instar omnium est,** *Plato alone is equal to them all;* **instar montis equus,** *a horse like a mountain.*

1. **Prīdiē,** *the day before;* **postrīdiē,** *the day after;* **tenus** (with the plural), *as far as,* and **clam,** *without the knowledge of,* may govern the genitive.

134. *GENITIVE OF QUALITY OR DESCRIPTION.*

Nouns indicating a quality, or describing the limited noun, are put in the genitive, with an adjective agreeing with them:

As, **juvenis mītis ingenii,** *a youth of mild disposition;* **puer sēdecim annōrum,** *a boy of sixteen;* **non multi cibi hospitem accipies, sed multi joci,** *you will receive a guest who is not a great eater but a great joker.*

Note 1.—The descriptive noun and adjective are more frequently in the ablative. The genitive seems to be preferred to describe the *general* nature and kind of the subject, or *permanent* qualities; the ablative to denote *particular* or *transient* qualities and circumstances: **sēcūri animi es,** you are free from anxiety *always;* **bono animo sum,** I am of good cheer *in the present*

circumstances. But there are many exceptions to this rule. The requisites for a thing, and all ideas of measure are expressed by the genitive: as, **res magni labōris; fossa centum pedum;** parts of the body by the ablative: as, **quā facie fuit? magno capite, ōre rubicundo.**

Note 2.—**Ejus modi, cujus modi,** and the like, are genitives of quality, in meaning equivalent to **tāles, quāles.**

135. *GENITIVE AS A PREDICATE.*

The genitive in the **predicate** after **sum** denotes *property, characteristic, part, lot, office,* or *duty:*

As, **omnia hostium erant,** *all things belonged to the enemy;* **cujusvis hominis est errāre,** *it is the lot of every man to err;* **hoc est praeceptōris,** *this is the business of the teacher;* **mōris est Graecōrum,** *it belongs to the custom of the Greeks* (or simply, *it is the custom,* etc.); **stultitiae est,** *it is a mark of folly.*

1. The genitive of property or possession may be used in the predicate with **fīo**: as, **omnia quae mulieris fuērunt, viri fīunt, dōtis nōmine.**

2. The genitives **lucri, compendi,** and **diciōnis** are found in the predicate after **facio** or **fīo.**

136. *OBJECTIVE GENITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.*

Adjectives are followed by a genitive denoting the **object** to which the quality they express is directed.

1. Adjectives in **ax** formed from transitive verbs; and **present participles used adjectively,** govern the genitive: as, **tenax prōpositi,** *tenacious of purpose;* **vēritātis dīligens,** *fond of the truth;* **amantior domini.**

2. Adjectives govern the genitive which signify **desire, knowledge, care, memory, mastery, participation, fulness, guilt,** and their **contraries**: as, **avidus glōriae,** *eager for glory;* **belli perītus,** *skilled in war;* **ignāra mali,** *unacquainted with evil;* **prōvida ūtilitātum,** *providing for advantages;* **memor virtūtis,** *mindful of virtue;* **impotens sui,** *without self-control;* **ratiōnis particeps,** *sharing in reason;* **plēnus rīmārum,** *full of chinks;* **inops hūmānitātis,** *destitute of culture;* **rei capitālis reus,** *guilty of a capital crime.*

3. Many of these adjectives are found sometimes in a different construction; as with the **ablative,** with or without a preposition; with the **accusative,** especially with **ad** or **in**; with the **dative**; and with an **infinitive** or **subjunctive** clause: as, **rudis in jūre cīvīli; arte rudis; ad rem avidior; potens in res bellicas; cuncta pollens; facinori mens conscia; certus īre; memor quam sis aevi brevis.**

4. The genitive after an adjective or participle sometimes denotes a **cause** or **source**, especially in the poets: as, **fessus viae**, *weary of the way;* **nōtus in frātres animi paterni**, *well-known for his father-like affection for his brothers.*

5. The genitive of **the respect in which** is used freely by the poets: as, **integer vītae scelerisque pūrus**, *upright in life and free of crime.*

6. The genitive **animi** as the *seat of feeling*, after adjectives and verbs, is strictly **locative**: as, **aeger animi**, *sick at heart.*

7. The genitive can sometimes be explained by the adjective's standing for a noun. For the genitive after **similis, dissimilis**, etc., see § **162, 4**.

137. *GENITIVE AFTER VERBS.*

1. **Memini** and **reminiscor**, *I remember*, and **oblīviscor**, *I forget*, take an objective genitive:

As, **vīvōrum memini, nec tamen Epicūri licet oblīvisci**, *I remember the living, and yet I am not allowed to forget Epicūrus.*

2. **Recordor**, *I bethink myself of*, takes the genitive rarely in the best writers, more frequently in later Latin. It is generally found with the accusative, sometimes with the ablative (of persons) with **de**.

Exc.—Verbs of remembering and forgetting often take an accusative, when they denote to *have* a thing in the memory, or the reverse: as, **Antipatrum Sīdŏnium tu probē meministi**, *you remember well Antipater of Sidon.*

Note.—The phrase **venit mihi in mentem** may be construed impersonally with a genitive: as, **venit mihi in mentem Platōnis**, *Plato occurs to me.* It is also used personally.

138. Misereor and **miseresco**, *I pity*, take an objective genitive: as, **miserēre sorōris**, *pity thy sister.*

139. *ACCUSATIVE AND GENITIVE.*

1. Verbs of *reminding* take an **accusative of the person** and **a genitive of the thing**:

As, **Catilīna admonēbat alium egestātis alium cupiditātis suae**, *Catiline kept putting one in mind of his poverty, another of his desire.*

Note.—Instead of the genitive of the thing, **admoneo** may take the accusative of a pronoun or neuter adjective, or the ablative with **de**.

2. **Misĕret, paenĭtet, piget, pudet, taedet**, and **pertaesum est** take an **accusative of the person** who feels and a **genitive of the cause or respect**:

As, **me stultitiae meae pudet**, *I am ashamed of my folly.*

140. Verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, and *acquitting*, take an **accusative of the person** and a **genitive of the crime**:

As, **accūsāre aliquem furti,** *to charge one with theft;* **majestātis absolvuntur,** *they get acquitted of treason;* **damnāri repetundārum,** *to be condemned of extortion.*

1. The crime is sometimes in the ablative with **de**; or **crimine, nomine,** or **judicio,** with the genitive may be used.

2. With **damno** and **condemno**, the **punishment** is put in the **genitive** or **ablative**:

As, **damnāri capitis** or **capite.**

For a **definite** penalty, if money or land, the **ablative** is always used:

As, **damnāri decem millibus; damnāri tertiā parte agri;** and so always with the verb **multo.**

Note.—Damnāri ad bestias means *to be condemned to be thrown to the wild beasts;* **in metalla,** *to the mines;* **vōti damnāri,** *to be bound to fulfil a vow;* hence **vōti damnātus** or **vōti reus** means *successful.*

141. Impleo, repleo, and **compleo,** and sometimes in the poets **expleo,** verbs signifying *to fill*, may take in addition to the accusative a **genitive,** though more commonly an **ablative.**

142. *GENITIVE AFTER REFERT AND INTEREST.*

1. **Rēfert** and **interest** may take the genitive of the **person** to whom anything is of interest or importance:

As, **intererat Clōdii Milōnem perīre,** *it was important for Clodius that Milo should die.*

2. Instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns, the possessives **meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā,** are used.

3. The **thing** of interest or importance may be expressed by a neuter pronoun, but is usually denoted by an **accusative** with an **infinitive**, or by **ut** or the **interrogative particles** with a **subjunctive**:

As, **hoc meā interest; multum meā interest te esse dīligentem,** or **ut dīligens sis,** or **(utrum) dīligens sis necne.**

4. The **accusative with ad** is used to denote the **end for which** the matter is important: as, **magni ad honōrem nostrum interest, quam prīmum ad urbem me venīre,** *it is of great importance for my honor that I should come to the city as soon as possible.*

143. *SPECIAL USES OF THE GENITIVE.*

Egeo sometimes, and **indigeo** frequently, take the genitive; but verbs of *wanting* commonly take the ablative.

Note.—Both the genitive and ablative after such verbs are cases of specification of the respect in which.

144. Sătăgo (sat ago) takes a genitive defining the indeclinable adjective **sat.**

145. Poets, and later prose writers, sometimes use a genitive of *definition* or *respect* after many verbs regularly construed with other cases:

As, **regnāvit populōrum**; **sēpositi ciceris invīdit**; **dēcipitur labōrum.**

1. The poetical genitive sometimes denotes cause: as, **sunt lacrimae rērum,** *there are tears for human fortune;* **justitiae aliquem mīrāri,** *to admire one for his justice;* **fēlīcem cerebri,** *happy in your hot temper.*

2. The genitive after verbs of **separation** is similar to the genitive in Greek: as, **abstinēto īrārum**; **dēsine querēlārum.**

3. **Potior,** both in the sense of *to make oneself master of* and *to be master of,* is often found with the genitive. Plautus sometimes uses **potior** with the genitive in the sense of *fall into the hands of.*

146. *GENITIVE OF VALUE.*

Sum and **verbs of valuing** take the genitive of the degree of estimation:

As, **dīvitias minōris aestimāre dēbēmus quam virtūtem,** *we ought to set a lower value on riches than on virtue;* **parvi sunt foris arma**; **ager nunc plūris est quam tunc fuit**; **tanti est,** *it is worth while.*

1.—*a.* Such genitives are **magni, plūris, plūrimi, maximi, parvi, minōris, minimi, tanti, quanti, nihili.** So also **flocci, nauci, pensi, pili, assis, terunci, hujus**: as, **non hujus facio,** *I don't care* THAT *for it.*

b. Such verbs are **puto, dūco, aestimo, existimo, pendo, facio, fīo, habeo, taxo**; and **sum,** in the sense of *being of a value.*

c. **Aestimo** may take either the genitive or ablative.

2. The genitives **boni, aequi boni, aequi bonīque,** with **facio,** and **boni, optimi,** with **consulo,** may be classed with genitives of value.

147. *GENITIVE OR ABLATIVE WITH VERBS OF BUYING AND SELLING.*

1. Verbs of *buying* and *selling* take the genitives **tanti, quanti, plūris, maximi,** and **minōris**:

As, **quanti orȳza empta? parvo**; *for how much was the rice bought? At a small price.*

2. So with the genitives **tantīdem, quantīvis, quantīcunque.**

3. But such verbs take the ablatives **magno, permagno, plūrimo, parvo, minimo, nihilo, nonnihilo, tantulo.**

148. *LOCATIVE OF NAMES OF TOWNS, ETC.*

1. Names of *towns* and *small islands* in which anything is said to be or be done, if of the first or second declension and singular number, are put in the genitive; if of the plural number or third declension, they are put in the ablative:

As, **Corinthi pueros docēbat,** *he used to teach boys at Corinth;* **Smyrnae,** *at Smyrna;* **Carthāgine,** *at Carthage;* **Athēnis,** *at Athens;* **Trallibus,** *at Tralles.*

Note.—These constructions owe their origin to the old **locative** termination **i**. The genitive of the first declension once ended in **i**, as **Rōmāi**; that of the second has the locative termination. Even in the third declension forms in i are often preferred for the locative; as, **Carthāgini,** *at Carthage.* For other expressions of the **place where**, see § **183.**

2. **Domi,** *at home;* **belli,** *at war;* **mīlitiae,** *on military service;* **humi,** *on the ground,* are locative genitives.

3. Other locatives are **vīcīniae** (Plautus and Terence), *in the neighborhood;* and **animi** (plural **animis**), *in mind,* especially in certain expressions of doubt or anxiety. (Compare § **136, 6.**)

149. DATIVE.

The dative denotes the person or thing, **to** or **for** which anything is or is done. It marks the **person affected** or interested, and generally implies **advantage** or **disadvantage.**

1. As denoting that **with reference to** which the subject acts, or in reference to which it possesses a quality, it is called the case of the **remoter object.**

2. **The dative of advantage** is often called the **datīvus commŏdi.**

3. There are some uses of **to** and **for** in English, which cannot be expressed by the dative, but require a preposition; thus **to**, after words of actual motion, is often to be translated by **ad** or **in**; and **for**, meaning *in behalf of* or *in defence of*, by **pro.**

150. *ACCUSATIVE AND DATIVE.*

Transitive verbs govern the **accusative and dative** when, together with the object of the action, there is expressed the person or thing *to* or *for which*, or *with reference to which*, it is done:

As, **dedi puero librum,** *I gave the boy a book;* **trādo prōvinciam successōri; mōrem tibi gero; nullum locum relīquit precibus.**

1. This dative stands also with the passive: as, **liber puero datus est,** *the book was given to the boy.*

151. Many verbs of *taking away, defending,* and *protecting from,* most of which are compounds of **ab, de,** or **ex,** are found often with the accusative and dative:

As, **solstitium pecori dēfendite,** *ward off the heat from the flock;* **ēlābor frātri; Caesar Ambiorigi auxilia dētraxit; oestrum arcēbis pecori.**

Note.—The dative in these cases is one of **advantage** or **disadvantage.** The ablative, with or without a preposition, is more frequently found in prose. But while the ablative marks simply separation, the dative intimates that the person or thing is harmed or benefited. There is a delicate elegance in this use of the dative, which makes it a favorite construction in the poets. A similar use of the dative is seen in German writers.

152. *ACCUSATIVE AND DATIVE OR ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE.*

Some verbs have two constructions, taking sometimes an object-accusative and the dative of the person or thing affected, and sometimes the accusative of the thing affected and the ablative of the means: as, **urbi circumdedit mūrum** (literally, he put a wall around, for the city), or **urbem circumdedit mūro,** *he surrounded the city with a wall;* **dōno tibi mūnus,** or **dōno te mūnere.** So also **adspergo, induo, exuo, impertio, inūro, misceo, circumfundo,** and other verbs.

153. *DATIVE AFTER VERBS.*

Many intransitive verbs, such as those which denote *benefiting, injuring, pleasing,* and others, take a dative of the person or thing affected:

As, **Fortūna favet fortibus,** *Fortune favors the brave;* **nēmini noceas,** *harm no man;* **mihi placēbat Pompōnius,** *Pomponius was pleasing to me;* **mundus deo pāret,** *the world pays obedience to God;* **sibi fīdit,** *he trusts himself;* **īrascitur inimīcis,** *he is angry with his enemies;* **omnibus bonis**

expedit salvam esse rempublicam, *it is for the advantage of all good men that the Commonwealth should be safe.*

1. The principal verbs of this kind are, *a.* **prōsum, auxilior, adminiculor, opitulor, patrōcinor, subvenio, succurro, medeor; noceo, obsum, dēsum, officio, incommodo, insulto, insidior; placeo, arrīdeo, displiceo; faveo, grātificor, indulgeo, ignosco, studeo, parco, adūlor, blandior, lēnōcinor, palpor, assentior, assentor, respondeo; adversor, refrāgor, obsto, renītor, repugno, resisto, invideo, aemulor, obtrecto, convīcior, maledīco; impero** (also transitive), **pāreo, cēdo, ausculto, obēdio, obsequor, obtempero, mōrigeror** (mōrem gero), **alicui dicto audiens sum, servio, inservio, ministro, famulor, ancillor, praestōlor; crēdo** (also transitive), **fīdo, confīdo, diffīdo; immineo, propinquo, appropinquo, impendeo, occurro; minor, comminor** (both also transitive), **īrascor, stomachor, succenseo.**

b. Also the impersonals, **condūcit, contingit, convĕnit, expĕdit, dolet, libet, licet.**

2.—*a.* Some verbs of this kind are rendered in English by transitive verbs; but a strictly exact translation, in accordance with their etymology, would show that they are intransitive. Thus **suādēre,** *to persuade,* is literally *to be sweet to;* **nūbere,** *to marry* (said of the female), means *to put on the veil for.*

b. Some verbs are transitive in Latin, while from their English translation they would appear to belong to this class; as, **dēlecto, juvo, adjuvo, adjūto, laedo, offendo, jubeo,** and others.

3. Intransitive verbs governing a dative are often used impersonally in the passive with the same case: as, **mihi invidētur,** *I am envied;* **mihi nunquam persuādēri potuit,** *I never could be persuaded.* We cannot say **invideor, persuādeor,** etc.

4. Some of the verbs which, as intransitive, govern a dative, may become stronger and take an accūsative; or they may take a preposition and its case, or a dependent clause. The classical writers themselves, and the lexicons, will furnish examples.

5. The poetic dative of the **place whither** is a bold extension of the dative of influence: as, **it clāmor caelo,** *a shout reaches the sky.*

6. In the poets and the later prose writers the dative is more frequent than in the best classical prose. **Haerēre, jungere, miscēre** are among the verbs which sometimes take a dative in such writers.

7. **Certo, dēcerto, contendo,** and **luctor** are often used by the poets with the dative.

154. *DATIVE AFTER VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH PREPOSITIONS, ETC.*

Many verbs compounded with the prepositions **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, sub,** and **super,** take the dative:

As, **omnibus antestāre,** *to surpass all;* **interfuit pugnae,** *he was engaged in the battle;* **miseris succurrere disco,** *I learn to aid the wretched.*

1. Transitive verbs take also an accusative. (See § **150.**)

2. If a **local** relation is clearly designed, the preposition is commonly repeated with its proper case: as, **adhaeret nāvis ad scopulum; Ajax incubuit in gladium; incurrere in hostes.**

3. The compounds of **cum** (con, com) usually repeat the preposition, but not always.

4. Some verbs never repeat the preposition; with some a different preposition is used, as **obrepere in animum.** The facts in each case can be learned from observation of the usage of classical writers, and by consulting the lexicons.

155. Verbs compounded with **satis, bene,** and **male,** govern the dative: as, **pulcrum est benefacere reipublicae.**

156. *DATIVE OF THE POSSESSOR.*

The verb **esse,** *to be,* is construed with a dative of the **possessor:**

As, **est mihi liber,** *I have a book.*

This is a form of the dative of advantage or disadvantage.

1.—*a.* In such expressions as **est mihi nōmen** the *name* is generally put by attraction in the dative:

As, **est mihi nōmen Balbo,** *my name is Balbus.*

b. The **nominative,** however, is sometimes found, and, more rarely, the **genitive:**

As, **ei morbo nōmen est avāritia; Q. Metello Macedonici nōmen inditum est.**

2. The construction of a dative with a participle agreeing with it, after **esse,** is imitated from the Greek: as, **quibus bellum volentibus erat,** *those who wished for war;* **mihi volenti est,** *it is agreeable to my wish* (properly, *is related to me as wishing it*).

157. *DATIVE OF THE AGENT.*

1. The **gerundive,** and sometimes **passive verbs,** take a "dative of the agent," as the person to whom the action relates or is of interest:

As, **proelia conjugibus loquenda,** *battles for wives to talk about;* **quid-**

quid mihi susceptum est, *whatever has been undertaken by me* (as far as I am concerned); **non intellegor ulli** (Ovid), *I am not understood by any one* (I do not make myself intelligible to any one).

Note.—In good prose, the dative of the agent with passive verbs is rare, and seldom found except with the **compound tenses.**

2. When the verb itself governs the dative, the gerundive may take the ablative with **ab**: as, **cīvibus est a vōbis consulendum**; but two datives are sometimes found, where no ambiguity arises from their use.

3. **Verbal adjectives in -bĭlis** take a dative: as, **multis flēbilis,** *bewailed by many* (literally, to many an object of lamentation).

158. *DATIVE LIMITING THE WHOLE PREDICATE.*

A whole proposition is sometimes qualified by a dative, where a single noun might have been qualified by a genitive or a preposition:

As, **is fīnis populātiōnibus fuit,** *that was the end for the raiding parties;* **puero dormienti caput arsisse ferunt.**

1. English idiom often compels us to translate this dative as a genitive: as, **sēse omnes flentes Caesari ad pedes projēcērunt,** *they all threw themselves weeping at Caesar's feet.*

2. The dative sometimes specifies the **relation** in which one person stands to another: as, **M' Mānīlio consuli tribūnus,** *tribune under Manius Manilius;* **hēres est frātri suo,** *he is heir to his brother.*

3. **Facio** and **fīo,** with the accusatives **quid** and **idem,** take the dative of the person or thing affected: as, **quid facies huic,** *what will you do with this man?* **quid mihi futūrum est,** *what will become of me?* But **de** with the ablative, and the **ablative** alone, are also used.

4. The dative of a **participle** is occasionally used to denote *time* or *circumstances:*

As, **sita Anticyra est laevā parte sinum intrantibus,** *Anticȳra lies on the left as you sail in* (lit. *to* those *sailing in*); **in ūniversum aestimanti, plus penes peditem rōboris,** *looking at it on the whole, their chief strength is in the infantry* (lit. *to* one *looking at it*).

159. *ETHICAL DATIVE.*

A slight reference to a person, as interested in the matter in hand, is sometimes made by the dative of a personal pronoun:

As, **quid mihi Celsus agit?** *how is my Celsus?* **Haec vōbis illōrum per bīduum mīlitia fuit,** *this, you see, was their two-days' campaigning.* **Hem Dāvum tibi,** *see, here's Davus.* A similar construction is found in Shakespeare; and in French and German writers.

160. *DATIVE OR ACCUSATIVE AFTER VERBS.*

1. Some verbs may take an objective **accusative**, or a **dative** of interest, with a different meaning:

As, **metuo aliquem,** *I fear some one;* **metuo alicui,** *I am anxious for some one;* **caveo aliquem,** *I am on my guard against some one;* **caveo alicui,** *I look out for some one's interests.*

Such verbs are **metuo, timeo, caveo, consulo, prōspicio, prōvideo, moderor, tempero.**

2. A few verbs take either the accusative or dative without marked difference in signification: as, **adūlor, aemulor, comitor, dēspēro, praestōlor.**

161. *TWO DATIVES.*

1. **Esse** and certain other verbs sometimes take **two datives,** one of the **person or thing** affected, the other of the **end served** or the **result:**

As, **cui bono fuit?** *whom did it benefit?* **exitio est mare nautis,** *the sea brings destruction to sailors.*

2. Besides **esse,** the verbs most frequent in this construction are **habēre, dūcere, dare, vertere:** as, **Q. Metello laudi datum est.**

3. Some other verbs, especially verbs of **motion,** are so construed with **auxilio, praesidio, subsidio:** as, **equitātum auxilio Caesari mīserant; quinque cohortes castris praesidio relinquit.**

4. Sometimes the dative of the person or thing affected is not expressed: as, **omnia deerant quae ad reficiendas nāves erant ūsui.**

162. *DATIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.*

1. Adjectives which in English take TO or FOR after them, are generally followed by the dative:

As, **cīvis ūtilis reipublicae,** *a citizen useful to the state;* **res tibi facilis, cēteris difficilis,** *a thing easy for thee, hard for the others.*

2. Such are adjectives denoting advantage or disadvantage, ease or difficulty, friendliness or unfriendliness, similarity, nearness, and the like.

3. Some such adjectives are frequently used as nouns, with the genitive: as, **amīcus, aequālis, affinis, aliēnus, proprius, sacer, superstes,** etc.

4. **Similis, consimilis, adsimilis,** and **dissimilis,** are put both with the genitive and the dative; in the earlier writers, almost always with the genitive of the names of gods and men.

5. **Aptus, habilis, idōneus, accommodātus,** instead of the dative, have

often **ad** with the accusative. Adjectives meaning **friendly** or **hostile**, sometimes take the prepositions **in**, **erga**, or **adversus**, instead of the dative. **Aliēnus** may take the **ablative**, with or without **ab**.

6. **Propior** and **proximus** have generally the dative, but sometimes the accusative, or the ablative with **ab**. The adverb **propius**, **proxime**, takes the accusative, more rarely the dative.

7. The poets sometimes use the dative after **idem** (in any case but the nominative), instead of **atque** with the nominative: as, **idem facit occidenti**, *he does the same as he who kills* him.

163. *DATIVE AFTER PARTICLES AND NOUNS.*

The dative is used with the adverbs **convenienter**, **congruenter**, **constanter**, **obsequenter**, **obviam**, **ūtiliter**, and the interjections **hei** and **vae**.

164. Verbal nouns govern the dative in a few instances: as, **obtemperātio lēgibus**; **remedia morbis**.

ABLATIVE.

165. The ablative is the case of **separation or departure**, and **source**. It also serves as an **instrumental** and a **locative** case, under the latter head including respect, manner, condition, and quality, as well as time and place.

166. *ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, MANNER, AND INSTRUMENT.*

The ablative after verbs, participles, or adjectives may denote the **cause**, **manner**, **means**, or **instrument**:

As, **ardēre studio**, *to burn with zeal*; **ratiōne voluptatem sequi**, *to follow pleasure in a rational manner*; **mōribus conciliandus amor**, *love must be won by character*; **cornibus tauri se tūtantur**, *bulls defend themselves with their horns*; **Britanni lacte et carne vivēbant**, *the Britons lived on milk and flesh*; **nātūram expellere furcā**, *to drive nature out with a pitchfork*.

1. The ablative of **manner** is regularly accompanied by an adjective, a pronoun, or a participle, or by the preposition **cum**; but a few words, such as **modus**, **mos**, **ratio**, **rītus**, and **consuētūdo** are used in the ablative without this accompaniment.

2. The ablative of manner denotes **the way in which** or the **circumstances under which** a thing is done.

3. Even with an adjective, the preposition **cum** is sometimes used, particularizing the concomitant: as, **magno cum studio aderat**, i. e., *he was present, and displayed great zeal.*

4. The ablative may denote **that in accordance with which** anything is

or is done: as, **meo jūdicio**, *in my opinion;* **institūto suo**, *in accordance with his practice.*

5. **Accompaniment** is generally denoted by the preposition **cum**: as, **vagāmur cum conjugibus et līberis**, *we wander with our wives and children.* But in words denoting **military** and **naval forces**, we generally have the ablative of **instrument**, without a preposition, when an adjective is used: as, **ad castra omnibus cōpiis contendērunt.**

6. **Junctus, conjunctus, implicatus, admixtus**, may take the ablative.

167. *ABLATIVE WITH CERTAIN VERBS, ETC.*

Ūtor, abūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and **vescor** take the ablative:

As, **quousque tandem, Catilīna, abūtēre patientiā nostrā? officio, mūnere, honōribus fungi; carne vescor; oppido potitur.**

1. These are ablatives of **means** or **instrument** or of **source.**

2. In older Latin the accusative is sometimes found with these verbs. Hence they retain the gerundive: as, **vīta data est ūtenda; spes potiundōrum castrōrum. Potior** often takes the genitive.

3. The idiomatic uses of **ūtor** deserve notice: as, **valetūdine ūtor non bonā**, *I have poor health;* **ūtebātur intime Hortensio**, *he was on intimate terms with Hortensius;* **ūsus eram silentio**, *I had kept silence;* **fortūnā ūti**, *to try one's fortune;* **facili me ūtētur patre**, *he shall find in me an indulgent father.*

168. The verbs **laetor, exsulto, gaudeo; dēlector, glōrior; labōro, doleo; valeo, flōreo; excello, praesto, supero; fīdo, confīdo, nītor**; and the adjectives **laetus, contentus, praeditus, frētus**, take an ablative of **cause** or **means. Dignor** takes an ablative of **respect** or **price.**

169. The ablative is put with various verbs to denote that **with which** the action is performed, or to specify **in what** it is manifested: as, **culter mānat cruōre**, *the knife is dripping with blood;* **pluit lapidibus; sanguine sūdāre; augēre aliquem scientiā; afficere aliquem honōre, ignōminia, etc.; aliquem pūro sermōne adsuēfacere; homines labōre adsuēti.**

1. These may be regarded as free exemplifications of the ablatives of **means** or **instrument** and **specification.**

2. Transitive verbs meaning **to fill, to furnish with**, and some others, govern the **accusative** and **ablative.**

170. Verbs of **fulness** and **want** take the ablative: as, **Germānia abundat flūminibus; caret oculis.** (But see § **143.**)

171. *OPUS AND USUS.*

Opus est, used impersonally, takes the **dative** of the **person** needing, and the **ablative** of the **thing** needed; it can also be construed personally: as, **duce nōbis opus est**, *we have need of a leader;* or **dux nōbis opus est.**

1. **Usus est**, *there is occasion*, with the ablative, is sometimes found: as, **nunc vīribus ūsus.**

2. **Opus est** can be followed by an **infinitive**, or an **acc. with the infin.**

172. *ABLATIVE OF THE MATERIAL.*

Verbs and participles signifying **consisting** or **being made of**, take the ablative: as, **agri constant campis, vīneis, silvis,** (Plin. Ep.). But prepositions are often used; Cicero always has **ex** with **constare** in this sense.

173. *VOLUNTARY AGENT.*

1. The voluntary agent of a verb in the passive voice is put in the ablative with **a** or **ab**:

As, **mundus a deo administrātur.**

Note.—The voluntary agent is a living person; the involuntary agent is properly called the instrument, and is put in the ablative without a preposition: as, **Hector ab Achille caesus est,** *Hector was slain by Achilles;* **Hector tēlo caesus est,** *Hector was slain by a spear.*

2. Neuter verbs, also, are sometimes followed by an ablative of the voluntary agent with **a** or **ab**: as, **periit ab Annibale,** *he died at the hands of Hannibal.*

3. If the involuntary agent is personified, it takes the preposition: as, **animus ab ignāvia corruptus.**

4. The voluntary agent is sometimes found in the ablative without **ab.** In such cases, the idea of personality is thrown in the background, and the agents appear as the mere instruments of the action: as, **servi agrestes ac barbari, quibus Etrūriam vexārat.**

174. *ABLATIVE AFTER COMPARATIVES.*

The comparative degree is followed by the **ablative,** when **quam,** *than*, is omitted:

As, **Tullus Hostīlius ferōcior Rōmulo fuit; lacrimā nihil citius ārescit.**

1. After **plus, minus, amplius,** and **longius** (but rarely after other adverbs in prose), **quam** is often omitted without influence on the construction: as, **spatium nōn amplius pedum sexcentōrum.**

2. It is a rare license to put the ablative after the comparative when the latter stands in any other case than the nominative and accusative: as, **pāne egeo, jam mellītis potiōre placentis.**

3. The poets use this ablative of distinction also with **alius**: as, **ne pūtes alium sapiente bonōque beātum.**

4. The ablatives **aequo, justo, dicto, solito, spe, opīniōne, necessārio,** follow comparatives: as, **Caesar opīniōne omnium celerius ventūrus est.**

5. The ablative after the comparative is sometimes omitted; the adjective or adverb may then be translated with quite, too, **rather**:

As, **līberius vīvēbat,** *he lived too freely;* **res graviōres,** *matters of unusual importance.* (See § **53,** 1.)

175. *ABLATIVE OF QUALITY.*

A noun and an adjective are put in the ablative of quality or description:

As, **Mūrēna, vir mediocri ingenio;** or, **Mūrēna mediocri ingenio fuit,** *Murēna was a man of moderate ability.* (See § **134,** Note 1.)

176. *ABLATIVE OF THE DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE.*

The **degree of difference** between objects compared is expressed by the ablative:

As, **sōl multis partibus major atque amplior est quam terra.**

The ablatives **multo, parvo, quo, quanto, eo,** and **tanto** are frequently used to denote the degree of difference: as, **eo gravior dolor quo culpa major,** *the pain is heavier in proportion as the fault is greater.*

177. *ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION.*

The ablative denotes that of which a person or thing is **deprived,** or from which it is **separated:**

As, **spoliāre hominem fortūnis,** *to rob a man of his fortunes:* **arcēre tyrannum reditu,** *to bar the tyrant from return;* **abstinēre scelere,** *to keep from crime.*

1. But the verbs which signify *to abstain, to hinder, to exclude,* are also used with **ab:** as, **prohibēre hostem a pugnā.** When a person is specified, the preposition is always used.

2. The poets, in imitation of a Greek idiom, have the **genitive** with a few such verbs: as, **solūtus operum,** *freed from work.* (See § **145,** 2.) For the **dative,** see § **151.** Compounds with **dis-** take the dative in poetry.

3. Verbs denoting **to drive** a person or thing **from** or **out** of the place where it is, sometimes take the ablative alone, but usually with **ab, ex,** or **de:**

As, **dēpellere hostem loco or e loco.**

4. **Cēdo** and its compounds often take the ablative without a preposition; so also **abeo**, used of resigning an office.

178. *ABLATIVE OF SOURCE.*

Perfect participles denoting **origin** are followed by the ablative of the source:

As, **Mercūrius Jove et Maiā nātus erat; equestri loco ortus.**

1. Such participles are **nātus, ortus, genitus, satus, ēditus.**
2. With the parents, **ex** and **de** are also used.
3. More remote ancestry is indicated by **ortus ab**: as, **Belgae orti sunt a Germānis; Cato Uticensis a Censōrio ortus erat.**

179. *ABLATIVE OF PRICE.*

The **price** or **value** is put in the ablative:

As, **hunc librum parvo pretio ēmi; multōrum sanguine et vulneribus ea victōria Poenis stetit; asse cārum est,** *it's dear at a penny.*

1. To this rule belong the ablatives **magno, plūrimo, parvo, minimo, nihilo,** with verbs of buying and selling: as, **hunc librum plūrimo ēmi.** For the **genitive** with such words, see § **147. Bene, male are also used.**

2. **Dignus** and **indignus** take the ablative of the thing of which anything is worthy or unworthy:

As, **virtus imitātiōne digna est; quam multi lūce indigni sunt!**

The genitive is found rarely.

3. **Mūtāre, commūtāre, permūtāre,** and **vertere,** *to exchange,* take either an accusative of the thing parted with, and an ablative of the thing taken: as, **mūtāre pācem bello,** *to exchange peace for war,* i. e., *to go to war;* or, especially in poetry, an accusative of the thing taken, and an ablative of the thing parted with: as, **permūtāre ōtio dīvitias,** *to take wealth in exchange for ease.*

4. The **penalty** is sometimes in the ablative: as, **capite damnātus,** *condemned to death* (to lose his head).

180. *ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.*

An ablative may be joined to nouns or adjectives to denote **in what respect** their signification is taken:

As, **nōmine grammaticus, rē barbarus,** *in name a grammarian, in fact a barbarian;* **claudus altero pede,** *lame of one foot;* **captus oculis.**

181. *ABLATIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.*

Some adjectives denoting **abundance, want,** or **exemption,** take the ablative:

As, **dīves agris; orbus rēbus omnibus; līber cūrā.**

1. Some adjectives of this kind take a genitive or the preposition **ab.**

2. The word **macte** takes the ablative of the thing on account of which a man is pronounced happy: as, **macte virtūte.** (Originally, an ablative of the means with which one was honored.)

3. The ablative after many adjectives is explained by the **general rules** given in preceding sections.

182. *ABLATIVE OF PLACE WHENCE.*

1. The ablative of **place whence,** if a **town** or **small island,** or **domo, rure, humo,** is used without a preposition:

As, **redīre Athēnis, Tībure, rūre,** *to return from Athens, Tibur,* or *the country.*

2. But the prepositions **ab, de, ex,** are sometimes used.

3. The ablative of place whence may be used in dating letters: as, **dat. iiii. kal. Jūnias Thessalonīcā,** *written the 29th of May, from Thessalonīca;* **ego ūnas Capuā litteras dedi,** *I have written once from Capua.*

4. Native place is sometimes expressed by this ablative: as, **Gn. Magius Cremōnā,** *Gnaeus Magius of Cremona.* More usually an adjective is used, as **Cremōnensis;** sometimes **ab,** as **Turnus Herdonius ab Arīciā.**

5. The name of the **tribe** is added in the ablative to that of a Roman citizen, in inscriptions: as, **Ser. Sulpicius Q. F. Lemoniā Rūfus,** *Servius Sulpicius Rufus, son of Quintus, of the Lemonian tribe.*

183. *ABLATIVE OF PLACE WHERE.*

1. The ablative of **place where,** except in the names of towns and small islands, generally takes **in:**

As, **in portu nāvigo,** *I am sailing in the harbor.*

2. The preposition is omitted in certain phrases: *a.* **loco, multis locis, plūribus locis,** etc.; **hoc libro, alio libro,** etc.; **terrā, mari; dextrā** (parte), *on the right hand;* **laevā, sinistrā,** *on the left hand;* **mediā urbe,** *in the middle of the city;* **medio aedium,** *in the middle of the house; b.* with the adjective **tōtus:** as, **tōtā Asiā,** *throughout Asia; c.* with **se tenēre, se continēre:** as, **Pompēius se oppido tenet,** *Pompēius keeps in the town.*

3. The poets omit the preposition more freely: as, **silvisque agrisque viisque corpora foeda jacent,** *in forests and fields and roads lie revolting corpses.*

4. But many apparent ablatives of place may be explained as ablatives of **means, cause,** etc.

5. When a work is quoted, **in** is used: as, **in Iliade Homēri**; but when the author only is cited, **apud**: as, **apud Homērum,** *in Homer.*

6. For the ablative of **names of towns,** see § 148.

a. Prepositions are much used (1) with names of towns: as, **in Epheso est; in Ephesum abii; has litteras a Brundisio dedi.** So **ad** (*at* or *near*) and **apud.** (2) With **humus, domus,** and **rus**: as, **in domo Periclis.**

b. **Usque** is joined with names of places, with or without a preposition: as, **ab Aethiopiā usque,** *as far as from Æthiopia*; **usque Ennam,** *as far as Enna.*

184. *ABLATIVE OF ROUTE.*

The **road by which** is denoted by the ablative without a preposition: as, **īre viā Sacrā,** *to walk on the Sacred Road;* **ingredi urbem portā Esquilīnā,** *to enter the city by the Esquiline gate;* **tendimus hinc rectā Beneventum** (sc. **viā**).

185. *ABLATIVE OF TIME.*

The ablative denotes **time when** and **time within which**:

As, **hieme,** *in winter;* **hōrā quartā,** *at the fourth hour* (ten o'clock); **Kalendis Jānuāriis,** *on the first of January;* **biennio,** *within two years;* **paucis diēbus,** *within a few days;* **tribus hōris Aduātucam venīre potestis.**

1. Recurring **games, meetings,** or **festivals,** in the ablative may denote the **time when**: as, **comitiis,** *at the elections;* **gladiātōribus,** *at the gladiators' show;* **Līberālibus,** *at the feast of Liber.*

2. Rarer idioms are **serēno,** *in a calm;* **austro,** *in a south wind;* and the like.

3. **Interdiu, noctu, māne (māni), lūci, vesperi, heri, temperi, prīdie, postrīdie, quotīdie, crastini die,** represent old **locatives.**

4. The preposition used to define **time when** is chiefly **de,** *beginning from, ere the close of, during:* as, **multā de nocte,** *long before night ended.* **In** is sometimes used to express **time within which**; so also **intra.**

5. The ablative of **time within which** is sometimes emphatically defined by the pronouns **hic** or **ille**: as, **hoc triennio,** *within the next* (or *the last*) *three years;* the **tense** determining whether **hic** refers to future or past **time.**

6. **Post** is also used in answering the question **how soon?** **ante** in telling

how long ago: as, **paucis post diēbus, paucos post dies, or post paucos dies,** *within the next few days;* **paucis ante diēbus, paucos ante dies,** or **ante paucos dies,** *a few days ago.* We also have **abhinc** with the accusative or ablative: as, **abhinc triennium** (or **triennio**) **huc commigrāvit,** *she came here three years ago.*

7. *I saw him three days before he died* may be rendered in any of the following ways: **vīdi eum tribus diēbus** (or **trīduo**) **antequam mortuus est; v. e. tertio die antequam m. e.; v. e. ante tres dies** (or **ante trīduum**) **quam m. e.; v. e. ante tertium diem quam m. e.**

8. *He died six years after I saw him* may be translated in any of the following ways: **mortuus est sex annis** (or **sexennio**) **postquam eum vīderam; m. e. sexto anno postquam e. v.; m. e. sexto anno quam e. v.; m. e. post sex annos** (or **post sexennium**) **quam e. v.; m. e. post sextum annum quam e. v.**

9. **Cum, quo, quibus** are sometimes used for **postquam**: as, **bīduo quo** (or **cum**) **haec gesta sunt,** *two days after these things were done.*

10. The ablative may denote **time throughout which**; but rarely, except in post-Augustan writers: as, **maestitia est caruisse anno Circensibus ūno.**

11. **Prīdie quam mortuus est,** means *the day before he died* (ante diem quam); **postrīdie quam eum vīdi,** *the day after I saw him* (post diem quam).

186. *ABLATIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS.*

The prepositions **ā, ab,** or **abs, absque, clam, cōram, cum, dē, ē** or **ex, palam, prae, prō, sine,** and **tenus,** govern the ablative:

As, **pecūniam ā me accēpit,** *he received the money from me;* **cōram populo dixit,** *he spoke before the people;* **prae laetitiā lacrimae prōsiliunt mihi,** *tears start into my eyes for joy.*

1. **Tenus** follows its case, and governs the ablative singular (rarely plural) and plural genitive (§ **133, 7, 1**): **capulo tenus abdidit ensem,** *he buried his sword to the hilt;* **verbo tenus,** *as far as words go;* **quādam tenus,** *a certain way, to a certain extent.*

2. **Clam** (and **clanculum**) are found in comedy with the accusative. For **in, sub, super,** and **subter** with the ablative, see § **131**, 3, 4.

187. *ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.*

1. A noun and a participle not connected with the main construction of the sentence, may stand by themselves in the ablative. This is called the **ablative absolute.**

As, **imperante Augusto,** *when Augustus was emperor.*

2. As the verb **sum** has no present participle, two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, may stand together in the ablative absolute:

As, **Camillo duce**, *with Camillus as commander;* **vīvo patre**, *while my father is* (or *was*) *alive.*

3. The ablative absolute may express any **accompaniment** of the principal action, as the *time*, a *condition*, a *concession*, a *cause*, according to the context.

Thus, **te invīto** may mean, in different connections, *against your will, if you are unwilling, though you are unwilling, since you are unwilling,* etc.

4. An **impersonal participle** stands sometimes in the ablative absolute: as, **lībāto**, *after the libation was offered;* **mihi errāto, nulla venia; recte facto, exigua laus prōpōnitur;** *to me, if I blunder, no indulgence; if I succeed, small credit is offered.*

5. A few participles, like **audīto, cognito, comperto, explōrāto, dēspērāto, intellecto, nuntiāto, ēdicto, permisso,** sometimes stand in the ablative absolute with a **clause** which is used as a noun: as, **Hannibal, cognito insidias sibi parāri, fugā salūtem quaesīvit.** The place of such a participle is sometimes supplied by an **adjective**.

MOODS AND TENSES.

THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

188. The Indicative is the mood of simple assertion (affirmative or negative), or of direct question.

1. In conditional sentences, in which it is stated simply that a thing is (or is not) in case another thing is (or is not), without stating anything in regard to the actual truth of the two propositions, the Indicative is used in both:

As, **Si Deus mundum creāvit, conservat etiam**, *if God made the world, he preserves it as well;* **nīsi hoc ita est, frustra labōrāmus**, *if this is not so, we are laboring in vain.*

2. There are some idiomatic uses of the Indicative where other moods might have been expected. (See § **196**; § **215, 3, n. 3, 4, 3.**)

189. *THE PRESENT TENSE.*

1. The **Present** may denote (1) a *momentary* or (2) a *continued* present action:

As, (1) **prōcumbit humi bos**, *the bull falls prostrate on the ground;* (2) **nāvigat aequor**, *he is sailing on the sea.*

2. The Present may denote an action or state as existing (1) *occasionally*, (2) *habitually*, or (3) *in all time:*

As, (1) **domesticus otior,** *I lounge at home;* (2) **honor alit artes,** *honor nurtures the arts;* (3) **deus mundum conservat,** *God preserves the universe.*

3. The Present may express the opinion or statement of an author, cited as still living in his books:

As, **praeclāre hunc locum Cicero tractat in libris de nātūrā deōrum.**

4. The Present is sometimes a lively **substitute for the Future.**

As, **ni propere fit quod impero, vincīrī vos jam jubeo,** *if what I command is not done with speed, I order you to be put in chains this moment;* **īmusne sessum,** *shall we go and sit down?* **abeo an maneo,** *shall I go or stay?*

5. As a tense of incomplete action, the present sometimes denotes a thing as simply *attempted*, or as simply *begun.* In these uses it is called the **conative** or the **inceptive** present.

6. 1. **The Historic Present** is used for a past tense, in animated and picturesque narrative:

As, **dīmisso senātu, decemviri prodeunt in conciōnem abdicantque se magistrātu,** *when the senate broke up, the decemvirs go forth to the assembled people and resign office.*

2. The Present is commonly used in a temporal clause with **dum,** *while,* even when the principal sentence is past or future: as, **dum haec in colloquio geruntur, Caesari nuntiātum est equites Ariovisti propius accedēre.** But the Perfect may also be used, of an action, or the Pluperfect, of a state of things.

7. The Present, with **jam, jamdiu, jamdūdum,** and **jamprīdem,** is used of that which has lasted for some time and still continues: as, **annum jam audis Cratippum,** *you have now for a year been attending the lectures of Cratippus;* **jamdūdum video,** *I have seen it this long time.*

190. *IMPERFECT.*

1. The **Imperfect** denotes *continued* past action:

As, **scrībēbam,** *I was writing;* **ībam viā Sacrā, accurrit quidam,** *I was walking on the Sacred Road, when a certain man ran up to me.*

2. The Imperfect denotes *repeated* or *habitual* past action:

As, **scrībēbam,** *I used to write;* **dīcēbat melius quam scripsit Hortensius,** *Hortensius used to speak better than he has written;* **noctes vigilābat ad ipsum mane, diem totum stertēbat,** *he would lie awake whole nights till daybreak, and snore all day long.*

3. The Imperfect denotes action in past time, *intended*, *attempted*, or *begun*, but not completed:

As, **Aenēas lenībat dictis animum,** *Aeneas was trying to soften her mind with his words;* **num dubitas id me imperante facere, quod jam tuā sponte faciēbas,** *do you hesitate to do at my command what you were already on the point of doing voluntarily?* **Hujus deditiōnis ipse, qui dedebātur, suāsor et auctor fuit,** *of this surrender the very man who was to be surrendered was the mover and adviser.*

4. The Imperfect is sometimes translated in English by a simple preterite.

5. The Imperfect sometimes expresses a fact which is just now recognized by the speaker or writer, having been previously overlooked: as, **quantā labōrābas charybdi,** *in what a whirlpool you are struggling,* and I did not know it!

191. *FUTURE.*

1. The **Future** expresses *continued* and *indefinite* action in future time:

As, **ambulābo,** *I shall be walking;* **ut voles me esse, ita ero,** *I will be as you shall wish me to be.*

2. The Future is often used as a polite imperative: as, **quod superest, puerum Cicerōnem cūrābis et amābis,** *for the rest, please to treat young Cicero with care and affection.*

3. The Future is used in subordinate sentences, qualifying a principal future sentence, and referring to the same time. In English the Present is generally found: as, **hoc, dum erimus in terris, erit illi caelesti vītae simile.**

192. *PERFECT AND AORIST.*

1. The **Perfect** expresses an action *finished in present time:*

As, **dixi,** *I have spoken;* **vēnit summa dies,** *the last day is come.*

2. The Perfect may express:

a. In poetry, the rapid completion of an action: as, **terra tremit, fūgēre ferae,** *the earth trembles, beasts have fled;* **perii!** *I'm undone.*

b. Cessation of existence: as, **fuimus Troes, fuit Ilium,** *we Trojans have been, Ilium has been,* i. e., we are no longer Trojans, Ilium is no more.

c. Repeated action, or a general habit, like the *gnomic perfect* and *gnomic aorist* in Greek: as, **cum Fortūna reflāvit, adfligimur,** *when Fortune blows adverse, we are cast down;* **rēge āmisso, rūpēre fidem constructaque mella dīripuēre,** *if the queen bee is lost, they break faith and pull down their honey stores.*

d. Lively anticipation, for the Future Perfect: as, **Brutus si conservātus erit, vīcimus,** *if Brutus shall be saved, we have won the day.*

193. The **Historical Perfect**, or **Aŏrist**, expresses a simple past action:

As, **vēni, vīdi, vīci,** *I came, I saw, I conquered.*

1. In historical narration the conjunctions **postquam, posteāquam, ubi, ubi prīmum, cum prīmum, simul, simul ac, simul atque, simul ut,** meaning *as soon as*, generally take the Historical Perfect (sometimes the Present), although our idiom prefers the Pluperfect.

194. *PLUPERFECT.*

The **Pluperfect** expresses an action *finished in past time:*

As, postquam lux certior erat, et Rōmāni, qui caedibus **superfuerant**, in arcem **confūgerant**, conticescēbatque tumultus, tum Tarentīnos convōcāri jubet, *when the light became stronger, and the Romans, who had survived the massacre, had escaped into the citadel, and the uproar was getting quiet, he then orders the Tarentines to be convoked.*

195. *FUTURE PERFECT.*

1. The **Future Perfect** denotes an action *to be finished in future time:*

As, **qui Antōnium oppresserit, is bellum confēcerit,** *he, who shall have crushed Antonius, will have finished the war.*

Note.—The Latin is more precise and accurate than the English in its use both of the Future and the Future Perfect.

2. The Future Perfect is often used in connection with the Future tense: as, **ut sementem fēceris, ita metes,** *as you shall have sown, so will you reap.*

Rem.—English idiom often uses the Present, or the simple Future, for the Future Perfect: *as you sow*, or, *as you shall sow*, instead of *as you shall have sown.*

3. Especially in the comic poets, the Future Perfect is often used where we should expect the Future, to express the *immediate sequence* upon the future action to which it is related, or the *certainty* of the event:

As, **molestus si sum, reddite argentum; abiero;** *if I bother you, give back the money and I'll be off.*

4. It may denote the *future result* of an action now past:

As, **ūnus homo tantas strāges impūne per urbem ēdiderit?** *shall it be with impunity that a single man has made such heaps of slain throughout the city?*

5. The Future Perfect, like the Future, sometimes resembles the Imperative: as, **sitne malum dolor necne, Stoici vīderint,** *whether pain is an evil or not, the Stoics will have to see.*

196. *THE INDICATIVE AS AN AUXILIARY.*

Latin writers often express *duty*, *necessity*, *propriety*, *possibility*, as **facts**, in the Indicative, where the English would have the Potential:

As, **ūtilius fuit,** *it would have been better.*

197. *PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.*

1. In the **Future Periphrastic Conjugation**, the participle in **-ūrus** expresses

a. being about to; meaning to; purposing; being on the point of: as, **apes ēvolātūrae sunt,** *the bees are about to swarm;* **ubi rēx erat mansūrus,** *where the king intended to stay.*

b. being likely to; being sure to; being ready to: as, **haec sine doctrīnā crēditūri fuērunt,** *this they were sure to believe if they had not been taught* (*otherwise*).

c. being destined to (*am to, are to*, etc.): as, **si vēri amīci futūri sumus,** *if we are to be true friends;* **manet mansūrumque est,** *it abides and is destined to abide.*

2. Periphrastic past tenses may sometimes be idiomatically translated by *would have* or *should have:* as, **deditos ultimis cruciātibus affectūri fuērunt,** *they would have executed them, if surrendered, with the uttermost tortures.*

Note.—As the **passive** has no participle with a future signification, certain periphrases are used to express those relations of time which in the active are denoted by the future participle with **sum**: e. g., **futūrum est** (erat, fuit) **ut**; **fore ut** or **futūrum esse ut**; **in eo est** (erat, fuit) **ut**: as, **erat in eo, ut urbs caperētur,** *the city was on the point of being taken.*

198. *PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.*

The combination of the **gerundive** with the tenses of the verb **esse** denotes *necessity* or *fitness.* (See § **82**, 2.)

199. *PASSIVE COMPOUND TENSES.*

The **perfect passive participle** is sometimes used with **fui, fueram,** or **fuero** to form the perfect, pluperfect, or future perfect passive tenses. But generally the participle with these forms of **sum** is used adjectively, or to denote a state or condition rather than an act. (See also § **74**, Note **1.**)

200. *TENSES IN LETTERS.*

Writers of letters sometimes express time from the point of view of the *receiver* of the letter, to whom of course the time of writing is already **past.** Thus the **Imperfect** (and sometimes the **Perfect**) may be used where in English we have the **Present,** and the **Pluperfect** where we have the **Perfect:**

As, **Ante diem viii. Kal. haec ego scrībēbam hōrā noctis nōnā. Marcellus ita stertēbat ut ego audīrem**; *on the eighth day before the Kalends I write this at three o'clock in the morning. Marcellus is snoring so loud that I hear him.* **Prīdie Idūs Febr. haec scripsi ante lūcem; eo die apud Pompōnium in ējus nuptiis eram cēnātūrus**; *I have written this before day-break on the day before the Ides; I am going to dine with Pomponius to-day at his wedding.* **Dederam litteras Ephesi prīdie; has dedi Trallibus**; *I sent a letter from Ephesus yesterday; I send this letter from Tralles.* **Quae ad eam diem cum haec scrībēbam audīverāmus, inānis rūmor vidēbātur**; *what we have heard till the moment I write this seems idle rumor.*

1. This peculiarity is very frequently observed not at all, or only in part.

2. Matters which will remain present to the receiver are stated in the present: as, **ego hic cōgito commorāri, quoad me reficiam,** *I think of remaining here while I am recruiting my health.*

3. Expressions of time are often accommodated to the tense employed, so that *yesterday* becomes **prīdie**; *to-morrow,* **postrīdie** or **postero die.**

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

201. 1. The Subjunctive Mood has two very different uses:

I. It denotes **contingency, possibility, will, desire,** or **purpose,** and is generally to be translated in English by the auxiliaries *may, might, can, could, would,* or *should.*

II. It is used in **consecutive clauses** to denote *result,* or in **subordinate or dependent clauses,** simply to show their *subordination* or *dependence;* and is then generally to be translated in English by the *Indicative.*

Note.—The first use represents the original force of the mood; the second has been derived from it, through steps more or less traceable. But the second use has become so characteristic that it has given the mood its ordinary name. Another name, **Conjunctive,** is preferred by many grammarians.

2. As contrasted with the Indicative, the Subjunctive is the

mood of **ideal** relations, and often represents a thing as **thought** or **supposed,** rather than as done or narrated.

202. *POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.*

1. The subjunctive sometimes represents an action as possible or probable:

As, **quaerat quispiam,** *some one may ask;* **forsitan quaerātis,** *perhaps you may inquire;* **vix crēdiderim,** *I can hardly believe;* **forsitan quispiam dīxerit,** *some one may perchance say.*

2. The subjunctive is often used for **mild, modest, or cautious** statement, in preference to the more direct and positive indicative:

As, **hoc sine ullā dubitātiōne confirmāverim,** *I might affirm this without any hesitation.*

Note.—**Velim, nōlim, mālim** are often thus used to express a wish modestly, *I could wish, could wish not, would rather.* A wish which cannot now be fulfilled is expressed by **vellem, nollem, mallem.**

203. *OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.*

1. The subjunctive is used to denote a *wish* or an *exhortation:*

As, **sīs fēlix,** *may you be happy;* **valeant cīves mei, sint incolumes, sint beāti,** *may my fellow citizens be strong, may they be without harm, may they be happy!* **ne vīvam,** *may I not live;* **imitēmur mājōres nostros,** *let us emulate our ancestors!* **moriar, si puto,** *may I die, if I think.*

Note.—The **negative particle** with the optative subjunctive is **ne** (**nēve, neu**), rarely **non.**

2. **Utinam,** *would that, I wish that,* and **utinam ne** (sometimes **non**), *would that not,* are used with the present subjunctive, and rarely the perfect, in wishes whose fulfilment is *possible*, or is conceived of as possible, and with the imperfect and pluperfect in wishes whose fulfilment is *impossible:*

As, **utinam cōnāta efficere possim,** *O that I may be able to accomplish my purposes!* **utinam tam facile vēra invenīre possem, quam falsa convincere,** *would that it were as easy for me to discover the truth, as it is to refute falsehood!* **utinam in Ti. Graccho tālis mens ad rem publicam bene gerendam fuisset, quāle ingenium ad bene dīcendum fuit,** *I wish that Tiberius Gracchus had had a disposition for the good administration of the government, similar to his genius for good oratory.*

3. In the same manner **ut, si,** and **O si** are sometimes used:

As, **ut te omnes dii perduint,** *I hope that all the gods will destroy you;* **O si praeteritos referat mihi Juppiter annos,** *O if Jupiter would give me back my bygone years!*

4. The particle is sometimes omitted in the poets: as, **tēcum lūdere sīcut ipsa possem,** *O that I could sport with thee like her!*

5. The subjunctive, in the third person, is sometimes used in *commands* and *prohibitions:*

As, **aut bibat aut abeat,** *let him either drink or depart;* **puer tēlum ne habeat,** *let not a boy have a weapon.*

6. The subjunctive, in the *second person*, is used of a subject that is only assumed; rarely of a definite person, and then mostly in the poets:

As, **injūrias fortūnae dēfugiendo relinquas,** *you must escape the wrongs of fortune by flight;* **si sciens fallo, tum me, Juppiter optime maxime, pessimo lēto afficias** (Liv.).

7. The second person of the **perfect subjunctive** is used in *prohibitions:* as, **ne transieris Ibērum.**

8. In the imperfect and pluperfect, the advisory or imperative subjunctive is used of a thing which ought to have been done, as distinguished from what was actually done: as, **potius dīceret,** *he should rather have said;* **frūmentum ne ēmisses,** *you should not have bought any wheat.*

9. The want of a **first person** in the **imperative** is supplied by the subjunctive.

10. An exhortation may be given in Latin by a question with **quin:** as, **quin īmus,** *why are we not going?*

204. *CONCESSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.*

1. *Permission* and *concession* are expressed by the subjunctive:

As, **fruātur sāne hoc sōlācio,** *let him enjoy forsooth this consolation;* **nātūram expellas furcā, tamen usque recurret,** *you may drive nature off with a pitchfork, still she'll be all the time running back;* **sit fur,** *granted that he be a thief;* **fuerit aliis; tibi quando esse coepit?** *suppose he has been so to others; when did he begin to be so to you?*

2. The concessive subjunctive is often preceded by the particles **quamvis, ut,** and **ne,** or by **licet:**

As, **homines, quamvis in turbidis rēbus sint, tamen interdum animis relaxantur,** *men, allowing that they are in circumstances as troubled as you please, still at times unbend;* **ut dēsint vīres, tamen est laudanda voluntas,** *though strength be wanting, yet praiseworthy is the will;* **ne sit summum**

malum dolor, malum certe est, *granting that pain is not the greatest evil, an evil it certainly is.*

1. **Quamquam** is used mostly with the **indicative** in the best authors, but sometimes, especially in the poets and in Livy and later writers, with the subjunctive. **Quamvis** is found with the **indicative** sometimes in Livy, and often in later writers and in the poets; in the same writers **quantumvis** and **quamlibet** are found with the **subjunctive.** The verb **licet** takes the present or perfect subjunctive. **Cum** when meaning *although*, and **qui** meaning *although I* (*thou, he*, etc.), take the subjunctive; but they are found with the indicative usually in Plautus and Terence, and sometimes in the classical period.

2. The compounds of **si**, when denoting **concession**, take the same moods and tenses as when denoting condition.

205. *QUESTIONS OF DELIBERATION OR OF APPEAL.*

1. Questions of *doubt* or of *appeal* take the subjunctive:

As, **quid faciam?** *what am I to do?* **quid facerem?** *what was I to do? what could I do?* or *what ought I to have done?*

2. The hesitation or doubt is often in regard to what may with the greatest *propriety* or *fitness* be done.

3. Questions with the subjunctive are sometimes *potential;* and they often imply a negative answer.

206. *SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE.*

The subjunctive is used to denote a *purpose*, after **ut, quo, ne**, and the relative **qui**:

As, **Platōnem ferunt, ut Pȳthagorēos cognosceret, in Italiam vēnisse,** *they say that Plato came to Italy in order that he might become acquainted with the Pythagorēans;* **Dionȳsius, ne tonsōri collum committeret, tondēre fīlias suas docuit,** *Dionysius taught his daughters to shave, in order that he might not entrust his neck to a barber;* **medico puto aliquid dandum, quo sit studiōsior,** *I think the physician should have something given to him that he may be more zealous;* **Clūsīni lēgātos Rōmam qui auxilium a senātu peterent mīsēre,** *the Clusīni sent ambassadors to Rome to ask aid from the Senate.*

1. **Qui** (§ **220**) in such clauses is equivalent to **ut is, quo** to **ut eo.** When **quo** is used with comparatives, the ablative denotes the *measure* (§ **176**).

2. **Relative adverbs**, also, may be followed by the **subjunctive of purpose.**

3. **Ut ne** and **quo ne** are sometimes used with clauses of negative purpose.

4. **Ne** is used in clauses denoting the **purpose**, not of the principal action, but of the *mention* of the action: as, **ne dīcam,** *not to say;* **ne longior sim, vale,** *not to be too long, good-bye.*

5. **Ne** and **nēdum** take the subjunctive in the sense of *much less;* the prevention of the greater event being rhetorically regarded as the purpose of the less event: as, **vix in tectis frigus vītātur; nēdum in mari sit facile abesse ab injūriā temporis,** *much less is it easy on the sea,* lit., that it should not be easy.

207. *SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT.*

Ut, ut non, and **quin,** denoting a *consequence* or a *result,* take the subjunctive:

As, **Verres Siciliam ita vexāvit, ut restitui in antīquum statum nullo modo possit,** *Verres so harried Sicily that it could in no way be restored to its ancient condition;* **ruere illa non possint, ut haec non concidant,** *those things cannot fall without these things falling with them;* **nunquam accēdo quin abs te abeam doctior,** *I never come near you, without going away more learned.*

SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES USED AS SUBJECTS, OBJECTS, OR APPOSITIVES.

208. The subjunctive is used in substantive clauses introduced by **ut,** *that,* **ut non** and **quōminus,** *that not,* which are the *subjects* of a verb:

As, **accidit ut eo tempore in urbe essem,** *(it) happened that at that time I was in the city;* **per me stetit quōminus hae fierent nuptiae,** *(it) was owing to me that this marriage did not take place;* **saepe fit ut ii qui dēbeant non respondeant ad tempus.**

Note.—Such substantive clauses are the subjects of such verbs and phrases as **fit, futūrum est, accidit, contingit, ēvenit, ūsu venit, est** *(it is the case that),* **sequitur, restat, reliquum est, super est, proximum est, extrēmum est, prope est, longe abest, tantum abest.**

209. The subjunctive is used in substantive clauses introduced by **ut,** *that,* **ne** and **ut ne,** *that not,* which are the *objects* of a verb:

As, **sol efficit ut omnia flōreant,** *the sun causes that all things should flourish;* **vos adepti estis ne quem cīvem metuerētis,** *you have obtained that you should fear no citizen.*

Note.—Such object clauses follow verbs signifying *to effect, bring about, ask, persuade, advise, exhort, command, wish, strive,* and the like.

1. After verbs of *effecting, bringing about,* **ut non** is also used.

2. When the object of these verbs is an **opinion or belief,** the **accusative with the infinitive** is generally used. **Fac,** *suppose,* always has the accusative with the infinitive.

3. Verbs of *wishing, willingness, commanding*, and their opposites, often take after them an accusative with the infinitive (§ 242). So generally **jubeo.**

4. **Ut** is sometimes omitted: as, **dic veniat; fac cōgites qui sīs; sine te exōrem;** Caesar Labiēno mandat, Rēmos adeat; oppidānos hortātur moenia dēfendant.

5. **Volo, nōlo, mālo, sino,** take the subjunctive in short and unambiguous expressions generally without **ut**: as, **quid vis faciam? sine te exōrem; volo ut mihi respondeas.** So **facio,** faxo ferant (Aen. ix. 155), and **jubeo** in poets and late writers.

210. Verbs signifying *to hinder, resist, prevent, refuse, avoid,* take the **subjunctive** with **ne**: as, **impedior dolōre ne plūra dīcam,** *I am hindered from saying more;* Rēgulus **ne sententiam dīceret recūsāvit,** *refused to give his vote.*

1. **Ne** is often omitted after **cave; impedio and prohibeo** often, and **caveo** sometimes, have the infinitive.

2. **Quōminus** with the subjunctive may be used after verbs and phrases of *hindering*, or verbs implying *resistance* or *refusal* when qualified with a **negative.**

211. Quin with the subjunctive is used after verbs and phrases of *resisting, detaining from, omitting, delaying,* when they are **negatived** or **questioned**: as, **vix me contineo, quin involem** in eum; **haud** multum **abfuit quin** Ismēnias **interficerētur.**

1. After verbs meaning properly to *hinder* and *forbid*, **quōminus** is regularly used, **quin** very seldom; after those meaning *to omit*, only **quin.**

212. The subjunctive with **ut,** etc., is used in **appositive clauses**: as, **damnātum paenam sequi oportēbat, ut igni cremārētur,** *it was necessary that the punishment of being burnt with fire should follow his condemnation.*

213. *AFTER VERBS OF FEARING.*

After verbs and phrases of **fearing, ut** is translated by *that not*, **ne** by *that:*

As, **timeo ne pereas,** *I fear you will perish;* **metui ut effugeres,** *I feared you would not escape.*

1. **Pavidus sum, timor est, perīculum est,** are examples of such phrases. The **ut** is the oblique interrogative *how.*

214. *TEMPORAL CLAUSES.*

Adverbs of time generally take the **indicative** when they simply denote actual *time;* but if they denote also *cause*, or *purpose*, or introduce *general* statements, they take the **subjunctive.**

1. **Dum, dōnec,** and **quoad,** take the **present** and **imperfect subjunctive** of an action *expected* or *purposed:*

As, **exspecta dum Attĭcum conveniam,** *wait till I meet Atticus;* **multa bello passus, dum conderet urbem,** *much did he suffer in war, that he might found a city* (while he was striving to found); rēx quattuor millia armātōrum, **dum recens terror esset,** Scotūssam mīsit, *while the terror should be* (as he expected) *fresh in men's minds.*

Note 1.—When meaning **as long as,** these adverbs take the indicative, unless a design is also expressed; in the sense of **until** they take the indicative if the event is thought of as really happening: as, Ti. Gracchus tamdiu laudābitur, **dum memoria rērum Rōmānārum manēbit; dōnec rediit Marcellus** silentium fuit; haud dēsinam **dōnec perfēcero;** Milo in senātu fuit eo die **quoad senātus dīmissus est.**

Note 2.—Dum, *while, while yet,* generally takes the **present** when two things are described as occurring simultaneously, or one is the occasion of the other: as, Tītyre, **dum redeo**—brevis est via—**pasce capellas,** lit., *while I am on way back, feed my kids;* **dum obsequor** adulescentibus, me senem esse **oblītus sum; dum elephanti trājiciuntur,** Hannibal equites ad castra **mīserat.** So also where *waiting* is spoken of: as, tu hic nos, **dum exīmus,** interea opperībere, *till we come out.*

Note 3.—Chiefly in Livy and later historians, as Tacitus, after **dōnec,** *so long as, until,* the subjunctive is sometimes used of **facts,** where we generally have the indicative.

2. **Priusquam** and **antequam** take the **subjunctive** (1) when the occurrence, or prior occurrence, of an expected or purposed event is *prevented*, or (2) when the principal sentence is *negative:*

As, Rōmānus **prius quam fores portārum ōbicerentur,** velut agmine ūno **irrumpit;** is videlicet **antequam veniat in Pontum,** litteras ad Cn. Pompēium mittet; **non ante** datam **cingētis** moenibus urbem **quam** vos dīra fames . . . ambēsas **subigat** mālis consūmere mensas.

1. So **potius quam, citius quam,** and similar expressions.

2. The subjunctive is used after **antequam** and **priusquam** in **general** or **indefinite** statements: as, **tempestas minātur antequam surgat.**

3. The **imperfect** and **pluperfect subjunctive** are sometimes used in denoting a point of time, or an action which has really taken place: as, paucis **ante** diēbus **quam** Syrācūsae **caperentur,** Otācilius in Africam transmīsit. This is analogous to the use of **cum** in narration.

4. The following are examples of the **indicative of actual time:** neque **prius** fugere dēstitērunt **quam** ad flūmen Rhēnum **pervēnērunt; ante** ferit amor **quam cernimus** hostem. (The **imperfect** is rarely used, and is then picturesque; the **pluperfect** never.)

5. The **indicative** is occasionally found even when the occurrence is a thing to be prevented.

6. The **present indicative,** of actions strictly **future,** occurs: as, **ante quam** de accūsātiōne ipsā **dīco,** de accūsātōrum spe pauca dīcam.

3. **Cum** (quom, quum) takes the **subjunctive** when it means *because*, *since*, or *although:*

As, **quae cum ita sint,** *now since these things are so;* **cum mīlites perīculum verērentur,** non audēbant cum hostibus conflīgere, *because the soldiers feared danger,* etc.; **Pyladēs cum sīs,** dīces te esse Oresten? *when* (i.e. although) *you are Pylădes, will you say that you are Orestes?*

1. In early Latin, the **indicative** is more common; and it is found sometimes even in Cicero.

2. **Cum** takes the subjunctive when it makes a kind of **comparison,** or denotes a **contrast,** and may be translated *while on the other hand, whereas.*

4. **Cum,** *when*, takes the **indicative** in the present, futures, and perfect:

As, **cum tacent, clāmant;** sed plūra, **cum ista cognōro; cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit,** alterius Gallōrum factiōnis principes erant Aedui, alterius Sēquani.

Note 1.—Cum takes the **perfect indicative** (or **historical present**) if the action is conceived as a point of time coincident with the main action. (Fischer.)

Note 2.—If *when* means *in* doing, **cum** takes the indicative: as, amīce facis **quom me laudas,** *in praising me.*

Note 3.—Cum takes the indicative when it means *from the time when, since.*

5. **Cum,** *when*, generally takes the **imperfect** and **pluperfect subjunctive**, especially when the time is also the *cause* or *occasion* of the action stated in the principal sentence:

As, **cum mīlites de hostium adventu ēdocērentur,** continuo summo pugnandi ardōre flagrāvērunt; Alexander, **cum interēmisset Clītum,** vix a sēsē manus abstinuit.

1. Sometimes the only reason that can be seen for this subjunctive after **cum temporal** is the **secondary** or **subordinate** character of the temporal clause.

2. Especially in the ante-classical writers and Cicero, **cum** may take an **imperfect indicative,** if there is an imperfect or aorist in the principal sentence.

3. The imperfect, whether in the subjunctive or indicative, is used if the action is conceived as occupying a period of time within which the main action took place. (Fischer.)

4. **Cum** may take a **pluperfect indicative,** when a demonstrative marks

the point of time: as, **tum cum** in Asiā res magnas permulti **āmīserant**, *at the very time when* many persons *had lost* great properties in Asia.

5. **Cum** meaning *as often as* takes the **pluperfect indicative** in Cicero and Caesar, there being an imperfect in the principal sentence. Livy and the later historians use the subjunctive.

215. *CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.*

1. In conditional sentences, the clause containing the *condition* is called the *pro'tăsis*, and that containing the *conclusion* is called the *apo'dŏsis*. The protasis is often introduced by **si**, *if*, **nisi** or **si non**, *unless*, *if not*.

Note 1.—**Nisi** denies a negative supposition; **si non** supposes a negative: as, nēmo fere saltat sōbrius, **nisi forte insānit**, hardly any sober person dances, *unless* perhaps *he is mad* (denying the supposition that he is not mad); **si non quaeret**, nullus dīxeris, *if he shall not ask*, you will say nothing (making the supposition that he will not ask).

Note 2.—The compounds of **si, etsi, etiamsi, tametsi**, are used in conditional clauses with the same moods and tenses as **si** itself.

2. In simple conditions, which imply nothing about the truth or falsity of the supposition made, yet *in form* are stated as *facts*, the **indicative** is often found.

The **apodŏsis**, or following clause, is usually in the **indicative** or **imperative**, but it may be in the **subjunctive** of modest assertion, wish, exhortation, or prohibition:

As, **si hoc dīcis, erras**; parvi **sunt** foris arma, **nisi est** consilium domi; **si nōles** sānus, **curres** hydrōpicus; haud **errāvero, si** a Zēnōne disputātiōnis principium **duxero**; **si occīdi**, recte **fēci**; sed non occīdi; **si** quid in te **peccāvi, ignosce**; **mīrer, si** vāna vestra auctōritas **est**; **si** sciens **fallo**, tum me pessimo lēto **afficias**.

Note 1.—The combinations of **tense** may be as various as the logic of language allows.

Note 2.—In all forms of conditional sentences, **si** is sometimes omitted: as, **rīserit, adrīde**; **dedisses** huic animo par corpus, fēcisset quod optābat, *had you given*.

3. In conditions stated merely as *thought of*, the **subjunctive**, either in the present or perfect, is used both in the protasis and the apodosis:

As, **nec possim, si velim**, nec **velim** fortasse, **si possim**; **si exsistat** hodie ab inferis Lycūrgus, **gaudeat** mūrōrum Spartae ruīnis; **si scieris** aspidem occulte latēre uspiam, improbe **fēceris** nisi monueris alterum ne assideat.

Note 1.—The **time** is either present or future. The present subjunctive is often used of a **future contingency**, and the perfect like a future perfect.

Note 2.—The primary tenses of the subjunctive may be used even in a condition contrary to fact: as, **tu si hic sis, aliter sentias**; but this is simply avoiding to add to the statement of the pure supposition an indication of its quality as false.

Note 3.—The apodosis may be in the indicative; especially in the case of verbs of *ability* or *duty*, or of *est* with *longum, immensum, infīnītum,* or a *gerundive:* as, hi te homines neque **dēbent** adjuvāre si possint, neque **possunt** si velint; **immensum est**, si velim singula referre; si valeant homines, ars tua, Phoebe **jacet** (here the *certainty* is emphasized).

Note 4.—The **second person singular** of the **subjunctive** represents an **indefinite** subject, **you** being used in a lively way for **some one, any one.**

4. In conditions stated as *contrary to fact*, both in protasis and apodosis the **imperfect subjunctive** is used of present or general time, and the **pluperfect subjunctive** of past time:

As, pācem non **peterem, nisi** ūtilem **crēderem,** *I would not seek peace, if I did not believe it advantageous* (the supposition that I did *not* believe it advantageous is contrary to the fact); **si** Metelli fidei **diffīsus essem,** jūdicem eum non **retinuissem**; ulla **si** tibi poena **nocuisset** unquam, **crēderem**; consilium, ratio, sententia **nisi essent** in senibus, non summum consilium majōres nostri **appellassent** senātum.

1. The imperfect is sometimes found of **past time,** by a liveliness of speech similar to that in the use of the **historical present.**

2. The imperfect is sometimes used in conditional sentences of **continued** action in the past.

3. The **indicative** is sometimes found where either the condition or the conclusion is stated in a **lively** manner as if a fact: as, Antōni gladios **potuit contemnere,** si sic omnia dixisset, he *really could* have despised; **lābēbar** longius, nisi me retinuissem; pons sublicius iter paene hostibus **dedit,** ni ūnus vir fuisset, Horātius Cocles. The last two examples may be explained by supplying an apodosis for the following conditional clause: I was slipping, *and should have fallen,* had I not checked myself; almost gave a way, *and would have given it.*

4. When the apodosis itself depends upon a clause requiring to be followed by the subjunctive, instead of the pluperfect subjunctive the periphrastic perfect subjunctive is used.

5. The periphrastic pluperfect subjunctive is sometimes found in a dependent question, after a secondary tense.

216. *MIXED CONDITIONAL CONSTRUCTIONS.*

In Latin, as in all other cultivated tongues, various **unusual combinations** of moods and tenses in the protăsis and apodŏsis sometimes occur, the propriety of which is shown in each instance by *general principles* of language.

217. *OTHER WAYS OF DENOTING CONDITIONS.*

1. A condition may be denoted by a participle, an adjective, or an ablative absolute, or be merely implied in the context:

As, ūno proelio **victus** (= si victus esset) Alexander bello victus esset; animi magnitūdo, **remōtā commūnitāte hūmānā** (= si remōta sit commūnitas) feritas sit quaedam et immānitas; nēmo **sine spe immortālitātis** (= nisi spes esset) se pro pătriā offerret ad mortem; **illīus impulsu** (= si ab illo impulsa essent) moenia mōta forent.

a. So sometimes the apodosis:

As, vir, nisi in līberā cīvitāte nātus esset, **memorābilis**, a man (*who would be*) *worthy of renown*, had he not been born in a free state.

2. A concessive clause may serve as a condition:

As, **ut** ratiōnem Plato nullam **afferret**, ipsā auctōritāte me frangeret, *even if Plato adduced no argument.*

3. **Dum, modo, dummodo,** with or without **ne**, *if only*, *if only not*, take the subjunctive.

4. A **question**, or an **imperative**, may serve as a condition.

5. Clauses introduced by **temporal** or **local adverbs** are sometimes equivalent to conditional clauses.

218. *GNOMIC SUBJUNCTIVE.*

The subjunctive, generally in the second person singular, is often used in **general maxims**: as, **bŏnus segnior fit ubi nĕglegas,** *a good man's energy declines when you neglect him.*

219. *SUPPRESSED PROTASIS.*

A condition is sometimes *not expressed:*

As, hoc tantum bellum **quis** umquam **arbitrārētur** ūno anno confici posse, *who would think?* id **velim** mihi ignoscas, *I should like;* libenter omnibus omnīs opes **concesserim,** *I would grant.*

1. The unexpressed condition may be *if occasion arose, if a trial were made, if I* (or other person) *were there, were to* do what the expressed verb implies, and the like.

2. Cases of this kind may often be explained more simply as instances of the subjunctive's implying directly *willingness* or *inclination.*

3. The second person singular is used where the subject is indefinite (*you* meaning *any one*):

As, maesti, **crēderes** victos, redeunt, *you would believe them conquered.*

220. *OMITTED APODOSIS IN SENTENCES OF COMPARISON.*

With quasi, ut si, velut si, ac si, tamquam si, sīcuti, ceu, etc., the verb of the apodosis is often omitted:

As, ita honōres petunt, **quasi honeste vīxerint,** *as if they led honorable lives*, i. e., *as* they would seek them, *if they led*, etc.

1. With **tamquam** and **velut**, the **si** also is sometimes omitted.

2. The omitted verb is a hypothetical repetition of the verb of the principal sentence.

3. There is a similar omission when **si** is used in **wishes** (§ **203, 3**).

221. *RELATIVES IN THE PROTASIS.*

The protăsis in a conditional sentence may be introduced by a relative: as, **qui** (= si quis) **vidēret** equum Trojānum intrōductum, urbem captam dīceret; haec **qui videat,** nonne **cōgātur** confitēri deos esse, *if any one sees this, will he not be compelled?*

1. The same mood and tense are used as in ordinary conditional sentences.

222. *RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.*

A relative clause denoting a *purpose*, and equivalent to ut with a personal or demonstrative pronoun, takes the subjunctive:

As, Clūsīni lēgātos Rōmam **qui auxilium a senātu peterent** mīsēre, *to seek aid from the senate* (**qui** = **ut** ii, *that they should seek aid*); homini nātūra addidit ratiōnem, **quā regerentur animi appetītus,** *that by it the passions of the soul might be governed.*

Note 1.—A relative clause denoting a *destination* takes the subjunctive: as, Germāni neque Druīdes habent, **qui rēbus dīvīnis praesint,** *to preside over their religious ceremonies.*

Note 2.—A relative clause may be introduced by a **relative particle** (as, **ubi, quo, unde**), as well as by a relative pronoun.

223. *RELATIVE CLAUSES DEFINING A QUALITY.*

1. A relative clause defining a quality of an antecedent, takes the subjunctive:

As, L. Pīnārius erat vir ācer et **qui** nihil in fide Siculōrum **repōneret,** *one who trusted nothing*, etc.; Syrācūsāni, homines perīti, **qui** etiam occulta suspicāri **possent,** etc., *such as could.*

Note 1.—Such clauses are similar to clauses of **result, qui** being equivalent to **tālis ut is.**

Note 2.—The antecedent is frequently a **demonstrative**, as **is, tālis, tantus, tam,** etc.: as, **ea** est Rōmāna gens **quae** victa quiescere **nesciat**; innocentia est affectio **tālis** animi **quae noceat** nēmini; quis potest esse **tam** āversus a vēro **qui neget**, etc.

2. The adjectives **dignus, indignus, idōneus, aptus, sōlus, ūnus, prīmus, ultimus,** are often followed by a relative with the subjunctive completing their meaning:

As, **digna** res est **quam** diu **consīderēmus**, *the matter is worthy of our long consideration;* **sōla** est **in quā** merito **culpētur** pecūniae cupiditas, *the only thing in which he can be* rightly *blamed.*

Note.—The **infinitive** after adjectives of this kind is frequent in poets, but rare in prose: as, **legi dignus,** *worthy of being read.* **Ut** with the **subjunctive** is sometimes found.

3. **Indefinite** and **interrogative pronouns**, and **general negatives**, are defined by relative clauses with the subjunctive:

As, est **aliquid quod** non **oporteat**; **quis** est **qui** ūtilia **fugiat**? **nēmo** est qui haud **intellegat**; **nihil** est **quod** tam miseros **faciat** quam impietas et scelus.

1. In a **negative relative clause**, depending on a negative or interrogative clause, **qui non** (qui nunquam, qui nusquam) may be used, or **quin** for **qui non**: as, nec quisquam rēx Persārum potest esse, **qui non** ante Magōrum disciplīnam **percēperit**; nihil est **quin** (= quod non) male narrando **possit** dēprāvāri; nullum intermīsi diem **quin** (= quo non) **scrīberem**, *without writing.*

2. **Quin** rarely stands for any case except the **nominative** or **ablative**; but exceptions occur: as, nego ullum vas fuisse, **quin** (= quod non) Verres **conquīsierit**.

4. **Indefinite general expressions** are defined by a relative clause with the subjunctive:

As, **sunt** qui discessum animi a corpore **putent** esse mortem, *there are those who think,* etc.; **pauciōres** viri **reperti sunt** qui suas cupiditātes quam qui hostium cōpias **vincerent**.

Note.—Such expressions are **est qui, sunt qui, reperītur qui; habeo, invenio, reperio qui; exstitit qui.**

5. A relative clause after a **comparative with quam** takes the subjunctive:

As, Campāni **mājōra** delīquerant **quam quibus** ignosci **posset**, *greater offences than could be pardoned.*

Note.—**Quam ut** is also found, and even **quam** alone, without a relative: as, **mājor** sum **quam ut** mancipium **sim** mei corporis, I am *too great to be* the slave of my body.

6. Relative clauses **restricting** a general assertion may take the subjunctive:

As, ex ōrātōribus Atticis antīquissimi sunt, **quōrum quidem** scripta **constent**, Periclēs et Alcibiadēs, *of those at least whose writings are known;* Epicūrus se ūnus, **quod sciam**, sapientem profitēri est ausus, *as far as I know.*

1. This subjunctive is used especially with **qui quidem, qui modo.**

224. *QUI MEANING BECAUSE HE.*

A relative clause expressing the **reason** of the leading proposition takes the subjunctive:

As, miseret tui me, **qui** hunc tantum hominem **facias** inimīcum tibi, *because you make;* O fortūnāte adulescens, **qui** tuae virtūtis Homērum praecōnem **invēneris**, *in that you have found.*

Note 1.—The assigning of the reason is strengthened by using **utpote qui, ut qui,** or **praesertim qui,** with the subjunctive. **Quippe qui** takes the subjunctive, or in some writers, as Sallust and Livy, the indicative.

Note 2.—The **indicative** is common, particularly in old Latin.

Note 3.—The relative pronoun followed by **quia** or **quoniam** generally takes the **indicative.**

225. *QUI MEANING ALTHOUGH HE.*

Qui equivalent to *although* with a personal or demonstrative pronoun takes the subjunctive:

As, nosmet ipsi, **qui** Lycūrgei a principio **fuissēmus**, quotīdie dēmītigāmur, *though we had been* strict as Lycurgus.

1. On the **indicative** in such clauses, see § **204, 1.**

226. *SUBJUNCTIVE DEPENDENT ON ANOTHER SUBJUNCTIVE OR AN INFINITIVE.*

A relative clause forming an **essential part** of a sentence whose verb is in the **subjunctive** or the **infinitive**, takes the subjunctive:

As, erat in Hortensio memoria tanta ut, **quae** sēcum **commentātus esset**, ea sine scripto verbis eisdem **redderet, quibus cōgitāvisset;** non is sum, qui, quicquid vidētur, tāle dīcam **esse, quāle videātur;** spem afferunt **posse animos, cum** e corporibus **excēsserint**, in caelum pervenīre.

Note 1.—If a **fact** is to be stated **as such**, the **indicative** must be used. In many cases it seems indifferent whether the indicative or subjunctive be chosen.

Note 2.—The incorporated clause may be introduced by a relative adverb or conjunction, as well as by a pronoun.

227. *RELATIVES WITH THE INDICATIVE.*

In any of the uses of the relative, after affirmative expressions, the **indicative** may be found when a **fact** is stated or emphasized, rather than a quality or a thought.

1. Thus the indicative may be used in simple definitions of existing things or persons or classes: as, Sp. Thorius, **is qui** agrum publicum lēge vectīgāli **levāvit**; eae artes, **quas qui tenent** ērudīti appellantur; **utrum** tibi commodum **est**, ēlige; virtus est **ūna quae** nunquam vi ullā labefactāri **potest**; **sunt multi qui ēripiunt** aliis quod aliis largiantur; sunt qui non habeant, **est qui non cūrat** habēre, *there is one* whom I have in mind (perhaps the poet himself), *who certainly does not care* to have; Catōnem vēro quis nostrōrum ōrātōrum, **qui quidem nunc sunt**, legit?

228. *ORATIO OBLIQUA.*

Note.—When a reported statement, question, or supposition is dependent upon such a verb as **said**, or some similar expression, in such a way as to change any of the pronouns, cases, moods, or tenses used by the original speaker, the narrative is called **indirect**, or **ōrātio oblīqua.**

In **ōrātio recta**, or direct narration, on the contrary, the **very words** of the speaker or writer are quoted.

1. In ōrātio oblīqua *principal clauses* take the **infinitive**, generally with a **subject-accusative**; *dependent clauses* take the **subjunctive**:

As, Antōnius docet, **artem** eārum rērum **esse, quae sciantur**; ōrātōris autem omnem **actiōnem** opīniōnibus, non scientiā, **continēri**; **quia** et apud eos **dīcat, qui nesciant,** et ipse **dīcat, quod nesciat.**

In **ōrātio recta** we should have: ars eārum rērum est, quae sciuntur; ōrātōris autem omnis actio opīniōnibus, non scientiā, continētur; nam et apud eos dīcit, qui nesciunt, et ea dīcit, quae nescit ipse.

1. Dependent clauses are chiefly **relative**, or introduced by **si, cum, dum, quod,** or **quia.**

2. Occasionally **short relative clauses** are attracted into the **infinitive.** Those relative sentences in which **qui** = **et is** or **nam is, quum** = **et tum,** etc., usually have the infinitive.

3. **Dum** is sometimes found with the **indicative,** especially in the poets: as, dic hospes Spartae nos te hic vīdisse jacentes, **dum** sanctis patriae lēgibus **obsequimur.**

2. The **imperative** in *oratio recta* becomes the **imperfect subjunctive** in **ōrātio oblīqua**:

As, fidem Pompēii implōrārent: **praestāret** quod recēpisset, *calling on* him to *make good* the promise he had made; in *oratio recta*, **praesta** quod recēpisti.

1. But the **present** and **perfect subjunctive** are sometimes found. (See § **228, 9.**)

3. **Questions** to which *an answer* is expected, are put in the **subjunctive** in **ōrātio oblīqua**:

As, Vēios jam fore in potestāte populi Rōmāni: **quid** de praedā faciendum **censērent**? [Camillus reported] that Veii would soon be in the power of the Roman people, [and asked] *what they thought* should be done with the booty; in *oratio recta*, **quid** de praedā faciendum **censētis**?

4. **Mere** *rhetorical* questions are generally treated as belonging to the *principal clause*, and are put in the **infinitive** in **ōrātio oblīqua**:

As, **quid esse** turpius quam auctōre hoste capere consilium? [the military tribunes asked indignantly,] *what could be* baser than to shape one's plans by an enemy's advice? in *oratio recta*, **quid est turpius**?

5. When an **indicative** is found in **ōrātio oblīqua**, it gives an *assertion of the narrator*, not of the person whose speech is reported:

As, Caesar per explōrātōres certior factus est, ex eā parte vīci **quam** Gallis **concesserat**, omnes discessisse, Caesar was informed through scouts that all had retired from that part of the town *which he had granted* to the Gauls. **Quam Gallis concesserat** is Caesar's explanation for his readers. Had it been *part of what the scouts said*, **concessisset** would have been used.

6. The **imperfect** and **pluperfect subjunctive**, in the apodosis to a conditional sentence in *oratio recta*, are in *oratio obliqua* expressed in the **active** voice by the future participle with **fuisse**: in the **passive** by the periphrase **futūrum fuisse ut.** The future participle with **esse** is used also for the **present** (and sometimes for the **imperfect**) **subjunctive active**; and **fore** or **futūrum esse ut** for the **present** (and sometimes for the **imperfect**) **subjunctive passive.**

7. The ordinary **perfect infinitive** is sometimes found, representing the pluperfect subjunctive of the oratio recta, in the same way as the indicative is sometimes used for the subjunctive in independent sentences.

8. The **tenses** of the infinitive are **present**, **perfect**, or **future**, according as the time would have been **present**, **past**, or **future** in the **ōrātio recta.**

9. The **tenses of the subjunctive** are usually the **imperfect** and the **pluperfect**, especially in commands or questions; but the **present and perfect** are sometimes used, especially if the verb on which the whole indirect narration depends is in the present.

10. The two methods of reporting speech are illustrated in the following extract:

ORATIO RECTA.

Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis **faciet**, in eam partem **ibunt** atque ibi **erunt** Helvetii, ubi **tu** eos **constitueris** atque esse **volueris**; sin bello persequi **perseverabis**, **reminiscitor** et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus **es**, cum ii qui flumen **transierant** suis auxilium ferre non **poterant**, ne ob eam rem aut **tuae** magnopere virtuti **tribueris** aut **nos** **despexeris**. **Nos** ita a patribus majoribusque **nostris** **didicimus**, ut magis virtute, quam dolo **contendamus** aut insidiis **nitamur**. Quare ne **commiseris** ut **hic** locus ubi **constitimus** ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen **capiat** aut memoriam **prodat**.

ORATIO OBLIQUA.

(Is ita cum Caesare egit): Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis **faceret**, in eam partem **ituros** atque ibi **futuros** **Helvetios**, ubi eos **Caesar** **constituisset** atque esse **voluisset**: sin bello persequi **perseveraret**, **reminisceretur** et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus **esset**, cum ii qui flumen **transissent** suis auxilium ferre non **possent**, ne ob eam rem aut **suae** magnopere virtuti **tribueret** aut **ipsos** **despiceret**: **se** ita a patribus majoribusque **suis** **didicisse**, ut magis virtute, quam dolo **contenderent** aut insidiis **niterentur**. Quare ne **committeret** ut **is** locus ubi **constitissent** ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen **caperet** aut memoriam **proderet**.

229. *PRONOUNS IN ORATIO OBLIQUA.*

Instead of pronouns of the first and second persons, **se**, **suus**, **ipse**, **is**, and **ille** are used in *oratio obliqua*. **Se** and **suus** refer to the subject of the verb on which the narrative depends, unless another subject is introduced, in which case the reference is to be determined by the general sense.

1. **Nos** and **noster** are sometimes used by Caesar of the Roman people or Roman army generally.

2. **Quisque, quisquam, quis,** with the reflexive pronoun, sometimes show that the reflexive is to be referred to the subject of the clause in which it stands.

3. **Ipse**, by agreeing with the subject of a clause in which there is a reflexive pronoun, shows the reference of that pronoun to the subject of the clause, rather than to the principal subject: as, nātūra movet infantem ut **se ipse dīligat**. (Without **ipse**, **se** might have been referred to **nātūra**.)

4. **Ipse** may stand for **se** when **antithetic** to some other word (a noun, **suus**, or another pronoun); it then refers to the **principal subject**: as, pertimuērunt ne ab **ipsis** desciseret et cum **suis** in grātiam redīret, the Lacedaemonians feared that he would withdraw from *themselves*, and return into favor with *his own* countrymen.

5. **Hic** and **iste** are rarely used in **oratio obliqua**.

6. Instances are found of **is**, **ejus**, where the ordinary rules would require **se** or **suus**.

230. *VIRTUAL ORATIO OBLIQUA.*

A clause expressing the **thoughts, words**, or **alleged reasons** of *another than the writer*, takes the **subjunctive**.

1. Indirect statements of **one's own former thoughts or words** may take the constructions of the **ōrātio oblīqua**.

2. While special rules are convenient for use, **indirect questions**, **ōrātio oblīqua**, and **petītio oblīqua**, may all be referred to the **same principle**.

Note.—The term **petītio oblīqua** is applied to dependent constructions following verbs of **wishing, commanding, permitting, caring, striving, fearing**, and the like.

231. *INDIRECT QUESTIONS.*

1. Indirect questions take the subjunctive:

As, ne ūtile quidem est scīre, **quid futūrum sit**, it is not even advantageous to know *what is to be in the future;* **quālis sit animus**, ipse animus nescit; nātūra dēclārat **quid velit**.

Note 1.—An indirect question is a *dependent clause* introduced by an *interrogative pronoun* or *particle*, and depending on some other verb or proposition.

Note 2.—All the words which are used in direct questions with the indicative take in dependent interrogative clauses the subjunctive; as, **quis, quae, quid; qui, quae, quod; quot, quālis, quantus, quam, quando, ubi, unde, quāre, cur, uter, quo, quōmodo, quemadmodum, utrum, an, ne** (enclitic), **num**. Sometimes also **si**.

2. Sometimes in the older writers, and occasionally in Horace and Vergil, an **indicative** is found in indirect questions: as, **adspice ut antrum silvestris rāris sparsit labrusca racēmis**, *see how the wild labrusca has sprinkled the cave with scattered grapes.*

3. An interrogative clause sometimes accompanies the phrase **quid ais**,

the imperatives **dic**, **vide**, **quaere**, **cedo**, or the indicative **quaeso**, *without* being dependent on them, and hence has its verb in the indicative.

4. After **nescio quis**, **nescio quid**, **nescio qui**, **nescio quod**, **nescio quōmodo**, **mīrum quam**, **mīrum quantum**, **nimium quantum**, and some similar expressions, which have come to express a single idea, the **indicative** is used, as it would be after **aliquis**, etc. But **dubito an**, **nescio an**, **haud scio an**, are of course followed by the subjunctive.

232. *CAUSAL CLAUSES.*

Causal conjunctions, *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, *quando*, take the **indicative** when the writer states the cause or occasion as a **fact**, on *his own* responsibility, but the **subjunctive** if the reason is given as believed or stated by *another party.*

In other words: **Causal conjunctions** take the **indicative** in **direct discourse**, the **subjunctive** in **indirect** (or virtually indirect):

As, laudo te, **quod** rem tam bene **gessisti**, *that you have*, as I see, *managed*, etc.; Aristīdes expulsus est patriā, **quod praeter modum justus esset**, *because*, as the people said, *he was too just;* Themistoclēs noctu ambulābat, **quod somnum capere non posset**, *because*, as he alleged, *he could not sleep.*

1. The **subjunctive** sometimes intimates that the reason given is not the true reason: especially with **non quod**, or **non quo**; after which the true reason is introduced by **sed quod** or **sed quia** with the **indicative**.

2. A writer or speaker may treat **his own** opinion as if it were that of **another** man, and thus use the subjunctive: intimating that at a certain time this was his opinion, without showing what his opinion now is (§ **230**, **1**).

3. **Quod** takes the **subjunctive** of verbs meaning to **say** or **think**, when logically not these verbs, but the verbs **depending** upon them should have been in that mood: as, rediit, **quod** se oblītum nescio quid **dīceret** (= quod oblītus esset, or, quod se oblītum esse dīcēbat); multi praetōres quaestōres et lēgātos suos de prōvinciā dēcēdere jussērunt, **quod** eōrum culpā se minus commode audīre **arbitrārentur**. So with **nego**, **puto**, etc.

4. After verbs denoting a **feeling** of pain or joy, admiration, thanks, complaint, **quod** may be used, or, *more often*, the accusative and infinitive; after verbs denoting the **expression** of such feelings, **quod** is more often used than the accusative and infinitive. The **mood** after **quod** is determined by general rules.

5. **Quod** is used in clauses explaining a demonstrative pronoun: as, contentus **eo**, **quod** ratio plēbēiōrum habita esset, *content with this, that regard had been had, etc.*

233. *QUOD MEANING THE FACT THAT.*

Quod is used with the **indicative** (or subjunctive in oratio oblīqua) to mean *the fact that*, or *as regards the fact that.*

Utile est patrem adisse means *the presence of the father is useful*, without implying whether he is present or not; ūtile est, **quod pater adest,** signifies the father is present, and his presence is useful.

Quod scrībis, te ad me ventūrum, ego te istic esse volo, *as regards your writing* that you will come to see me, I wish you to remain where you are. **Quid quod** eādem mente res dissimillimas comprendimus? *what of the fact that,* etc. Similarly **nisi quod,** *with the exception that.*

SEQUENCE OF TENSES IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

234. The **present** and **perfect** are used in sentences dependent on **primary tenses**; the **imperfect, aorist,** and **pluperfect,** in sentences dependent on **secondary tenses.**

In other words: on **primary tenses (§ 66, 7) primary tenses** follow; on **secondary tenses, secondary.**

1. The **historical present** may be followed either by primary or by secondary tenses. In the former case the *form* governs, in the latter (which is more common), the *meaning:* as, **rogat** Rubrium ut quos ei commodum sit **invītet;** servis suis Rubrius ut januam **clauderent imperat.**

2. Even in sentences dependent on a secondary tense, the **present** is used of such actions as belong to the present time only: as, Siciliam ita **vexāvit,** ut ea restitui in antīquum statum nullo modo **possit,** *he did such damage to Sicily,* that it *cannot be* restored.

3. A secondary tense may be used in the statement of a **general truth,** if the law of sequence requires, although the **present** is preferred in English.

4. The true **perfect,** though a primary tense, is sometimes followed by secondary tenses.

5. The perfect is used in consecutive sentences of a result completed in the present time only; and the historical perfect, or aorist, of an event simply regarded as in past time, without reference to its being contemporaneous or prior to other past events: as, *a.* Aemilius Paullus tantum in aerārium pecūniae invexit ut unīus imperātōris praeda fīnem **attulerit** tribūtōrum, *has put* an end; *b.* tantum opes crēverant, ut ne morte quidem Aenēae mōvēre arma Etrūsci **ausi sint,** *did the Etrurians dare.* Cicero rarely uses this aorist subjunctive; Nepos often.

6. Clauses following an accusative with the infinitive are governed in tense by the **leading verb** on which the accusative itself depends.

7. After the primary tenses, the **future** is represented by the **present subjunctive,** the **future perfect** by the **perfect subjunctive;** after secondary tenses, the **future** is represented by the **imperfect,** the **future perfect** by the **pluperfect.** But when future time is to be strongly marked, the **active periphrastic conjugation** is used (i. e., part. in **-rus** with **sim** or **essem**).

8. When the **pluperfect subjunctive** in the **apodosis** of a conditional sentence is subordinated, so as to form a clause of **result** or an **indirect question**, the **periphrastic perfect subjunctive** takes its place.

The Infinitive.

235. The Infinitive is an indeclinable verbal noun: but it may have a subject or object; it contains the notion of time; it governs the case of its verb; and it is modified by adverbs, not by adjectives.

236. *INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT, PREDICATE, OR APPOSITIVE.*

The infinitive, with or without a subject-accusative, may be the *subject* or *predicate* of a finite verb, or used as an *appositive:*

As, **turpe est fugere,** *to fly is disgraceful;* **vīvere est cōgitāre,** *living is thinking;* **vidētur sapiens esse,** *he seems to be wise;* **istuc ipsum, non esse cum fueris, miserrimum puto,** I think *this very thing* most wretched, *not to be when you have been.*

1. The **infinitive as subject** is found chiefly with **esse** and **impersonal verbs.**

237. *INFINITIVE AS OBJECT OF A VERB.*

The infinitive, with or without a subject-accusative, may be the *object* of a verb:

As, **vincere scis, Hannibal; victōriā ūti nescis,** *you know* how *to win a victory, Hannibal, you do not know* how *to use it;* **scio Caesarem abisse victōrem,** *I know that Caesar came off victorious.*

238. *INFINITIVE WITH A SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE.*

The infinitive with a subject-accusative is governed by verbs signifying *to feel, think, know, say,* and the like:

As, **sentīmus nivem esse albam,** *we perceive by our senses that snow is white;* **crēdunt se neglegi,** *they believe that they are neglected;* **scio plērosque scripsisse,** *I know that most writers have recorded;* **nuntiat rēgi adversārios ejus in fugā esse,** *he informs the king that his enemies are in flight.*

Note 1.—Such verbs are called *verba sentiendi et dēclārandi.* The principal verbs of this kind are **audio, video, sentio, animadverto, cognosco, intellego, percipio, disco, scio, crēdo, arbitror, puto, opīnor, dūco, statuo, memini, recordor, oblīviscor; dīco, trādo, prōdo, scrībo, refero, nuntio, confirmo, nego, ostendo, dēmonstro, perhibeo, prōmitto, polliceor, spondeo,** and some others.

Note 2.—For the accusative and infinitive after verbs of **joy, pain,** etc., see § **232, 4.**

Note 3.—Where a clause containing an accusative with an infinitive is followed by a relative clause in which the **same verb** is understood, the subject of the latter clause is in the infinitive: as, **Platōnem** ferunt **censisse** idem, quod **Pȳthagoram** (sc. sensisse). So in clauses introduced by **quam** after a comparative.

a. Phrases equivalent to verbs, like **certior factus est, auctor est, aliquem spes tenet, spem affero,** etc., in like manner take the accusative and infinitive.

239. The accusative with the infinitive is the **subject** of the verb *sum* with a predicate, or of an impersonal verb:

As, **accūsātōres multos esse** in cīvitāte **ūtile est,** *it is advantageous that there should be many accusers* in a state; **lēgem brevem esse oportet,** *a law ought to be brief;* **facinus est cīvem vincīri.**

1. The subject cannot be expressed with the infinitive when it is an **indefinite** person; hence we say **ignoscere** amīco **hūmānum est,** *to forgive* a friend *is becoming in a man;* **facinus est vincīre** cīvem Rōmānum, *to bind* a Roman citizen *is a crime.*

2. The verbs **sum,** and those denoting *to appear, to be considered, to be called,* require the predicate, if declinable, to agree with the unexpressed subject in the accusative: as, **contentum** suis rēbus **esse** maximae **sunt** divitiae; magnis in laudibus tōtā ferē **fuit** Graeciā **victōrem Olympiae citāri; fidēlem esse** in minimo magnum **est;** non **esse emācem** vectīgal **est.**

3. The impersonals **licet, decet, oportet, opus est, necesse est,** are joined with the **infinitive active** *alone,* or with an **accusative with the infinitive** in the **passive:** as, ex malis **ēligere** minima **oportet;** ex malis **ēligi minima oportet.**

240. The accusative with the infinitive stands by itself in *exclamations,* and in indignant questions:

As, **te** nunc, mea Terentia, sic **vexāri, idque fieri** meā culpā, *for thee* now, my dear Terentia, *to be in such distress! and that this should happen* by my fault! **mēne** incepto **dēsistere** victam, *I, vanquished, give up* what I have undertaken?

1. In these cases the accusative with the infinitive is the object of some unexpressed thought or feeling.

2. **Ut** with the subjunctive is also used in exclamatory questions: as, victamne **ut** quisquam victrīci patriae **praeferat,** *that any one should prefer* a conquered to a victorious country?

241. *INFINITIVE AFTER CAN, WISH, OUGHT, AM ACCUSTOMED, ETC.*

Verbs which require to be followed by a **second verb** with the **same subject** govern the **infinitive** of that second verb:

As, **possum** (or **volo, audeo, dēbeo, soleo,** etc.) **hanc rem facere**; **vincere scis,** Hannibal; victōriā **ūti nescis**; non **dēstitit monēre**; **institit sequi**; **mātūrat proficisci**; **mitte ōrāre**; **ōdi peccāre**; Antium me **recipere cōgito**; nēmo alteri **concēdere in animum indūcēbat.**

1. Such are verbs signifying **will, power, duty, purpose, custom, beginning, continuance, ending, neglect,** etc.; and in the poets other verbs admitting a similar meaning **figuratively**; also **phrases** of similar purport: as, **habeo in animo, in animo est, consilium est, consilium cēpi, certum est, animum** (or **in animum**) **indūxi,** etc.

2. Verbs denoting a determined **purpose** are found also with **ut.**

3. When these verbs are joined with **esse, habēri, jūdicāri, vidēri,** and the like, the **predicate** is put in the **nominative**: as, **solet tristis vidēri; aude sapiens esse; merētur (scit, didicit) līber esse.**

4. **Volo, nōlo, mālo, cupio, opto, studeo,** have a twofold construction: the infinitive **without** a subject-accusative is used after them when the subject remains the same; and when they are followed by **esse, habēri, jūdicāri, vidēri,** etc., the predicate is in the nominative: but the **accusative with the infinitive** is used when the **subject is changed,** or when the **pronoun** of the same person is repeated: as, **volo ērudītus fieri; volo me ērudītum fieri; volo te ērudītum fieri; princeps esse māluit quam vidēri; principem se esse māluit quam vidēri.**

5. The use of the nominative with the infinitive after other *verba sentiendi et declarandi* (§ **238, n. 1**) is very rare and poetical: as, **vir bonus et sapiens dignis ait esse parātus.**

6. Vergil, in imitation of the Greek idiom, uses a participle in one passage instead of an accusative with the infinitive: **sensit medios dēlapsus in hostes,** instead of **se dēlapsum esse.**

242. *INFINITIVE, ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE, OR UT WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE.*

1. Verbs denoting **willingness, unwillingness, permission,** and **necessity,** commonly take the **infinitive** or the **accusative** with the infinitive, but sometimes the **subjunctive.**

2. **Volo** takes after it the accusative with the infinitive passive. With the perfect infinitive, **esse** is often omitted: as, **hoc factum volo.**

3. **Volo ut** is more rare, but is used to express a strong emphasis. **Mālo** takes either **ut** or the **infinitive.**

4. **Patior** and **sino** are generally followed by the **accusative and infini-**

tive, sometimes by **ut** with the subjunctive; **opto, concēdo, permitto,** may have either the infinitive or **ut**; **posco, postulo, flāgito, cōgo,** more frequently **ut.**

5. Verbs of **resolving** and **endeavoring** are followed by **ut** or **ne** when the dependent clause has a subject of its own; when the same subject remains, they more often have an infinitive.

6. Verbs of **asking, advising, exhorting, persuading,** are followed by **ut** or **ne.** They take the infinitive only exceptionally.

7. **Jubeo** and **vĕto** take generally the accusative with the infinitive, or the infinitive alone, if the subject is a **general word or easily understood**; sometimes the subjunctive with (or rarely without) **ut** or **ne**: as, **eos suum advĕntum exspectāre jussit; infandum jubes renovāre dolōrem; jussit ut nāves Euboeam peterent; jube mihi dēnuo respondeat; avārum vĕto te fieri; dēspērātis Hippocratēs vĕtat adhibēre medicīnam. Impĕro,** besides the subjunctive, takes an **infinitive** in early and post-Augustan Latin, but only the **passive** infinitive in Cicero and Caesar.

8. **Many Latin verbs** which we might suppose would take the accusative with the infinitive, take **ut** with the subjunctive, either exclusively, or admit the construction of the accusative with the infinitive besides.

Observation of the **usage** of classic writers, and reference to lexicons for the tyro, will gradually teach the constructions usual with any particular verb.

243. *HISTORIC INFINITIVE.*

The infinitive is sometimes used with a nominative, when we might expect the imperfect indicative:

As, **pars cēdere, alii insequi; neque signa neque ordines observāre; ubi quemque perīculum cēperat, ibi resistere ac prōpulsāri; arma, tēla, equi, viri, hostes, cīves permixti; nihil consilio neque imperio agi; fors omnia regere,** *some were retiring, others pursuing; keeping neither to their standards nor their ranks; where peril encountered each man, there was he resisting and repelling; arms, darts, steeds, men, foes, countrymen intermingled; nothing was proceeding by counsel or command; chance directed everything.*

1. This is an *absolute* use of the infinitive. In **time** it is not always **past**, but sometimes **present** or **general.**

2. The historic infinitive is frequent in **animated description.** Only the present **tense** is used, except in praeteritives: as, **ōdisse, meminisse.**

244. *SPECIAL USES OF THE INFINITIVE.*

1. The poets sometimes use the infinitive after verbs to express **purpose** or **destination**: as, **pecus ēgit altos vīsere montes; frūges consūmere nāti; lōrīcam dōnat habēre viro.**

2. The infinitive sometimes follows **nouns**: as, **tempus est jam mājōra cōnāri.**

3. In poetry and later prose the infinitive sometimes follows adjectives: as, **cantāre perīti; niveus vidēri.**

4. The infinitive is very rarely dependent on prepositions: as, **multum interest inter dare et accipere.**

245. *PERSONAL CONSTRUCTION OF PASSIVES FOR IMPERSONAL.*

Instead of an impersonal passive of a verb of *saying, relating, thinking, believing, finding, perceiving, commanding,* or *forbidding,* or of the verb *vidēri,* followed by an accusative with the infinitive, a **personal** construction is preferred, what would be the accusative being made the subject of the passive verb, and the infinitive subjoined: as, **lectitāvisse** Platōnem **Dēmosthenēs dīcitur,** *it is said that Demosthenes read* Plato *eagerly;* malum **mihi vidētur esse mors,** *it seems to me that death is* an evil; **vidēris mihi** satis bene **attendere,** *it seems to me that you are* sufficiently *heedful.*

1. The personal form instead of the impersonal is sometimes found also in **scrībor, dēmonstror, audior, intellegor,** and other verbs. It is the regular construction with **jubeor, vētor,** and **videor.** Poets and later writers extend this usage widely.

2. **Videor** has a similar personal use in a parenthesis with **ut**: as, **ut mihi vidēbar,** *as it seemed to me.*

3. With verbs of *saying* and *thinking,* the **impersonal** form is more usual in the **compound tenses**: as, **trāditum est Homērum** caecum **fuisse.**

246. *TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.*

The Tenses in the Infinitive represent time as **present, past,** or **future,** *relatively to the time of the principal verb* in the clause.

1. The perfect infinitive is found as the object of a verb:

a. When it is important to speak of the action or event as already done or ready: as, **non potest non optasse,** she cannot *revoke the wish* already made; but **non potuit non optare,** she *could not help wishing;* **mālui dīxisse,** *I preferred to have done with speaking,* i.e., to say no more; but **mālui dīcere,** *I preferred speaking;* **dēbeo vīcisse,** *I ought to be pronounced winner.*

b. .When the perfect is used like the Greek aorist. This conveys no idea of time, either as past or as continuing, but denotes a simple occurrence of the action. It is found in the oldest Latin and in Plautus and Terence, and was revived subsequently under Greek influence, as in Livy and the Augustan poets. It is not found in Caesar, Cicero, Sallust, and Tacitus.

Verg.: magnum si pectore possit **excussisse** deum; Horat.: sunt qui nōlint **tetigisse.**

2. But commentators have sometimes rashly called perfects infinitive aoristic, when they are *true perfects* and denote completed past time.

3. English and Latin idiom differ in the **tense** of the infinitive after verbs denoting **power, duty, permission.** In Latin the **time** is marked by the verb **in the indicative,** and the **present infinitive** is used, unless the action is to be stated as **over** before the time to which the leading verb refers: as, **mihi īre licet,** *I may go;* **mihi īre licuit,** *I might have gone;* **facere dēbeo,** *I ought to do it;* **facere dēbui,** *I ought to have done it.*

4. **Memini** is used with the **present** (and sometimes the perfect) **infinitive** of events at which the speaker himself was present: as, **memini Pamphylum mihi narrāre,** *I remember Pamphylus's telling me.* So sometimes after such expressions as **memoriā teneo, scrībit, accēpimus.**

5. For the future infinitive, both active and passive, the periphrase **fore ut** or **futūrum esse ut** is often used.

6. **Fore** with the **perfect participle,** in deponent and passive verbs, corresponds to the **future perfect.**

7. In the compound infinitive, the participle often is alone expressed, and **esse** or **fuisse** omitted.

THE IMPERATIVE.

247. 1. **The Imperative Present** *commands* or *entreats:*

As, **perge quo coepisti, ēgredere ex urbe, proficiscere,** *proceed* on your chosen path, *quit* the city, *go forth;* **pergite, adulescentes, atque in id studium in quo estis incumbite,** *go on,* young men, *and devote yourselves* to that study on which you are engaged.

2. The **Imperative Future** may either entreat or command; but it oftener commands, and is used especially in legal formularies: as, **cum faciam vitulā pro frūgibus, ipse venīto,** *when I shall be sacrificing a calf for the crops, do you come yourself;* **rēgio imperio duo sunto,** *there shall be two magistrates with royal power.*

Note.—The imperative future often puts a command in connection with some other action, and denotes that something is to be done in future when, or as soon as, something else takes place or has taken place: as in the first example above, and, **cum** valētūdini tuae **consulueris, tum consulito nāvigātiōni.**

3. The **second person** of the **Future Indicative** may be substituted for the imperative in familiar style, in affirmative sentences, and the **third person** of the **Present Subjunctive** in advice or exhortation. The **second person** of the **Present Subjunctive** may be used of an **indefinite** subject.

4. **Ne** with the **Imperative Present** is found in **poetry,** but

is rare in prose. It is used in *legal forms* with the **Imperative Future**:

As, **equo ne crēdite**; hominem mortuum in urbe **ne sepelīto nēve ūrito**, *thou shalt not bury or burn.*

5. Instead of the **negative imperative**, we may have the **second person** of the **Future Indicative** with **non**, the **second person** of the **Perfect Subjunctive** with **ne**, and the **third person** of the **Present** or (rarely) the **Perfect Subjunctive** with **ne**: as, **non facies**; **ne transieris** Ibērum; illum jocum **ne sīs aspernātus**; puer tēlum **ne habeat**; capessite rempublicam, neque quemquam metus **cēperit.**

Note 1.—The **second person** of the **present subjunctive** may be used, both affirmatively and negatively, when the subject is **indefinite**: as, isto bono ūtāre, dum adsit, cum absit, **ne requīras.**

Note 2.—As **not** is expressed by **ne**, so is **nor** by **nēve** or **neu**. But **non** and **neque** or **nec** are sometimes found in the poets. The **non**, however, often serves rather to qualify a **single word** in the sentence.

6. **Periphrases** of the imperative are made by **fac, fac ut, cūrā ut, velim,** with the **subjunctive**, and in poetry by **memento** with the **subjunctive** or the **infinitive**; and **negatively** by **fac ne, cave, nōlim,** with the subjunctive, by **nōli**, and in poetry **parce, mitte, omitte, absiste, fuge**, and similar words with the **infinitive**: magnum **fac** animum **habeas**, *mind you have* a lofty spirit; **cūra ut valeas**, *take care of your health;* aequam **memento servāre** mentem, *remember to keep* an even mind; **cave facias**, *beware of doing it;* hoc **nōlim** me jocāri **putes**, *I would not have you think* I say this in jest; **nōlīte id velle** quod fieri non potest, *do not wish* what cannot be; **mitte sectāri**, *search not;* **fuge suspicāri**, *do not suspect.*

7. Imperative phrases are softened by the polite expressions **sis** (= si vis), **sultis, sōdes, amābo,** etc., *please, pray:* as, **refer te, sis,** ad vēritātem; **hoc agite sultis; id agite, amābo.**

8. An **imperative** of the **perfect passive** is found, though very rarely: as, **admoniti este**, Ov., and Caesar's famous cry, **jacta ālea esto!**

PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

248. Active participles govern the same cases as their verbs:

As, **amans virtūtem; faventes rēbus** Carthāginiensium; **catulōrum oblīta** leaena; **arcens reditu tyrannum; ūtendum est aetāte.**

249. Participles represent *time* as **present, past,** or **future,** *relatively* to the time of the principal verb:

As, Plato **scrībens mortuus est**, Plato *died while writing;* Alexander, Persidis fīnes **aditūrus**, urbem Archelāo **trādidit**, Alexander, *when about*

to enter the borders of Persia, *gave up* the city to Archelāus; plēraeque **scrībuntur** ōrātiōnes **habitae jam**, non ut habeantur, most speeches *are written after being delivered*, etc.

1. The **future participle** sometimes denotes *purpose:* as, Alexander Hephaestiōnem in regiōnem Bactriānam mīsit, **commeātus** in hiemem **parātūrum**, Alexander sent Hephaestion into the Bactrian country *to get provisions* for the winter. See § **253, n.**

2. The want of a **present passive participle** is supplied by a passive verb with a relative or particle: as, pueri, **qui docentur,** discunt (or **cum docentur, dum docentur**), children learn by *being taught.*

3. There being no participle corresponding to the **English perfect active,** except in deponent verbs, its want is supplied by an active verb, with a relative or particle, or by an ablative absolute passive: as, Tarquinium rēgem **qui non tulerim,** Sicinium feram, *having refused to endure* Tarquin as king, shall I endure Sicinius? Alexander, **cum interēmisset** Clītum, vix a se manus abstinuit, Alexander, *having slain* Clitus, hardly abstained from suicide; Pompēius, **captis Hierōsolymis,** victor ex illo fāno nihil attigit, Pompey, *having taken Jerusalem,* in the very moment of victory, meddled with nothing belonging to that temple.

4. The want of a **future passive participle** is supplied by a verb with a relative: as, grāta super veniet **quae non spērābitur** hōra.

250. *THE CIRCUMSTANTIAL PARTICIPLE.*

Participles are often used to denote the *circumstances* of an action, such as *time*, *cause*, *manner*, *means*, *purpose*, *condition*, *concession:*

As, Herculem Germāni **itūri** in proelia canunt, the Germans *when about to march* to battle chant Hercules; Hephaestio longe omnium amīcōrum cārissimus erat Alexandro, cum ipso pariter **ēducātus,** of all his friends Hephaestion was by far the dearest to Alexander, *because he had been brought up* with him; āēr **effluens** huc et illuc ventos efficit, the air *by flowing* this way and that produces the winds; mīlites, **pīlis missis,** phalangem hostium perfrēgērunt, the soldiers *by hurling* their javelins broke through the phalanx of the enemy; Catilīna ad exercitum proficiscitur, **signa illātūrus** urbi, Catiline goes to the army, *intending to march* on the city; epistulae offendunt, non lōco **redditae,** letters annoy, *if not delivered* in season; scripta tua **jam diu exspectans,** non audeo tamen flāgitāre, *though I have long been looking for* your writings, yet I dare not demand them.

1. Clauses of concession are sometimes called *adversative.*

2. **Nisi, etsi, quamquam, quamvis, quasi,** may be found with **participial** conditional and adversative clauses, especially in later writers.

251. *SOME PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTIONS.*

1. **Participles** may be used instead of a **relative** clause: as, Pīsistratus Homēri libros, **confūsos antea,** disposuit, Pisistratus arranged the books of Homer, *which were heretofore confused.*

2. The English idiom "*without,*" followed by a participle or verbal noun, is often represented in Latin by the **participle** accompanied by some **negative** expression: as, Nātūra dedit ūsūram vītae, tamquam pecūniae, **nullā praestitūtā die,** Nature has given the loan of life, as it were of money, *without fixing* any day for repayment.

3. In such forms as **hoc cognitum habeo,** and the corresponding expression in Greek, we see the origin of the perfect tense in modern languages, as made up of the auxiliary *have* and the past participle. But in the classical languages the **have** is used in its full sense of present possession, and is no mere auxiliary. Besides **habeo, teneo** and **possideo** and other verbs are used in the same way with perfect passive participles.

4. The **Perfect Participle** is elegantly used when in English we should have a **verbal noun**:

As, anno **urbis conditae,** in the year from *the building of* the city; Prūsiam rēgem suspectum Rōmānis et **receptus Hannibal** et **bellum adversus Eumenem mōtum** faciēbat, both *the reception of Hannibal* and *the beginning of war against Eumĕnes* made king Prusias an object of suspicion to the Romans.

Note.—Livy, Tacitus, and Lucan use the **neuter** of the **perfect passive participle** as a **passive verbal noun.**

5. Still more frequently is the **Gerundive** used where we use a noun:

As, **de urbe trādendā,** *concerning the delivery of the city;* temperantia constat ex **praetermittendis voluptātibus,** temperance consists in *abstinence from bodily pleasures;* ante **conditam condendamve urbem,** before the *actual or designed foundation of the city.*

6. A **Participle and Verb** are often best translated by two verbs: as, Caesar scrībit se cum legiōnibus **profectum celeriter adfore,** Caesar writes word *that he has set out* with his legions *and will soon arrive.*

7. A Participial construction is often **involved** with an indirect question or a relative clause, so that it can hardly be translated without periphrase: as, **cōgitāte quantis labōribus fundātum imperium, quantā virtūte stabilītam lībertatem ūna nox paene dēlērit,** *think how vast the toil that founded this empire, how great the valor that established this freedom, which a single night all but destroyed.*

8. The **nouns** *man, men, things,* are frequently **understood** with Participles: as, **beātos** pūto, quibus datum est aut facere scrībenda aut scrībere

loquenda, I deem *them blest*, to whom it has been given either to do things worthy to be written, or to write things worthy to be spoken of; grande **locūtūri** nebulas Helicōne legunto, let *those that would utter* a sublime strain cull mists on Helicon.

9. Some Participles are sometimes used as **Adjectives**: such are **neglegens, patiens, sapiens, doctus, horrendus, tremendus, venerandus**, etc.

10. Some Participles are sometimes used as **Nouns**: such are **amans, adulescens, sponsus, nupta, sponsa, coeptum, dictum, factum, praeceptum**, etc. Neuter Participles so used are sometimes modified by Adverbs: as, vērum est fortes et sapientes viros non tam praemia sequi solēre **recte factōrum** quam ipsa recta facta.

GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

252. Gerunds govern the same case as their verbs:

As, spes **satisfaciendi reipublicae**; et **agendi aliquid** et **dīligendi aliquos** principia in nōbis continēmus; parsimōnia est ars **re familiāri** moderāte **ūtendi**.

1. A transitive gerund in classic authors seldom takes an accusative except of pronouns or neuter plural adjectives: as, **aliquid, multa, omnia**, etc. But it may do so for the sake of rhythm or perspicuity: as, **salūtem hominibus dando**.

2. Instead of the Gerund with its object in the Accusative, the Gerundive is generally used, the Gerundive taking the gender and number of its object, and the object taking the case of the Gerund:

As, **tuendae urbis**, *of protecting the city* (for **tuendi urbem**); **ad līberandos cīves**, *for freeing the citizens* (for **ad līberandum cīves**).

Note.—This is the substitution of a passive for an active construction: thus, for **consilium scrībendi epistulam**, *the design of writing a letter*, we have more frequently **consilium scrībendae epistulae**, lit. *the design of a letter to be written.*

3. The Gerund is preferred where the Gerundive would cause an ambiguity as to **gender**.

4. The **Genitive** of Gerunds and Gerundives defines Nouns and Adjectives: as, **ars canendi**; **scientia cīvitātis regendae**; **cupidus audiendi**.

5. The Genitive of a Gerund is sometimes found governing a Genitive case instead of an Accusative: as, facultas **agrōrum** latrōnibus **dōnandi**.

6. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive in the predicate after **esse** sometimes denotes the **purpose** which **a thing serves** or the **end** to which it **tends**: as, rēgium imperium initio **conservandae lībertātis** atque **augendae**

libertātis fuerat; tribūni plebis concordiam ordinum timent, quam **dissolvendae** maxime **tribūniciae potestātis** rentur esse.

7. In a few writers, especially later ones, the Genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive is used to denote the **purpose of an action**: as, **Germānicus in Aegyptum proficiscitur cognoscendae antīquitātis.** In better Latin **causā** or **gratiā** is added.

8. The genitives of the personal pronouns, **mei, tui,** etc., being really genitives of the neuter adjective pronoun, with them the Gerundive is used without variation for gender and number: as, **sui conservandi; sui colligendi facultas,** *the power of collecting themselves together;* **vestri adhortandi causā,** *for the sake of exhorting you.*

9. The **Dative** of Gerunds and Gerundives is used after adjectives which take a dative, and sometimes after nouns and verbs to express the *purpose* or *design:* as, **aqua nitrōsa ūtilis est bibendo,** *nitrous water is useful for drinking;* **studēre revōcandis rēgibus,** *to plot for recalling the kings.*

1. To express **purpose,** the Accusative of the Gerund or Gerundive with **ad,** or **ut** with the subjunctive, is more common in Cicero.

2. The adjectives and verbs or phrases most used with the Dative of Gerunds and Gerundives are **ūtilis, inūtilis, noxius, aptus, idōneus, par; studēre, intentum esse, tempus impendere** or **consūmere** or **insūmere, praeesse, operam dare, diem dīcere, locum capere, sufficere, satis esse, deesse,** and **esse** in the sense of *serving for* or *being adequate to.*

3. The following are examples of the predicative use after **esse**: quae **diūtinae obsidiōni tolerandae erant,** the things which *were serviceable for enduring a long siege;* dīvites, qui **oneri ferendo erant,** the rich, who *were able to bear the burden;* **solvendo non eras,** *you were insolvent* (lit., not adequate for paying, not able to pay).

10. The **purpose of an office** is stated in the **Dative**: as, **triumvir dīvidendis agris,** *one of the three commissioners to divide the lands;* **tresviri rei publicae constituendae.**

11. The **Accusative** of Gerunds and Gerundives is governed by prepositions: most commonly **ad** or **inter**; sometimes **ante, circa, in, ob,** or **post**: as, haec **ad jūdicandum** sunt facillima; magna summa ērogāta est **in servos armandos.**

Note.—Instead of the **accusative gerund** with a **direct object,** the **gerundive** construction is always used: as, missus est **ad animos** rēgum **perspiciendos.**

12. The Accusative of the Gerundive, agreeing with an object, is used after such verbs as **do, trādo, condūco, loco, prōpōno, cūro, habeo,** to denote **purpose**: as, **ēdiscendos fastos** populo **prōposuit,** he published the calendar *for the people to learn by heart;* Caesar **pontem** in Arare **faciundum cūrat.** (On the Accusative with **ad,** see § **252, 9, 1.**)

Note.—If the governing verb is put in the **passive,** the gerundive becomes a predicate nominative.

13. The **Ablative** of Gerunds and Gerundives is used of **means, manner,** or **cause**, or is governed by **ab, de, ex,** or **in,** rarely **pro,** and very rarely **super**: as, Caesar **dando** glōriam adeptus est; hodie stat Asia Lūculli **institūtis servandis; de contemnendā morte; in accūsando** atque **in explicandis crīminibus** operam consumpsi.

Note.—The ablative gerund is rarely used with a *direct object* depending on it, unless it be a **neuter pronoun**: as, nōmen lēgis Graece a **suum cuique tribuendo** ductum est.

14. The **neuter Gerundive** may be used **impersonally**, either without case, or with the **dative** or **ablative**: as, **bibendum est,** *we must drink;* **serviendum est lēgibus,** *it is right to comply with the laws;* **ūtendum est aetāte.**

Note 1.—This is called by some grammarians the **nominative** of the **Gerund.**

Note 2.—In old Latin an object in the **accusative** is found: as, aeternas quoniam **paenas** in morte **timendumst.**

15. Transitive verbs have a **personal gerundive** construction: as, **aqua bibenda est.**

16. The Gerundive often takes a **dative** of the **person** concerned or to whom the action is related: as, **moriendum est omnibus.** (**§ 157, 1.**) An **ablative** of the **agent** with **ab** may be used, if required for perspicuity.

17. The Gerundive when used attributively implies *obligation*, *destiny*, or *desert;* and in negative sentences it sometimes approaches the meaning of *possibility:*

As, **venerandus** a nōbis et **colendus** est, *he should be worshipped and honored;* **dēlenda** est Karthāgo, Carthage *must be destroyed;* labōres aut jam exhaustos aut **mox exhauriendos,** *destined soon to be spent;* **vix erat crēdendum,** *it could scarcely be believed;* labōres **non fugiendos,** *that cannot be shunned.*

Supines.

253. *ACCUSATIVE SUPINE.*

The **accusative supine,** after verbs expressing or implying *motion*, denotes **purpose**:

As, **lūsum** it Maecēnas, **dormītum** ego, *Maecenas goes off to play ball, I to go to bed.*

Note.—Purpose is more often expressed in other ways: thus, for eunt **consultum** Apollinem, we may have **ut consulerent, qui consulerent, ad consulendum, consulendi causā,** and, less frequently, **consultūri.**

1. This supine may govern a case: as, Hannibal **dēfensum patriam** revōcātus est, *to defend his country.*

2. The implication of motion is sometimes only indirect: as, **coctum conductus sum**, *I was hired to cook.*

3. **Ire** with the accusative supine means *to set about:* as, **ultum īre**, *to set about to revenge.* Hence the use of the impersonal passive infinitive **īri** with the supine to make a **passive infinitive future**: as, audierat non **datum īri** fīlio uxōrem, lit., that there is not a going to give a wife to his son, i. e. *that a wife will not be given to his son.*

254. *ABLATIVE SUPINE.*

The supine in -u is an ablative of specification. It limits **fas, nĕfas, opus,** and adjectives meaning *good* or *evil*, *easy* or *difficult*, *pleasant* or *unpleasant*, *fit* or *unfit:*

As, **nĕfas vīsu**, (horrible in the seeing) *horrible to behold;* **turpe dictu**, (shameful in the saying) *shameful to say.*

1. The ablative supine is found rarely after **verbs**: as, **pudet dictu**, Tac.

2. The **supine in -u** is found very rarely as an **ablative of separation**: as, vīlicus prīmus **cubitū surgat**, postrēmus cubitum eat (Cato).

Particles.

255. *ADVERBS.*

1. **Adverbs** qualify *verbs*, *adjectives*, *participles*, and sometimes *other adverbs:*

As, **prūdenter agit; male salsus;** domus **celeriter exstructa; satis bene.**

2. Adverbs sometimes qualify nouns, but very rarely, and only when the noun is used as an adjective or participle, or when a participle is understood: as, **admodum puer**, very much like a boy, *very young;* **lāte rēx** (= lāte regnans); gravibus **superne ictibus**, *blows* coming *from above;* **circa cīvitātum** (of states round about), *of neighboring states.*

256. *TWO NEGATIVES.*

Two negatives destroy each other:

As, **nullā non** arte petītus, sought by *every* art (with *no* art *un*tried).

1. Not only does **non** before a negative word (as **nēmo, nunquam, nescio**) make it affirmative, but **neque** gets the affirmative sense of **et** when followed by a negative word in the same proposition: as, **neque haec non ēvēnērunt**, *and this came to pass indeed.*

2. **Non** followed by **ne—quidem** remains negative: as, **non fugio ne** hos **quidem mores**, *I do not shun even* this character. So **neque—neque, neve —neve**, following a negative leading proposition, are translated like **aut—aut. Ne non** after vide must be rendered by *whether.*

3. **Non modo**, or **non sōlum**, is used before **sed ne—quidem**, or **sed vix**, where at first thought we should expect to find **non modo non, non sōlum non.** The negation in **ne—quidem** belongs conjointly to both clauses; or we may say, with Herzog, that it changes the affirmation of the verb to negation.

4. In a few cases two negatives strengthen the negation, as in Greek: an exceptional usage, from the language of common life.

257. *CONJUNCTIONS.*

1. **Co-ordinative conjunctions** (§ 101, 2) connect words or clauses which are on an equality with each other.

2. In quick and lively discourse the copulative conjunctions are sometimes omitted. This is called **asyndĕton.**

3. Three or more co-ordinate words may be connected **each with the preceding** by a conjunction; or the conjunction may be **omitted entirely**; or it may be omitted between the first members and **que** annexed to the **last.** Thus we may say **fides et constantia et justitia,** or **fides, constantia, justitia,** or **fides, constantia, justitiaque.**

4. Two words **essentially different in meaning** are separated by **aut. Vel** (for **velis,** *choose you*) denotes a distinction which is of **no great importance,** or relates only to the **choice of an expression.**

5. The meaning of **-ve** is similar to that of **vel.** With numerals it means *or at most:* as, **bis terve,** *twice or* (*at most*) *three times;* while **bis terque** means *two or three times* (*at least*).

6. When two words are united by a conjunction, which stands also before the first, without connecting it with a preceding word, the first **et** is translated *both*, the first **aut** or **vel,** *either*, the first **sīve,** *whether*, the first **nec** or **neque,** *neither.* So **cum . . . tum,** may be rendered by *not only . . . but also; both . . . and;* **tum . . . tum,** *at one time . . . at another time.*

7. After words of **likeness, ac** and **atque** signify *as;* after words of **unlikeness,** *than,* or sometimes *from* or *to.*

8. **Subordinative Conjunctions** (§ **101, 3**) connect a secondary clause to a primary or leading clause.

258. *INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES.*

1. In **simple questions, -ne** asks only for information; **nonne** expects the answer *yes;* **num** expects the answer *no:*

As, **sentisne,** *do you feel?* **nonne sentis,** *do you not feel?* **num sentis,** *do* you feel? you *do not feel,* do you?

2. **Ne** is appended to the **emphatic** word. It remains true that the particle itself does not imply either an affirmative or a negative answer, although this emphasis sometimes gives a rhetorical effect similar to that of **num** or

nonne: as, **potestne** virtus servīre, *is it possible* that virtue should be enslaved? (No.) **Mēne** istud potuisse facere putas, do you believe that *I* would have done that? (Certainly not.) **Videsne**, ut in prōverbio sit ōvōrum inter se similitūdo, *do you see*, where he might have said, *do you not see?*

3. In conversational language, the final **e** in **-ne** is often omitted: as, **nostin, tūn**; also a preceding **s** in some verbs: as, **āin, scin, viden, audin**, for **āisne**, etc.

4. Rarely in poetry, **ne** is appended to interrogative adjectives, and even to the relative pronoun.

5. Questions are sometimes found **without** any interrogative particle or pronoun. They generally denote surprise or some strong feeling, or are purposely abrupt.

6. In **alternative questions**, *utrum* or *-ne* are generally used in the first member of the sentence, and *an* in the second and subsequent clauses:

As, **utrum** nescis quam alte ēscenderis, **an** pro nihilo id putas? **vosne** L. Domitium, **an** vos Domitius dēseruit?

7. Sometimes there is no interrogative particle in the first clause, and the second has **an** or (chiefly in indirect questions) **-ne**: as, ēloquar, **an sileam?** nihil interesse nostrā putāmus, **valeāmus aegrīne sīmus.**

8. **Utrumne** is sometimes found for **utrum, anne** for **an.**

9. **Ne . . . ne, an . . . an,** are rare, and found chiefly in the poets; **utrum . . . ne,** very rare.

10. **Or not** is *annon*, rarely *necne*, in **direct questions,** *necne*, rarely *annon*, in **indirect**: as, **sortiētur, an non? sunt** haec tua verba, **necne?** dii **utrum** sint, **necne,** quaeritur.

11. Those are **not** alternative (or disjunctive) questions in which **aut** is interposed, and not **an**: as, quid ergo, **sōlem dīcam aut lūnam aut caelum deum,** what then, *shall I apply the name of God to the sun or moon or sky?* Here there is no real opposition, but the three terms may all be equally affirmed or denied.

12. The old construction, **utrum,** *which of the two?* has after it **-ne . . . an**: as, **utrum, studiōne** id sibi habet, **an** laudi putat fore, si perdiderit gnātum? (Ter.) **Utrum erat ūtilius, suisne** servīre, **an** populo Rōmāno obtemperāre? (Cic.)

13. **An** stands not only in the second member of a disjunctive question, but also in **simple questions** used to complete and emphasize what precedes: asking, what must be the case *otherwise*, or what must be the case *then;* or *answering* a question under the *form of a question;* or adding in an interrogative form some *conjecture* respecting what is asked: as, **necesse est quidquid prōnunties, id aut esse aut non esse. An tu dialecticis ne imbūtus quidem es?** *what you put forward must needs either be or not be. Or are you not acquainted with even the first elements of logic?* sed ad

21 *

haec, nisi molestum est, habeo quae velim. **An me, inquam, nisi te audīre** vellem, **censes** haec dictūrum fuisse? *do you, then, believe*, etc. **Quid āis? an vēnit Pamphilus?** *what do you say? Has Pamphilus come?* nos hic te exspectāmus **ex quōdam rūmōre, an ex litteris tuis ad alios missis,** *on the authority of some rumor, or (am I right?) of letters of yours sent to other persons.*

14. In **dependent clauses num** means *whether*, and only asks the question; **si** is sometimes found in the sense of *whether;* and so **an** in later writers and the poets.

15. After **haud scio, nēscio, dubito, dubium,** or **incertum est,** and some other expressions of uncertainty, **an** means *whether not*, and the whole expression signifies *perhaps; I am inclined to think that.* (See § **231, 4.**)

16. An answer in the **affirmative** may be given by **etiam, ita** or **ita est, sic** or **sic est, vērum, vēro, factum, sāne, maxume, quidni? admodum, oppido, plāne,** by a **personal pronoun** with **vēro,** or by the **verb** of the preceding sentence repeated.

17. An answer in the **negative** may be given by **nōn, minume, nihil minus, ne . . . quidem.**

18. **Immo,** *nay*, always *corrects* the preceding expression; but sometimes only to substitute a stronger affirmation.

ORDER OF WORDS.

259. As the connection and construction of words in Latin can be known from their **inflection**, their **position** is not determined by such strict and definite rules as in English, but admits of great variety. That order is to be preferred which is most **easily understood**, marks out the more **emphatic words**, and gives an agreeable **sound** and **rhythm**.

The following rules give some idea of the normal or most usual order. Many of them may be superseded, however, by the demands of rhythm or emphasis.

1. The **subject** is put **first**, its modifiers next, the **verb last**, and the **object** and other modifiers of the predicate are put between:

As, ego te ob egregiam virtutem semper amavi; cur ego tuas partes suscipio? cur M. Tullius P. Africani monumenta requirit, P. Scipio eum, qui illa sustulit, defendit?

Note.—When the subject is closely connected with a clause following the verb, it may be placed after the verb.

2. **Poets** use great freedom in the order of their words: as, **Ponitur ad patrios barbara praeda deos.** (Ov.)

3. The **Preposition** stands **before** the noun, either immediately, or with the interposition of such expressions only as qualify the noun: as, **consul de bello ad populum tulit; sine ullo metu et summa cum honestate;** haec officia **pertinent ad earum rerum, quibus utuntur homines, facultatem; ad bene beateque vivendum.**

4. The **preposition** is sometimes placed between an **adjective** which is **emphatic**, or a **pronoun** (or rarely a **genitive case**), and the noun: as, **magna ex parte; tribus de rebus; paucos post menses; summa cum cura; ea de causa; qua in urbe; quorum de virtutibus; deorum in mente.**

5. Some **prepositions**, chiefly dissyllabic, occasionally stand **after** a relative pronoun: as, is, **quem contra** venerat. (See § **131, 5.**) **Cum** is always suffixed to personal and usually to relative pronouns. (See § **57, 7;** § **62, 9.**)

6. The following examples show the freedom often used by the **poets** in placing their prepositions: avem **caelo** dejecit **ab alto**; foedera regum vel **Gabiis vel cum rigidis** aequata **Sabinis.**

7. **Adverbs,** and **Oblique Cases** of nouns and adjectives, stand **before** the verb or adjective to which they belong: as, bellum civile **opinione plerumque** et **fama gubernatur;** multi autem, **Gnathonum similes,** sunt **loco, fortuna, fama superiores.**

Note 1.—Adverbs may be placed for emphasis at the beginning or end of the sentence; and they may be inserted without emphasis between the more prominent words.

Note 2.—Adverbs which qualify an adjective or another adverb almost always stand before it. But **admodum** can be placed after an adjective which is emphatic. An adverb of degree (as **multo**) may stand for emphasis at the beginning of the clause or sentence, and the adjective be put farther along: as, **multo** ejus oratio esset **pressior.**

8. **Negatives** stand before the word they qualify; hence before the verb (but not always immediately before it) when they apply to the whole proposition: as, **non te** reprehendo, sed fortunam; intellegere sane **non possum.** Instead of **non dico, nego** is generally used: as, **negavit eum adesse,** *he said he was not there;* (not, *he denied,* etc.)

Note.—**Ne quidem** takes the emphatic word between the two particles: as, **ne joco quidem.**

9. **Attributes,** whether **adjectives, nouns in apposition,** or **oblique cases,** usually **follow** their noun; but the reverse order is frequent, and is the rule with **demonstrative pronouns** and adjectives of **number** and **quantity**: as, **vir bonus; praemeditatio rerum futurarum; Balbus quaestor, magno pondere auri, majore argenti coacto de publico exactionibus, Kal. Juniis trajecit se in regnum Bogudis; ejus disputationis sententias** memoriae mandavi, quas **hoc libro** exposui; **tribus modis.**

But a **demonstrative** may be placed **after**, if it is desirable to bring it into close connection with the relative: as, **mediocritatem illam** tenebit, **quae** est inter nimium et parum.

10. In many expressions the order of the words is fixed by custom: as, **populus Romanus, civis Romanus, res familiaris, res gestae, aes alienum, jus civile, senatus consultum, magister equitum, tribunus plebi, pontifex maximus, Bona Dea, Jupiter optimus maximus, Carthago Nova, Via Appia, terra marique**, etc. In a few cases this order is found reversed, for emphasis.

11. A **monosyllabic noun** almost invariably precedes a longer adjective: as, **res innumerabiles; di immortales; rex potentissimus.**

12. When a noun is qualified by both **an adjective and a genitive**, or by both **a genitive and a prepositional expression**, the adjective in the first case, the genitive in the second place, is usually put first, and the other attribute placed between that and the noun: as, amicitia **nullam aetatis degendae rationem** patitur esse expertem sui; cujus rationis vim **ex illo caelesti Epicuri de regula et judicio volumine** accepimus.

13. **Relative pronouns** regularly stand at the **beginning of their clause**; never after their verb: as, hic est **quem quaerimus; quae cum ita sint,** hoc loquor.

14. But sometimes an **emphatic** word, or words, is placed **before** the relative, especially when the demonstrative sentence is put after the relative sentence: as, **Tarentum** vero **qua** vigilantia, quo consilio, (Fabius) recepit? **Romam quae** apportata sunt, ad aedem Honoris et Virtutis videmus (*to Rome*, in contrast with what remained at Syracuse).

15. The **relatives** may be used for the **demonstratives with et**: e. g., **qui** for **et is, qualis** for **et talis, quo** for **et eo.** They may therefore be placed **before** those conjunctions which can be connected with **et** or **autem**: as, **quod cum** audivissem, **quod si** fecissem, **quod quamvis** non ignorassem, for **et cum hoc, et si hoc, et quamvis** or **cum autem hoc.**

16. **Connective adverbs** and **interrogative pronouns** usually stand at the head of their clause, or only after words, such as relative or demonstrative pronouns, which refer to the preceding sentence. They never come after their verb.

Note.—But in poetry we have freer position.

17. **Words belonging to two or more** co-ordinate words or expressions should strictly be put either **before them all** or **after them all.** But, partly for rhythm's sake, the common word is often put after the first of the co-ordinated words: as, jam viris vires, jam ferro sua vis, jam consilia ducibus **deerant**; an tu existimas **fuisse** tum **alios medicos, qui morbis, alios qui** volneribus, **alios qui** oculis **mederentur**?

Note 1.—In poetry irregularities occur: as, **pacis** eras **mediusque belli** (for **bellique medius**).

Note 2.—When the **same verb** belongs to several clauses, it is more com-

mon in Latin to place it in the **last** clause, and understand it in those preceding. The reverse is the rule in English.

18. **Hiātus,** or the **concurrence of long vowels** at the end of one word and the beginning of another, should be avoided as much as possible. A concurrence of **short vowels,** or of a **long** vowel **followed by a short,** is not objectionable.

19. The more **easy** and **familiar** the style of composition, the less formal is the arrangement of the words.

20. The position of the following **particles** may be specially noticed:

Nam, always, **namque,** almost always, stands at the **beginning;**
Enim, always **after one word,** seldom after **two;**
Ergo, *therefore,* either **first,** or after an **important word** of the sentence: as, **hunc ergo, quid ergo;** when it denotes not a conclusion, but only a transition, it almost always stands after a word;
Igitur, usually **after one or two words,** or even after more words, if they are closely connected; it is also put **first,** especially in Sallust;
Itaque, *therefore, consequently,* almost always at the beginning, in good prose;
Tamen, at the beginning, except where a single word is to be made emphatic by antithesis;
Etiam, *also, even,* before the word it qualifies; but also after it, especially if the word is put at the beginning of the sentence for the sake of emphasis;
Quoque, quidem, and **demum,** immediately after the word they qualify;
Autem, and **vero,** after a word, or two closely connected words: as, **de republica vero; autem,** even after several words, which cannot well be separated;
Ne, *assuredly,* is prefixed to a personal or demonstrative pronoun, except in a peculiar class of answers in Plautus.

Note.—If **enim, autem,** or **igitur,** and **est** or **sunt,** come near together, the **verb** usually stands without emphasis in the **second** place, if the proposition begins with the emphatic word: as, **nemo est autem; sapientia est enim** una, quae maestitiam pellat ex animis. But the verb is put in the **third** place, if the emphasis falls more on the words which come after it: as, cupiditates enim **sunt insatiabiles.**

21. The pronoun **quisque** almost always stands in the relative proposition, when a relative and demonstrative proposition are combined, and **immediately after the relative.**

260. Emphasis suggests the following rules:

1. Any word which is to be made **prominent** is placed at or near the **beginning** of the sentence, or sometimes, if not the primary predicate, at

the **end** (as an unusual position): as, **a malis** mors abducit, non **a bonis**; **dedi veniam** homini **impudenter petenti**; **sequemur** igitur hoc tempore et in hac quaestione potissimum **Stoicos.**

2. The ordinary place of the **verb** being at the **end**, it is **emphatic** when at the **beginning** of the sentence; in other positions than these, it makes the preceding word or words emphatic: as, Saguntum **vestri** circumsident exercitus; mox **Karthaginem** circumsidebunt Romanae legiones.

3. As the first place is allotted to emphatic words, in the **second** place in the sentence **unimportant** words are often thrown in; such words as are rather slurred over in reading.

4. An unemphatic word is sometimes put between words connected with one another, partly to throw the words before it into greater relief, partly to prevent itself occupying a more important position in the sentence. So especially **est**, **sunt**, etc.: as, qui in fortunae periculis **sunt** ac varietate versati; primum Marcelli ad Nolam praelio populus **se** Romanus erexit.

5. **Contrasted** and **kindred** words are put next to one another: as, ego Q. Fabium, **senem adulescens**, ita dilexi ut aequalem; quaedam **falsa veri** speciem habent; quid quod **tu te** ipse in custodiam dedisti?

6. **Contrasted pairs of words** are often put with the words in one pair in a reverse order to that of the other pair; two of the contrasted words still often being together as by last rule. This figure is called **chiasmus**, i. e. *crossing*, from the Greek letter X: as, **ratio** enim nostra **consentit, repugnat oratio**; cum **spe vincendi** simul abjecisti **certandi** etiam **cupiditatem**; clariorem **inter Romanos deditio Postumium**, quam **Pontum** incruenta **victoria inter Samnites** fecit; **cedere alius, alius obtruncari.**

7. Where **cumulative effect**, or a sense of similarity rather than contrast, is desired, the **same order** of words is preserved in the component clauses. This figure is called **anaphŏra**, i. e. *repetition:* as, his similes sunt omnes qui virtūti student: **levantur vitiis, levantur erroribus**; ut non nequiquam tantae virtutis homines judicari deberet ausos esse **transire latissimum flumen, ascendere altissimas rupes, subire iniquissimum locum.**

261. Rhythm admits of no definite rules being given, but suggests:

1. That **short words** or expressions occupying a **distinct position** as subject, predicate, etc., be put first: as, **erant ei** veteres inimicitiae cum duobus Rosciis Amerinis; **terrebat** et proximus annus lugubris duorum consulum funeribus; **movet ferocem animum juvenis** seu ira seu detrectandi certaminis pudor seu inexsuperabilis vis fati.

2. That there be **variety** in the arrangements of neighboring sentences as regards prosody and syntax. (Thus *chiasmus* and *anaphŏra* are often found together.) **Examples:** Vide quid intersit inter tuam libidinem majorumque auctoritatem, inter amorem furoremque tuum et illorum consilium atque prudentiam. Adde huc fontium gelidas perennitates, liquores perlucidos amnium, riparum vestitus viridissimos, speluncarum concavas amplitu-

dines, saxorum asperitates, impendentium montium altitudines immensitatesque camporum: adde etiam reconditas auri argentique venas infinitamque vim marmoris.

3. As the **rhythm of prose** is essentially distinct from that of verse, all **verse endings** should be avoided at the close of a sentence, particularly the hexameter termination of dactyl and spondee: as, ēssĕ vĭdētur.

The occasional use of such endings, and even of a full verse, in the historians, may be justified by the context, but should not be imitated in ordinary prose.

4. The following is a table of **cadences** approved by Cicero and Quintilian: glōrĭām cōmpărāvĭt; mēmbră fīrmārūnt; ēssĕ vĭdĕātŭr; cōgĭtāns sēntĭō; tŭī Scīpĭō; vărĭĕtātēs; plūrĭbūs dē caūsīs; vĭrūm cōndēmnārūnt; vĭdērī; nōvīssĕ.

262. Position of subordinate sentences.

1. **Subordinate sentences,** except those which express a result, follow the rule of qualificatory words or phrases: i. e., they are put **before** the principal sentence to which they belong; either before the whole of it or before all but a few words: as, **cum hostium copiae non longe absunt, etiamsi inruptio nulla facta est,** tamen pecunia relinquitur, agricultura deseritur. **Qui autem ita faciet, ut oportet,** primum vigilet in deligendo (quem imitetur), deinde, **quem probavit, in eo, quae maxime excellent,** ea diligentissime persequatur. **Quid autem agatur cum aperuero,** facile erit statuere quam sententiam dicatis.

2. A short principal sentence or clause is often prefixed to the whole or part of the subordinate sentence, especially if this be a dependent interrogative: as, Stoicorum autem **non ignoras** quam sit subtile vel spinosum potius disserendi genus.

263. A Period consists of at least two, and generally several sentences, so connected that the grammatical construction is not complete till the last clause is added.

1. A Period (*περίοδος*) is so called because the main proposition **surrounds** the interpolated clauses.

2. By being grouped together in due order, the clauses of a period produce the effect of logical completeness, and of that sonorous and dignified expression which accorded well with the majesty and dignity of the Roman character. (Kennedy.)

3. The usual arrangement of clauses in a period is analogous to that of words in a simple sentence, viz.:

First: The word or clause containing the **subject,** with the words or clauses immediately connected with it;

Second: The words or clauses denoting the **time, place, motive;**

Third: The word or clause expressing the **remoter object;**

Fourth: The word or clause expressing the **immediate object**;
Fifth: The **principal verb.**

To this order there are frequent exceptions, particularly in the position of the **principal verb.**

264. Both as regards **arrangement**, and in many other respects, it will be useful while writing a Latin composition to break off occasionally and read aloud extracts from some Roman author of the best period. This helps one to get into the right atmosphere for his work.

PROSODY.

265. *QUANTITY IN VERSE.*

1. In Latin, as in Greek, Verse depended upon the **Quantity** of syllables, every syllable being either **long** (–) or **short** (◡); and the various Metres resulted from the various relations of the long and short syllables to each other; their alternation producing the **rhythm** of the verse.

In English, on the contrary, and other modern languages, the rhythm of verse depends upon the **accentuation** or non-accentuation of the syllables.

2. A short syllable was said to contain *one* **mora** or *time;* a long syllable *two* **morae** or *times.*

Note.—The **short** syllable is the **unit** of measure, and has the value of ♪ or an ⅛ note in music. The **long** syllable has the value of ♩ or a ¼ note.

3. Syllables which might, at the same period of the language, be **either long or short**, are called **common** (⏒ or ⏓).

4. Some syllables which at one period of the language were long, at another were short.

5. A long syllable resolved into two short is marked ◡◡ with a line beneath; two short syllables contracted into a long, ◡◡ with a line above.

6. A long syllable in the arsis (§ 283, 1, 3) may be prolonged so as to have the measure of three or even four short syllables, and may thus represent a whole foot. A syllable which includes **three times** is marked ⊔ (♩.); one which includes **four times**, ⊔ (𝅗𝅥).

7. A **long** syllable may be **shortened**, so as to take the place of a short syllable. Such a syllable is called **irrational**, and is marked > .

8. In most kinds of metre, the **last syllable** of every verse is **common**; that is, it may be regarded as either long or short, as the metre requires.

Note.—If the last syllable is **short**, where the metre requires a **long** syllable, the **pause** naturally made at the end of the verse gives it the additional time required; if on the other hand a **long** syllable stands here

for a **short**, the excess of time is not felt in consequence of this very anticipation of the effect of the pause. The voice, too, would give some indication of the irrational time.

266. *QUANTITY BY POSITION.*

1. A syllable is **long by nature** when it has a **long vowel or diphthong**: as, **fātō, maestīs.**

2. When a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants, a double consonant, or the letter J, the syllable is **long by position**:

As, **făctūs sūbsūnt.**

Exc.—In the **compounds of jugum** the syllable before **j** is short.

Note 1.—The consonants may be in the first word, or in two consecutive words. Where both are in the second word, the vowel usually remains short; the more careful poets avoid this position.

Note 2.—**H** does not give position; and **qv** has only the power of a single letter.

Note 3.—In the older language, final **s** preceded by a short vowel was slightly sounded, if at all; it was often, therefore, not written, and often with the older poets did not give position: as, **infantibŭs parvis; torvŭs draco.**

Note 4.—Before **cm** and **cn** in Greek words a vowel may remain short.

Note 5.—The **comic poets** sometimes keep a vowel short before two consonants.

3. A syllable ending in a short vowel coming before a **mute** followed by l or r is **common**:

As, **tenĕbrae** or **tenēbrae; trĭplex** or **trīplex; rĕtro** or **rētro.** In the same verse Vergil has **pătris, pātrem.**

Exc.—The **comic poets** seem never to have lengthened a short vowel before a mute and a liquid.

1. This rule does not apply where the mute **ends** a syllable and the liquid **begins** another. In such cases the vowel is long by position, as in **ābluo, ōbruo.**

4. One **vowel** (or diphthong) **before another vowel**, or before **h**, is **short**:

As, **mĕae, trăho, ĭo, bŏant, tŭus, praĕustus.**

1. **a** of the old **Genitive of the First Declension** in **āi** is long: as, **terrāi, purpureāi.**

2. **a** or **e** is long before **i** in **proper names** ending in **ius** or **ia**: as, **Gāius, Pompēius, Aquilēia**; **a** is long in **āio.**

3. e is long in diēi; Lucretius has rēi; and once fidēi (as in Plautus and Ennius). So ēi in Lucretius, ĕi in Catullus, the dative of is; it is sometimes contracted into one syllable, as is also rei.

Note 1.—In ai and ei followed by a vowel, the j both made a diphthong with the preceding a or e, and also was pronounced like English y: as, Pompeius, pronounced Pompei-yus. Cicero wrote the i double: as, Pompei-ius.

Note 2.—In the compounds of jacio it was usual to write i only once: as, ēĭcit, though the i was equivalent to ji. This accounts for the quantity of rēĭcio, where the i formed a diphthong with the e of re, and also a separate syllable. But ei-cit, rei-cit, are sometimes dissyllabic, and ăbĭcit, ădĭcit are found with their first syllable short.

4. In genitives in **ius**, **i** is **common**, but generally long in prose: as, **ipsĭ̄us**, **unĭ̄us**. In **alīus** (contracted for **aliius**), **i** is always long.

5. **I** is **long** before a vowel in **fīo**, except before **er**: as, **fīebam**, **fīam**; but **fĭ̄erem**. (Plautus and Terence sometimes have **fīeri**, etc.)

6. The following quantities should be noticed: **ēheu**, **Rhēa** (Silvia), **dīus**, *divine;* **Dī̆ana**, **ōhe**.

7. Many **Greek words** keep a vowel long before another: as, **āer**, **musēum**, **Thalīa**; **Academīa**, in the best Latin; **daedalĕ̄us**, **chorĕ̄a**.

267. *DIPHTHONGS AND CONTRACTED SYLLABLES.*

1. **Diphthongs, and vowels derived from diphthongs, are long**: as, **āeger**, **āudio**, **inīquus** (in + aequus).

1. **Prae** in composition is generally **short** before a vowel.

2. Sometimes a diphthong at the end of a word is shortened when the next word begins with a vowel: as, **insulăe Ionio**.

2. **Contracted syllables are long**: as, **fructūs** (fructŭĭs), **nīl** (nĭhĭl), **prūdens** (prōvĭdens).

268. *DERIVATIVES AND COMPOUNDS.*

1. **Derivative** and **compound words** generally retain the quantity of their primitives:

As, **ămo**, **ămor**, **ămīcus**, **ămīcitia**, **māter**, **māternus**, **dēfĕro**, **rēgĭfugium**.

Exc.—**Perfects** and **supines** of **two syllables** have the **first long**, even when that of the present is short: as, **vēni**, **vīdi**, **mōtum**.

Note.—In such perfects as **rŭi**, the penult is of course short.

2. Eight perfects and ten supines have the first syllable **short**: **bĭbi**, **dĕdi**, **fĭdi**, **lĭqui** (from **liqueo**), **scĭdi**, **stĕti**, **stĭti**, **tŭli**; **cĭtum**, **dătum**, **ĭtum**, **lĭtum**, **quĭtum**, **rătum**, **rŭtum**, **sătum**, **sĭtum**, **stătum** (from **sisto**).

These perfects seem either to be reduplicated or to have once been so.

3. **Reduplicated perfects** have the **first two syllables short**: as, **cĕcĭdi** (from **cădo**), **pĕpŭli, cĕcĭni, dĭdĭci.**

Note.—The second syllable is sometimes **long by position**: as, **fĕfelli, mŏmordi. Cĕcīdi** (from **caedo**) has the second syllable long, because the **ī** represents the diphthong **ae**; **pĕpēdi**, from **pēdo**, also has a long penult.

4. Some **apparent derivatives** are illusory: **rēx, rēgis, rēgīna** do not come from **rĕgo**. Variations of quantity do occur, however, in words supposed to come from the same root.

5. The **change of a vowel or diphthong** in forming a **compound** does not alter its quantity.

6. The quantity of the simple word is changed in some **compounds**: as, **agnĭtus** and **cognĭtus**, from **nōtus**; **pejĕro** and **dejĕro**, from **jūro.**

7. **Ne-** is generally long: but short in **nĕque, nĕqueo, nĕfas, nĕfandus, nĕfarius**, and some other words.

8. **Pro** is generally **long** in composition; but there are many exceptions: as, **prŏcella, prŏfanus, prŏficiscor, prŏfecto, prŏfugus, prŏfundus, prŏfari, prŏfiteor, prŏtervus** (also **prōtervus** in Plautus), **prŏnepos, prŏneptis, prŏfundo** (**prōfundo**, Catullus); **prŏpello** twice in Lucretius, elsewhere long; **prŏ̄curo, prŏ̄pino, prŏ̄pago**; **Prōserpina** regularly, but Horace and Seneca each once **Prŏserpina.** In Greek words **pro** remains short; but **prōlogus** in Plautus and Terence.

9. The **inseparable prepositions dī, sē, vē** are **long**; **rĕ** or **rĕd**, **short.**

10. **Re** is sometimes **lengthened by position.** In the oldest Latin the quantity was **rē** or **rēd** generally. Hexameter poets have **rēligio, rēlicuus, rēliquiae**; but the later poets always **rĕliquus.**

11. In **rēfert**, the first syllable is not the preposition, but from **res**; **rĕfero** has **rĕfert.**

269. *MONOSYLLABLES.*

1. **Monosyllables** ending in a **vowel** are long: except the **enclitics** (§11, 2) and the nominative and accusative **quă.**

2. **Monosyllables** ending in a **consonant** are long.

1. Such as end in **b, d, l, t** are **short**; but **sāl** and **sōl**, and diphthongs, as **aut** and **haud**, are long.

2. **Făc, nĕc, ăn, ĭn, fĕr, pĕr, tĕr, vĭr, cŏr, bĭs, cĭs, ĭs, quĭs**, are **short**; as is **ĕs** from **sum**, although Plautus has **ēs**. The pronoun **hĭ̄c** is **common**; **hŏ̄c** (nominative and accusative) is **long** in the later poets, **common** in the old dramatic poets. The quantity of **ac** is uncertain, as it never comes before a vowel in good writers.

270. *FINAL SYLLABLES IN POLYSYLLABLES.*

1. In words of more than one syllable, final i, o, and u are long; a, e, and y are short.

Exceptions.—a final is long:

1. In the **Ablative Singular** of the **First Declension**: as, **mensā**.

2. In the **Imperative of the First Conjugation** (but **pută** is used parenthetically).

3. Sometimes in the **Nominative of Greek nouns**, and in the **Vocative of nouns in as**.

4. In **Numerals**: as, **trigintā**.

5. In **Prepositions and Adverbs**: as, **contrā**, **frustrā**, **posteā** (but we have **ită**, **quiă**; **eiă** or **heiă** is perhaps common).

e final is long:

1. In the **Ablative of the Fifth Declension**: as, **diē**, **hodiē**.

2. In the second person singular of the **Imperative of the Second Conjugation**: as, **gaudē**. (But sometimes **cavĕ**, **vidĕ**.)

3. In **Adverbs** from **Adjectives of the Second Declension**: as, **valdē**, **aegrē**; also in **fermē**, **ferē**, **ohē**. (But **benĕ**, **malĕ**, **infernĕ** (Lucr.), **supernĕ** (Lucr., Hor.), **temerĕ**.)

4. When it represents the **Greek long e** (η): as, **Hebē**.

i final is short:

1. In **Greek Nominatives**, and some **Greek Datives and Vocatives**.

2. In **nisĭ**, **quasĭ**, **necubĭ**, **sicubĭ**, **cuĭ** (when a dissyllable).

i final is common:

1. In **mihĭ̄**, **tibĭ̄**, **sibĭ̄**, **ibĭ̄**, **ubĭ̄**.

Note.—In hexameter poets, **ibīdem**; in scenic poets, **ibĭ̄dem**; **utĭque**, **utĭnam**, although always **utī**; **ubĭnam**, **ubĭvis**, but **ubīque**.

o final is short:

In **cedŏ**, **citŏ**, **duŏ**, **egŏ**, **modŏ** (but sometimes **modō** in Lucretius and **egō** in Plautus).

o final is common:

1. In some **Nouns**, especially **Proper Names**.

2. In **Verb endings** (but generally long in the best period); and in later writers, even in the ending **-do** of the Gerund.

3. In the Silver Age in **quandŏ̄**, **porrŏ̄**, **serŏ̄**, **ambŏ̄**, **octŏ̄**, and a number of other words. (In all ages **quandŏquidem**.)

2. c final lengthens the vowel: except **donĕc**.

3. d, l, n, r, and t final shorten the vowel.

Exceptions:

1. **nihĭl.**

2. **Greek nouns in n** which have the preceding vowel **long** in Greek.

3. **Celtibĕr, Hibēr (Ibēr), dispār, impār; Greek nouns in er** which have ē (η) in Greek.

4. The final syllable of **contracted perfects** is long: as, **disturbāt, petīt, obīt**; so often the final syllable of **petiit** and of **iit** and its compounds.

4. **as, es,** and **os** final are **long**:

Exceptions:

1. **ăs** in the **Nominative Singular and Accusative Plural of Greek nouns** which have the **a** short in Greek.

2. **penĕs; Nouns of the Third Declension** which **increase short**: as, **milĕs, milĭtis** (but **pēs** and its compounds, **Cerēs, abiēs, ariēs, pariēs,** remain long); **compounds of ĕs**: as, **potĕs, adĕs; ĕs** in words representing a **short ending in Greek**: as, **cacoethĕs, Arcadĕs.**

3. **exŏs, compŏs, impŏs; ŏs** in words which have a **short** ending in **Greek**: as, **Chiŏs, Phasidŏs.**

5. **is, us,** and **ys** final are **short**:

Exceptions:

1. **īs** in the **Dative and Ablative Plural; īs** in the **Accusative Plural** of the **Third Declension; īs** in the **second person singular** of the **Present Subjunctive; īs** in compounds of **vīs**: as, **mavīs, quamvīs; īs** in **Nominatives which increase long** (as, **Samnīs, Samnītis**); **īs** representing **a long syllable in Greek**: as, **Salamīs, Salamīnis; ĭs** in the **Future Perfect,** and **ĭs** in the **Perfect Subjunctive; sanguĭs;** Vergil has once **pulvīs.**

2. **ūs** in **Nominatives** which have **ū** in the Genitive: as, **virtūs, virtūtis,** but Horace has once **palŭs; ūs** in the **Genitive Singular** and **Nominative and Accusative Plural** of the **Fourth Declension; ūs** representing Greek *ους*: as, **Panthūs.**

3. **ȳs** in **Tethȳs** and **chrysophrȳs.**

271. *QUANTITY OF INCREMENTS.*

A noun is said to **increase** when any case of it is longer than the nominative singular, by **one or more syllables**; and a **verb,** when any part of it is longer than the second singular present indicative active, by one or more syllables. The **penult syllable** of such increased form is called the **increment.** Thus, **-sa** is the increment in **mensarum,** and **-no** in **honoris.** In longer forms, when more than one syllable is added, there may be a **second** or **third increment**: as, **vecti-ga[1]-lis, vecti-ga[1]-li[2]-a, mo-nu[1]-i, mo-nu[1]-is[2]-sem, mo-nu[1]-is[2]-se[3]-mus;** or also a **fourth**: as, **au-di[1]-e[2]-ba[3]-mi[4]-ni.**

1. In the **increment of nouns and adjectives, a** and **o** are **long; e, i, u,** and **y** are **short**:

As, **mensārum, audācis; puerōrum, doctiōris; puĕri, pĕdis; vĭri, divĭtis; portŭbus, vultŭris; Erўcis.**

Exceptions:

a is short:

in Greek nouns in **a** and **as** of the third declension: as, **poēmă, poēmătis, lampas, lampădis.**

in masculine nouns in **-al** and **-ar**: as, **Caesar, Caesăris.**

in those Latin nouns in **-as** whose genitive does not end in **-atis**: as, **mas, măris**; but **vas, vāsis**; and **anas, anătis.**

in **par, păris,** and its compounds, and in **baccar, hepar, jubar, nectar,** and **sal.**

in nouns ending in **s** preceded by a consonant: as, **trabs, trăbis.**

e is long:

in the fifth declension: as, **diēbus, diērum.**

in Greek words in **-ter, -tēris** and **-es, -ētis**: as, **cratēris, lebētis.**

in words whose genitive ends in **-ēnis**: as, **ren, rēnis.**

in many words which cannot be classified: as, **vēris, Ibēris, lēgis, rēgis, mercēdis, herēdis, plēbis, quiētis, locuplētis, vervēcis.**

i is long:

in nouns in **-in** and **-is** of the third declension: as, **delphin, delphīnis; Salamīs, Salamīnis.**

in nouns and adjectives in **-ix, -īcis**: as, **radix, radīcis, felix, felīcis.**

Note.—But **calix, filix, fornix, nix, pix, salix, strix,** and some others, increase **short**: *i. e.,* in **-ĭcis,** except **nix, nĭvis, strix, strĭgis.**

in nouns in **-is, -ītis**: as, **Quiris, Quirītis; lis, lītis**; in **glis, glīris; vis, vīres** (plur.), and a few more.

o of the third declension is short:

in nouns ending in **us**: as, **tempŏris,** from **tempus; lepŏris,** from **lepus.**

in neuter nouns in **-or** and **-ur**: as, **marmŏris,** from **marmor; jecŏris,** from **jĕcur.**

in many Greek nouns, having **o short** in Greek: as, **Hectōr, Hectŏris; aedōn, aedŏnis; tripūs, tripŏdis; rhetor, rhetŏris.**

in nouns and adjectives ending in **s** preceded by a **consonant**: as, **inŏpis,** from **inops.**

arbor, memor, bos, compos, impos, lepus, praecox, and some others, have **o short**: as, **arbŏris, memŏris, bŏvis, compŏtis,** etc.

national names generally have **o short**: as, **Macedŏnis.** But there is great variety.

u is long:

in many nouns of the third declension ending in **ūs**: as, **virtūtis, palūdis, rūris, tellūris.**

Note.—Frūgis, fūris, lūcis, plūris, Pollūcis (from [**frux**], **fur, lux, plus, Pollux**), and some others, have **u long.**

y is long:
in some words, mostly foreign: as, **Ceȳcis, Trachȳnis.**
in some other words it is common.

2. In the **increment of verbs a, e, o,** and **u** are **long: i** is **short:**

As, **amātis, monebātis, audiātis, ferātis; legēmus, legēbamus; amatōte; amatūrus, solūtum; legĭmus, monuĭmus.**

Exceptions:

do and its compounds have the **stem vowel** (or **first increment**) short: as, **dăre, dăbamus, dăbo, dăturus.**

Note.—But the vowel **a** is long in **da** and **das.**

e before **r** is **short** in the **first increment** of the **present** and **imperfect** tenses of the **third conjugation**; and in the **second increment of futures** ending in **-bĕris** and **-bĕre**: as, **regĕre** (infin. and imperat.), **regĕris** or **regĕre** (pres. ind. pass.), **regĕremus, regĕremur; amabĕris, docebĕris.**

e is **short** before **-ram, -rim, -ro,** and the persons formed from them: as, **amavĕram, monuĕrim, legĕro.**

e before **r** in the **third plur. perf. ind. act.** is sometimes **shortened** by the poets: as, **stetĕrunt** (§ 279).

i is long:
in **perfects** in **-īvi**: as, **petīvi;**
in **supines** of verbs with such perfects: as, **petītum.**
in the **first increment** of the **fourth conjugation**: as, **audīrem.**

Note 1.—But **-ĭmus** in the **perf.** is **short.**
Note 2.—If the **i** comes **before a vowel**, it is short.

in **subjunctives** in **-im**: as, **sīmus, sītis, velīmus.**
in the **imperative** of **nolo**: as, **nolīto.**

i is common,
but oftener **long**, in **rī̆mus** and **rī̆tis** of the **perfect subjunctive;**
but oftener short, in **rĭ̄mus** and **rĭ̄tis** of the **future perfect.**

u is short:
in the **first person plural**: as, **sŭmus, volŭmus.**

272. *PENULTS AND ANTEPENULTS.*

Rules are sometimes given for the quantity of **penults** and **antepenults**; but they have many exceptions, and such quantities are best learned by practice in reading poetry, etc., with the aid of a Dictionary or Gradus.

273. *NATURAL QUANTITY.—AUTHORITY.*

1. We are often ignorant of the **natural quantity** of Latin syllables which we call long by position. The ancients carefully distinguished in pronunciation such words as **lēcto**, *I read*, and **lĕcto**, from **lĕctus**, *a couch*. General

laws of language give us here some help. Some special laws, too, are well established; thus, every vowel followed by **ns** or **nf** was **long by nature**: as in **mēns, sapiēns, īnfelix, cōnfecit**; while e was short in **mĕntis, sapiĕntis**; o in **pŏntis, fŏntis, mŏntis**. In many cases we know the length of the vowel by finding the Latin word written in Greek: as, **Sēstius**, Σήστιος, **Rōscius**, Ῥώσκιος.

2. When we have no other reason, it is customary to say that a syllable is long or short *by authority*,—that is, the authority of the poets, whose *usage* is our guide.

274. *ELISION.*

1. When one word ends in a **vowel** or **diphthong**, or the letter **m**, and the following word begins with a **vowel** or **h**, such **final vowel** or **diphthong**, or **m with its vowel**, is **elided**; that is, does not count in the verse:

As, Quidve moror, si omnes uno ordine habetis Achivos; scanned thus:

Quidve moror, s[i] omnes un[o] ordin[e] habetis Achivos.

2. The first vowel of **est**, and sometimes of **es**, is often elided, instead of the preceding vowel: as, **labori 'st; timendumst; simili's** (**similis es**).

3. The earlier poets use elision more freely than the later. In the best ages, usage varies in different authors and in different styles of verse.

4. In reading, the elided vowels should be pronounced slightly and rapidly, rather than suppressed altogether.

5. The elision of a final vowel or diphthong is called **synaloepha**; that of **m** with the preceding vowel **ecthlipsis**.

6. On the elision of final **s**, see § **266, 2, n. 3.**

275. *HIATUS.*

Sometimes a vowel is left unelided before another. This open concurrence of vowels is called **hiātus**:

As, Nereidum matri **et** Neptuno **Aegaeo.**

1. The **monosyllabic interjections**, **ā, ō, heu**, are not elided by the dactylic poets.

Note 1.—Such elision would too much obscure and weaken the word. **Io** is found unelided in a few sentences, and once in Ovid the Greek interjection **ai ai.**

Note 2.—**O**, though not elided, is sometimes made **short**.

2. Sometimes a long vowel is left unelided and long in the arsis of a foot (**282, 1, 3**): as,

Stant et **juniperī** et **castaneae̅** hirsutae.
Ter sunt **conatī** imponere Peliŏ Ossam.

Once only Vergil leaves a syllable thus long in the thesis of the foot:

Glaucō et Panopēae ĕt Inōō Melicertae.

3. **Vergil** allows himself an **hiatus**, first, in the **arsis** of the second, third, fourth, or fifth foot, especially in proper names followed by a mark of punctuation, or where the same vowel is the initial of the following word; secondly, in the **thesis**, when in accordance with Greek precedents a **long** vowel or diphthong is **shortened**, especially in the case of **proper names** and **interjections**; with **short** vowels in the thesis, hiatus occurs only before a strong mark of punctuation (as in Aen. i. 405).

4. Hiatus in Vergil is often found in those lines which are formed on a **Greek** model, i. e., those which terminate in a quadrisyllable (and this, moreover, is frequently of Greek origin), or which have a spondaic ending.

276. *SYNAERĔSIS.*

1. Two vowels usually pronounced separately are sometimes contracted into one syllable:

As, **aur͞ea**, pronounced something like *aur͞ya;* **ferr͞ei**; **e͞osdem**, pronounced somewhat like *yōsdem.* So sometimes **Pha͞ethon** for *Phaĕthon;* **Orph͞ea, alv͞eo, d͞eorsum, d͞ein, d͞eesse, ante͞it.**

2. Such contraction is frequent in **ii, iidem, iisdem, dii, diis, dein, deinceps, deinde, deest, deerat, deero, deerit, deesse,** etc.

3. The vowels **i** and **u** are often made consonantal before another vowel: as, **vindemjator** (pronounced vindem*ya*tor), for **vindemiator**; so **arjetat, abjete, parjetibus, omnja, precantja, consiljum,** for **arietat,** etc.; for **genua, genva** (pronounced **genwa**); so **pitvita, patrvi, sinvatis,** etc. In the **genitive plural** of the **Fourth Declension, uu** is sometimes contracted.

4. When **i** and **u** are thus consonantal, they have, with another consonant, the power of lengthening a preceding short vowel.

5. If only one of the vowels is written, the contraction is called **crasis**: as, **di, derit.**

277. *DIALY̆SIS OR DIAERĔSIS.*

One syllable is sometimes divided into two:

As, **Tro-i-a** for **Tro-ja**; **sil-ŭ-a** for **sil-va**; **su-es-co** for **sue-sco**; **Or-phe-us** for **Or-pheus.**

278. *SYNCOPE.*

A short vowel, or a syllable, is sometimes omitted: as, **repostor** for **repositor**; **surpuit** for **surripuit.**

279. *SYSTŎLE.*

A syllable long by nature or position is sometimes **shortened**: as, **vidĕn** for **vidēsne**; **hŏdie** for **hōc die,** constantly; **stetĕrunt** for **stetērunt,** occasionally.

280. *DIASTŎLE.*

A syllable naturally **short** is sometimes **lengthened**: as, **Prīamides** for **Prĭamides.** Vergil sixteen times lengthens **-que.**

281. *TMESIS.*

Tmesis is the **separation** of the component **parts** of a **compound word** by an intervening word or words: as, **inque salutatam** for **insalutatamque.**

282. *SYNAPHĪA OR CONTINUITY.*

1. The first syllable of a following verse sometimes has an influence on the last syllable of the preceding, either by **position** or **elision.**

This is not uncommon in the Anapaestic system, and the Glyconic of Catullus.

2. The parts of a compound word are sometimes divided between two verses: as,

si non offenderet unum-
Quemque poetarum limae labor et mora.

3. For **hypermetrical** verses, see § 287.

VERSIFICATION.

283. A **verse** is composed of a certain number of **feet.**

1. Each foot has two parts,—the **arsis**, on which falls a special stress of voice called the **ictus**, or **stroke**, and the **thesis.*** The regular alternation of arsis and thesis in successive feet produces the **rhythm** or harmonious movement of the verse.

2. The most common feet in Latin are the following:

	Feet of Three Times.		
Trochee	– ᴗ	ā́rmă	♩ ♪
Iamb	ᴗ –	cănṓ	♪ ♩
Tribrach	ᴗ ᴗ ᴗ	tĕ́mĕrĕ	♪ ♪ ♪
	Feet of Four Times.		
Dactyl	– ᴗ ᴗ	lī́tŏră	♩ ♪ ♪
Anapaest	ᴗ ᴗ –	pătŭlā́e	♪ ♪ ♩
Spondee	– –	fā́tō	♩ ♩

* Originally, "the more strongly intoned part of the measure was called **thesis** (θέσις), because in beating time the foot was here set down, while the lighter part of the measure, during which the foot was raised, was called **arsis** (ἄρσις)." The Roman writers inverted this use. The accent in the examples marks the regular place of the **ictus.**

3. The **ictus** falls on the **long syllable**, as marked in the examples.

4. The **spondee** and the **tribrach** are merely representative feet, and take their character and ictus from the kind of verse in which they are found.

5. The following is a full list of Feet or so-called Feet.

Pyrrhic	⏑ ⏑	pătĕr	Paeon Secundus	⏑ – ⏑ ⏑	ămābĭmŭs
Iamb	⏑ –	ămā́nt	Paeon Tertius	⏑ ⏑ – ⏑	nĕmŏrālĭs
Trochee	– ⏑	vī́dĭt	Paeon Quartus	⏑ ⏑ ⏑ –	rĕgĭmĭnī
Spondee	– –	lātōs	Ionic *a minori*	⏑ ⏑ – –	mĕtŭēntēs
Tribrach	⏑ ⏑ ⏑	rĕgĕrĕ	Ionic *a majori*	– – ⏑ ⏑	tērrēbĭmŭs
Anăpaest	⏑ ⏑ –	ănĭmṓs	Diiambus	⏑ – ⏑ –	prŏtērvĭtās
Dactyl	– ⏑ ⏑	cṓrpŏră	Ditrochee	– ⏑ – ⏑	cōndĭdīssĕ
Cretic	– ⏑ –	dī́xĕrā́nt	Choriamb	– ⏑ ⏑ –	ōppŏsĭtīs
Amphĭbrach	⏑ – ⏑	lătī́nŭs	Antispast	⏑ – – ⏑	rĕgēbāmŭr
Bacchīus	⏑ – –	rĕgḗbānt	Epitrĭtus Primus	⏑ – – –	ămāvīstī
Palimbacchīus	– – ⏑	rḗxīssĕ	Epitrĭtus Secundus	– ⏑ – –	aūdĭēbās
Molossus	– – –	dīcēbās	Epitrĭtus Tertius	– – ⏑ –	aūdīvĕrānt
Proceleusmatic	⏑ ⏑ ⏑ ⏑	hŏmĭnĭbŭs	Epitrĭtus Quartus	– – – ⏑	rēxīssēmŭs
Paeon Primus	– ⏑ ⏑ ⏑	cṓndĭdĭmŭs	Dispondee	– – – –	sūspēxērūnt

6. In **Falling Rhythms**, the verse moves from **long** syllables **to short**, as in verses composed of **dactyls** and **trochees**; in **Rising Rhythms, from short to long,** as in verses composed of **iambs** and **anapaests.** Rising rhythms may be treated as Falling, by considering the first short syllable or syllables as an **Anacrŭsis,** or **Base** (**284,** *C*).

284. Explanation of technical terms.

A. **Hemimĕris** (ἡμίμερις) means $\frac{1}{2}$. Hence one foot and a half ($\frac{3}{2}$) is called **Trihemimeris**; two feet and a half ($\frac{5}{2}$), **Penthemimeris**; three feet and a half ($\frac{7}{2}$), **Hephthemimeris**; four feet and a half ($\frac{9}{2}$), **Ennehemimeris.**

1. Hence: *a.* **Caesura** (§ 286) after $1\frac{1}{2}$ feet is called Trihemimeral; *b.* after $2\frac{1}{2}$ feet, Penthemimeral; *c.* after $3\frac{1}{2}$ feet, Hephthemimeral; *d.* after $4\frac{1}{2}$ feet, Ennehemimeral.

Examples:	*a*	*b*	*c*	*d*
1. Fúdit equúm	magnó	tellús	percússa	tridénti.—Verg.
2. Aut ámite	lévi	rára	téndit	rétia.—Hor.
	a	*b*	*c*	*d*

In the first verse, a Dactylic Hexameter, the fourth caesura is **weak**, the others **strong** (§ 286, 7).

In the second verse, an Iambic Trimeter, all the caesuras are after thesis, and therefore **weak.**

2. In distinction from Caesura (which is the coincidence of the close of a word with the middle of a foot), the coincidence of the close of a word with the close of a foot is called **Diærĕsis**: as,

Lumina | labentem caelo quae | ducitis | annum.

3. **Diaerĕsis** in some metres coincides with a **natural pause** in the verse, caused by the ending of a rhythmic series. It is marked ‖.

B. **Metre** (*μέτρον, measure*) is used in **two senses.**

I. **Metre,** in the first place, means the **verse or system of verses** used by a poet in any composition: as, **Heroic, Elegīac, Alcāic, Sapphic Metre.**

1. A Metre which contains only one kind of verse is called **Monocōlum**; a metre which contains only two kinds, **Dicōlum**; one which contains only three kinds, **Tricōlum** (from *μόνος, single; κῶλον, member*).

2. When **two kinds** of verse **alternate,** they form **Distĭchum** (from *δίς, twice; στίχος, row*), a **Distich or couple.**

When recurrence takes place after four verses, these form a **Tetrastich** (stanza).

3. Thus the **Dactylic Hexameter** (Heroic), **Iambic Trimeter, Trochaic Tetrameter,** and others, are found as **Metra Monocola.** The **Elegiac Metre** and many others are **Dicola Disticha.** The **Sapphic** and some others are **Dicola Tetrasticha.** The **Alcaic** is **Tricolum Tetrastichum.**

II. **Metre,** in the second place, is used to express **a given portion of a Verse** in some Rhythms: as the Dactylic, the Trochaic, the Iambic, and the Anapaestic.

1. In a **Dactylic** Verse, **one foot** constitutes a **Metre.**

In **Trochaic, Iambic,** and **Anapaestic** Rhythms **two feet,** or a **Dipody** (*διποδία*), constitute a **Metre.**

2. A Verse comprised in a single Metre is called **Monometer**; in two, **Dimeter**; in three, **Trimeter**; in four, **Tetrameter**; in five, **Pentameter**; in six, **Hexameter.**

3. Wanting one syllable to complete its metres a Verse is called **Catalectic** (*καταληκτικός*); **in syllăbam,** if the incomplete foot retains one syllable; **in disyllăbum,** if it retains two; wanting two syllables, **Brachycatalectic** (*βραχυκατάληκτος*); having a syllable above its metres, **Hypercatalectic** (*ὑπερκατάληκτος*); having its metres complete, **Acatalectic** (*ἀκατάληκτος*).

4. The **time** of the omitted syllable or syllables in a catalectic verse is filled by **a pause.** A **pause of one time,** equivalent to a short syllable, is marked ∧; a **pause of two times,** $\bar{\wedge}$.

5. A Verse may also be called according to the **number of feet**: **Binarius** (2), as the Adonian; **Ternarius** (3), as the Pherecratēan; **Quaternarius** (4), as the Trochaic or Iambic Dimeter; **Senarius** (6), as the Dactylic Hexameter or the Iambic Trimeter; **Septenarius** (7), as the Trochaic Tetrameter Catalectic; **Octonarius** (8), as the Trochaic Tetrameter Acatalectic of the scenic poets.

6. Or a Verse may be called according to the **number of its syllables,** as Phalaecius **Hendecasyllabus** (11). So the Alcaic Strophe consists of two Alcaic **Hendecasyllabi** (11), one Alcaic **Enneasyllabus** (9), and one Alcaic **Decasyllabus** (10).

C. 1. A syllable at the beginning of a Verse before the just Rhythm, is called **Anacrūsis** (*ἀνάκρουσις, back-stroke*): as (according to one mode of scansion),

23

O | magna Carthago probrosis.

2. Two syllables so preceding the just Rhythm are called a **Base,** which may be **trochaic:**

Lūte | umve papaver;

or **spondaic:**

Dūrām | difficilis mane;

or even **iambic.**

3. A **double Base,** according to some metrists, is **trochee + spondee,** e. g., in the Sapphic Verse, as they explain it:

Illĕ mī pār | esse deo videtur.

This may even have an Anacrusis before it: as,

Mōrs | ēt fŭgācēm | persequitur virum.

D. A Verse is called **Asynartēte** (ἀσυνάρτητος) which is really composed of two different verses welded together:

Tu vina Torquato move ‖ consule pressa meo (§ **299, 1**).

E. Some kinds of verse are named after their **inventor** or **first user,** usually a Greek lyric poet: e. g., **Archilŏchus, Alcaeus, Alcman, Sappho, Hippōnax, Anacreon, Pherecrătes, Asclepiădes,** and **Glycon.**

285. *THE DACTYLIC HEXAMETER.*

1. The dactylic hexameter, first adapted from the Greek by Ennius, became the heroic measure in Latin. It consists of six feet, of which the last is always a spondee, the fifth is generally a dactyl, and any of the first four may be either a dactyl or a spondee.

2. From its sustained and continuous flow, this is the verse best adapted for narrative (or epic) poems, and it is used also in didactic poems, satires, and poetic epistles.

3. The spondee has the same **time** as the dactyl, and in dactylic verse takes an **ictus** on its first syllable.

4. In Homer, the last foot is a trochee or curtailed dactyl; while the best Latin verse lets us see that in the writer's mind it was rather a genuine spondee. (Munro.)

5. Sometimes the fifth foot is a spondee. The line is then called spondaic.

6. The last word in the verse is seldom a monosyllable, and only so to produce a special effect: as, **procumbit humi bos; praeruptus aquae mons.**

7. A light and rapid movement is given to the verse by frequency of dactyls; a slow and weighty movement by spondees: as,

Quā́drŭpĕdā́ntĕ pŭtrḗm sŏnĭtū́ quătĭt ū́ngŭlă cā́mpŭm.

Ī́ll*i* īntḗr sēsḗ māgnā́ vī brā́cchĭă tṓllūnt.

286. *CAESURA.*

1. **Caesūra** occurs where a word, which began in a preceding foot, ends in the middle of a foot:

As, **Ū́nă să | lū́s† vīc | tī́s‡, nūl | lā́m† spē | rārĕ† să | lū́tēm.**

2. In every verse, melody requires a **pause.** This ordinarily corresponds with a caesura, and is called the **caesural pause.**

In the example above, it is marked ‡, the other caesuras being marked †.

3. The caesural pause frequently concurs with a pause of sense; and where there are several possible places for it, considerations of the sense and of the proper connection of words have weight in determining it. Thus:

Hīnc mātēr† cūltrīx† Cȳbĕlī,‡ Cŏrȳbāntĭăqu*e* ǽra.
Nēqu*e* īntēr† sānctōs† īgnēs‡ ĭn hŏnōrĕ dĕōrum.

4. The most natural and common place of the caesural pause in a hexameter verse is after the arsis in the third foot: as,

Cṓntĭcŭḗr*e* ōmnḗs,‡ īntḗntīqu*e* ṓră tĕnḗbānt.

A pause in the fourth foot, however, is very agreeable, when at the same time there is a less considerable pause in the second foot: as,

Ī́tălĭā́m,† fātṓ† prŏfŭgū́s‡ Lāvī́n*i*ăquĕ vḗnit.

5. The so-called **Bucolic Caesura** is a **diaerĕsis** (§ **284**, *A*, **2**) at the end of the fourth foot: as,

Ī́tĕ dŏmū́m sătŭrǽ, vĕnĭt Hḗspĕrŭs, ‖ ī́tĕ căpḗllǣ.

6. The more frequent occurrence of the pause in the third foot gives the flow of the verse a certain unity, while occasional changes of its place prevent monotony. The expression of the verse is greatly affected by the place of the pause or pauses. The earlier caesuras in general give to the verse more vivacity; the later, more gravity.

7. When only one syllable in the foot precedes it, the **caesura** is called **strong**, or *masculine;* when two syllables, it is called **weak, trochaic**, or *feminine.* Thus, the caesura after **spērārĕ** is **weak** in the verse

Ū́nă sălū́s vīctī́s, nūllā́m spērā́rĕ sălū́tem;

and the other caesuras in the same verse are **strong** (unless, with some grammarians, we regard the ending of a word before the end of the first foot as making a caesura, in which case there is a weak caesura after **una**).

287. *HYPERMETRICAL VERSES.*

Ennius and Vergil sometimes introduce a verse containing a syllable beyond the number requisite for the metre; this syllable, however, ends in a vowel, or in **m** preceded by a vowel, and is elided before the initial vowel of the following line.

Such verses are sometimes effective as denoting that the speaker is *carried on* beyond bounds by his excitement, or breaks off leaving something still unsaid; or simply as giving an emphatic ending to the sentence.

Examples:

> **Ímprĕcŏr, ārm***a* **ārmī́s; pūgnḗnt īpsī́quĕ nĕpṓtēs***que.*
>
> **Sḗ sătĭs ā́mbōbū́s Teūcrī́squĕ vĕnī́rĕ Lătī́nīs***que.*

288. *THE ELEGĪAC DISTICH.*

The Elegīac distich consists of a **Dactylic Hexameter** verse followed by a so-called **Pentameter.** The latter consists of two Dactylic penthemimers: each penthemimer consisting of two feet,—either of which, in the first, may be a dactyl or a spondee, but both of which must be dactyls in the second,—followed by a long syllable. The long syllable is dwelt upon, and followed by a pause, so that it is really equivalent to a foot; and the verse should be called **hexameter,** though differing from the ordinary dactylic hexameter.

Examples:

> **Jām sĕgĕs ēst ŭbĭ Trōjă fŭĭt, rĕsĕcāndăquĕ fālce**
> **Lūxŭrĭăt Phrȳgĭō ‖ sānguĭnĕ pīnguĭs hŭmūs, ⊼**
> **Sēmĭsĕpūltă vĭrūm cūrvīs fĕrĭūntŭr ărātrīs**
> **Ōssă, rŭīnōsas ‖ ōccŭlĭt hērbă dŏmōs. ⊼**

289. *OTHER DACTYLIC METRES.*

1. The **Dactylic Tetrameter acatalectic** occurs rarely. It consists of **four Dactyls,** for either of the **first three** of which a **Spondee** may be substituted:

–́ ⏕ | –́ ⏕ | –́ ⏕ | –́ ⏑ ⏑

2. The **Dactylic Tetrameter catalectic** is similar to the last four feet of the Hexameter. It is used chiefly with other verses:

–́ ⏕ | –́ ⏕ | –́ ⏕ | –́ ⏑

3. The **Dactylic Dimeter catalectic** (called **Adonic** from a poem of Sappho addressing Adonis), like the last two feet of the Hexameter, consists of a **Dactyl** and a **Trochee** or **Spondee.** In the **Sapphic strophe**, the dactyl is **cyclic**, and the second foot a **trochee:**

⊥⏑ ⏑ | ⊥ ⏑

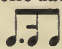
4. The **Dactylic Trimeter catalectic in syllăbam, or minor Archilochian,** consists of **two Dactyls** and a **long syllable.** It is used only with other verses. By adding a **pause**, it may be regarded as **Dactylic Trimeter:**

⊥ ⏑ ⏑ | ⊥ ⏑ ⏑ | ⊥ ⊼

290. *TROCHAIC METRES.*

1. **Trochaic Tetrameter catalectic** consists of **eight trochees** (two trochees making a metre), for any of which an irrational trochee may be used, and for any but the last a cyclic dactyl, an apparent anapaest (here a resolved irrational trochee), or a tribrach. There is a **diaerĕsis** after the first dimeter. Found only in the comic poets.

Note 1.—As a **long syllable shortened,** so as to take the place of a short syllable in verse, is called **irrational**, and marked >, the same name is given to the **foot** in which it occurs; thus, a **spondee used for a trochee** is called an **irrational trochee,** ⊥ >, and a **spondee used for an iamb,** an **irrational iamb, >** ⊥.

Note 2.—**A dactyl taking the place of a trochee** is called a **cyclic dactyl,** and is marked –⏑ ⏑; it may be represented approximately by ; an **anapaest taking the place of an iamb** is called a **cyclic anapaest,** marked ⏑ ⏑–. The name **cyclic**, given by the ancients, is supposed to be derived from the use of these rapid feet in the dancing measures in the choruses.

Note 3.—A **tribrach** taking the place of a **trochee** has the **ictus** on its **first** syllable, its first two syllables representing the **long** syllable of the trochee, which of course has the ictus. A **spondee** used for a trochee has also its ictus on the first syllable.

2. **Trochaic Tetrameter catalectic** consists of seven trochees and an additional syllable; the **diaerĕsis** after the first dimeter. It is frequent in comic poets with the same choice of feet as in the acatalectic. Seneca observes stricter rules, allowing tribrachs in the odd places, except the last, spondees (i. e., irrational trochees) and irrational anapaests in the even places, and cyclic dactyls in the first, second, and sixth places.

Note.—By observing a **pause** after the syllable in the eighth place, the verse may be treated as **acatalectic.** The same principle applies in other catalectic measures.

3. **Trochaic Dimeter catalectic** consists of **three trochees** and a **long syllable.** It is used only in combination with other verses.

4. **Trochaic Dimeter brachycatalectic**, or **Ithyphallic**, consists of **three trochees**, and hence may be called **Trochaic Tripody**. It is used only with other verses.

291. *DACTYLO-TROCHAIC OR LOGAOEDIC VERSES.*

1. The **Greater Archilochian metre** consists of **four cyclic dactyls** followed by **three trochees**. In any of the **first three feet, irrational trochees** may be used. It is found only with other verses.

> –́⏑ ⏑ | > –́⏑ ⏑ | > –́⏑ ⏑ | –́⏑ ⏑ | –́ ⏑ | –́ ⏑ | –́ ⏑

2. The **Alcāic Decasyllable** consists of **two cyclic dactyls** (not each contained in a single word), followed by **two trochees**. It is a **combination of the endings** of the two metres used in the first three lines (§ **292, 4, 5**) of the **Alcaic stanza**, in which it forms, as a **refrain**, the **fourth** or closing line.

–́⏑ ⏑ | –́⏑ ⏑ | –́ ⏑ | –́ ⏑

3. The **Aristophanic** consists of a **dactyl** followed by **two trochees**; or, otherwise, of a **cyclic dactyl**, a **trochee**, a **lengthened long syllable**, and a **long syllable with pause**:

–́⏑ ⏑ | –́ ⏑ | └–́┘ | – ∧

292. *TROCHAEO-DACTYLIC METRES.*

1. The **Sapphic minor is a Trochaic tetrapody**, with **a dactyl** always in the **third foot**. It consists of a **trochee**, **irrational trochee**, **cyclic dactyl**, and **two trochees**. Catullus has, but rarely, a true trochee in the second foot. There is a **caesura, usually strong**, sometimes **weak**, in the **dactyl**. Usually combined with the **Adonic**.

–́ ⏑ | –́ > | –́, ⏑⏑ | –́ ⏑ | –́ ⏑

2. The **greater Sapphic** consists of the **minor Sapphic with a choriamb** inserted before the dactyl. This choriamb is best treated as a **cyclic dactyl** and a **long syllable followed by a pause**, equivalent to a **trochee**.

–́ ⏑ | –́ > | –́⏑ ⏑ | └–́┘, ‖ –́⏑ ⏑ | –́ ⏑ | └–́┘ | – ∧ ‖

3. The **Phalaecian**, or simply **Hendecasyllabus**, is also a **Trochaic pentapody**. The first foot is usually an **irrational trochee**, but in Catullus occasionally a true trochee or iamb; the second a **cyclic dactyl** (except in Catul. 55, where it is frequently a spondee, i. e., an irrational trochee); the other three feet are **trochees**. There is no special caesura.

4. The **Alcāic hendecasyllabus** consists of a **long or short syllable** as an **anacrūsis**, a **trochee**, an **irrational trochee**, and **two cyclic dactyls**.

There is generally a diaeresis after the spondee (i. e., the irrational trochee). It is used in the first two lines in the **Alcaic stanza.**

$\underset{\smile}{>}$ | ⊥ ⏑ | ⊥ <, | ⊥⏑ ⏑ | ⊥⏑ ⏑

5. The **Alcāic enneasyllabus** consists of a **long or short syllable** as an **anacrūsis, a trochee, an irrational trochee,** and **two trochees.** It forms the **third line** of the **Alcaic stanza.**

$\underset{\smile}{>}$ | ⊥ ⏑ | ⊥ <, | ⊥ ⏑ | ⊥ ⏑

6. The **Pherecratian** consists in Catullus of a **trochee or irrational trochee, a cyclic dactyl,** and a **trochee**; in Horace, of an **irrational trochee,** a **dactyl,** and a **spondee** (or, better, a **lengthened long syllable,** followed by a **long syllable and a pause**). Used in stanzas with other metres.

⊥ > | ⊥⏑ ⏑ | └́─ | – ∧

7. The **Glyconic** consists of a **trochee or irrational trochee,** followed by a **cyclic dactyl,** a **trochee,** and a **long syllable** with a **pause.** Catullus has usually a trochee in the first place; Horace almost always a spondee.

⊥ > | ⊥⏑ ⏑ | ⊥ ⏑ | – ∧

8. The **Priapēan** consists of a **trochee** or **irrational trochee,** a **cyclic dactyl,** a **trochee,** a **long syllable followed by a pause,** equivalent to a **trochee,** a **trochee,** a **cyclic dactyl,** and a **trochee.** (Catul. 17.)

⊥ $\underset{\smile}{>}$ | ⊥⏑ ⏑ | ⊥ ⏑ | └́─, ‖ ⊥ $\underset{\smile}{>}$ | ⊥⏑ ⏑ | ⊥ ⏑

293. *CHORIAMBIC METRES, SO CALLED.*

1. The **minor Asclepiadēan** is sometimes considered as consisting of a **spondee, a choriamb,** and **two dactyls**; but, better, of an **irrational trochee, a cyclic dactyl, a long syllable followed by a pause,** making it equivalent to a foot, a **cyclic dactyl,** a **trochee,** and a **long syllable** followed by a **pause.**

⊥ > | ⊥⏑ ⏑ | └́─, ‖ ⊥⏑ ⏑ | ⊥ ⏑ | – ∧ ‖

2. The **greater Asclepiadēan** is sometimes considered as consisting of a **spondee, two choriambs,** and **two dactyls.** But each of the choriambs should be treated as a **dactyl** and a **long syllable followed by a pause,** as in the minor Asclepiadean metre. The **spondee** is an **irrational trochee,** and the **dactyls** are **cyclic.** There is usually a diaeresis after each choriamb.

⊥ > | ⊥⏑ ⏑ | └́─, ‖ ⊥⏑ ⏑ | └́─, ‖ ⊥⏑ ⏑ | ⊥ ⏑ | – ∧ ‖

3. For the **greater Sapphic,** see § **292, 2.**

294. *CRETIC AND GREATER IONIC METRES.*

1. The **Cretic Tetrameter acatalectic** consists of **four cretics**. It occasionally admits a **dactyl** or **paeon**, or even a **molossus** as an **irrational cretic**. It is found only in the comic poets.

2. The **Cretic Tetrameter catalectic** has **three cretics** followed by a **spondee**.

3. The **Sotadēan** consists of three **ionics a majori** and one **trochee**. A double trochee is often substituted for the third ionic, and sometimes for the first; and some of the long syllables are occasionally resolved into two shorts.

295. *ANAPAESTIC METRES.*

1. The **Anapaestic dimeter acatalectic** consists of **four anapaests**, for any of which a **spondee** (with the **ictus** on the **last syllable**), and for the **first** and **third** of which a **dactyl** (with the **ictus** on the **second syllable**), may be substituted. There is a diaeresis after the second foot.

2. The **Anapaestic dimeter catalectic**, or **Paroemiac** verse, consists of **three anapaests** (or their substitutes) and a **short syllable**.

3. The **Anapaestic monometer acatalectic** consists of two feet, either **anapaests** or **spondees**. The first may be a **dactyl**. It is only used interspersed among dimeters.

Note.—Many metrists regard the first two short syllables in an **anapaestic** line as an **anacrusis**, and thus treat all anapaestic verses as **dactylic**.

296. *IAMBIC METRES.*

1. The **Iambic Tetrameter catalectic** consists of **seven iambs and a half.** In the **first** and **fifth** places are found apparent **spondees** occasionally. The comic poets use apparent spondees and dactyls, and cyclic anapaests, in every place but the seventh.

Note.—In iambic verse, spondees and anapaests take the ictus on the last syllable; tribrachs and dactyls on the second.

2. The **Iambic Trimeter acatalectic** consists of **six iambs**. It is sometimes found pure throughout a poem, but generally in **Horace** admits an **irrational iamb** frequently, a **cyclic dactyl** rarely, in the **first**, **third**, and **fifth** places, and a **cyclic anapaest** in the **first** and **fifth**. The **tribrach** occurs in all places except the last. There is a caesura usually in the **middle** of the **third foot**, sometimes not until the middle of the **fourth**.

3. The **Iambic Scazon** or **Hippōnactēan**, also a Trimeter Acatalectic, differs from the preceding by having always a **spondee** in the **sixth foot** and **iamb** in the **fifth**. Either a **spondee**, **anapaest**, or **dactyl** may be used in the **first** or **third** feet; a **tribrach** in the **second**, **third**, and **fourth**. The **caesura** is in the **third** or **fourth foot**.

4. The **Iambic Trimeter catalectic** consists of **four iambs** and a bac-

chīus, or rather of **five iambs** and a **long syllable** following by a **pause**, making it equivalent to a foot. **Spondees** (irrational iambs) are sometimes used in the first and third places, and a **tribrach** once occurs. There is a diaeresis in the **middle of the third foot.** It is used only with other verses.

5. The **Iambic Dimeter acatalectic** consists of **four iambs**, for the **first** and **third** of which a **spondee** (irrational iamb) is often substituted. A **tribrach** and (**cyclic**) **dactyl** also occur, though rarely. It is used with other verses.

6. The **Iambic Dimeter catalectic** consists of **two iambs** and a **bacchīus**; or, better, of **three iambs** and a **long syllable followed by a pause.** A special form of this verse, called the **Anacreontic**, has an **anapaest** in the **first foot.**

7. The **Iambic Dimeter brachycatalectic** consists of **three iambs.** It is found only at the close of a system of dimeter catalectics.

Note.—Many metrists regard the first syllable in an iambic line as an **anacrusis**, and thus treat all iambic verses as **trochaic**.

297. *ANAPAESTO-IAMBIC METRE.*

The **Galliambic** consists in theory of two **Iambic** or **Anacreontic Dimeters**, of which the first is **catalectic**, and the second **brachycatalectic.** There are thus **six feet**, which are usually **anapaest, iamb, bacchīus, anapaest, tribrach, iamb**; but with some variations.

The metre is found only in Catullus 65. The name is from the Gallic priests of Cybĕle, who form the subject of the poem.

298. *BACCHIAC AND LESSER IONIC METRES.*

1. The **Bacchīac Tetrameter acatalectic** consists of **four bacchīi**; a long syllable may sometimes be resolved into two short, and in some instances a **molossus** occurs as an **irrational bacchius.** It is found only in comic poets.

Occasionally a **Bacchīac Hexameter** occurs.

2. The **Ionic a minori**, occurring in Latin only in Horace iii. 12, is composed of forty feet, all **ionics a minori.** As the **synaphīa** is perfect, it may be divided into **four decameters**; but it is best printed in four stanzas, in each of which the first, second, and fourth lines are **dimeters**, the **third** a **tetrameter.** It may also be divided into stanzas of three lines, two tetrameters and a dimeter.

299. *IAMBS AND DACTYLS.*

1. The **Iambilegic** verse consists of an **iambic dimeter**, followed by a **minor Archilochian** (§ 289, 4), which is a **dactylic penthemimer.** There is a **diaeresis** after the penthemimer.

>> >
⏑ – | ⏑ – | ⏑ – | ⏑ – ‖ – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⊼
S

2. The **Elegiambic verse** consists of a **dactylic penthemimer** followed by an **iambic dimeter**. There is a **diaeresis** after the penthemimer.

– ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ | ⏗ ‖ ⏑̆> – | ⏑ – | ⏑̆> – | ⏑ –

300. *IAMBICO-TROCHAIC METRE.*

The **Saturnian** is the oldest form of Latin verse, resembling the English ballad metre:

The queên is ín her párlor, ‖ êating bréad and hóney.

Many irregularities occur.

Examples:

Dăbúnt mălúm Mĕtéllī, ‖ Naévĭó pŏétae.
Immortales mortales ‖ si foret fas flere,
Flerent divae camenae ‖ Naevium poetam;
Itaque postquam est orcino ‖ traditus thesauro
Obliti sunt Romāi ‖ loquier lingua latina.

301. *HORATIAN METRES.*

In the Odes and Epodes of Horace, the following Metres are found

1. The **minor Asclepiadēan system**, consisting of four minor Asclepiadēan verses (**293, 1**). **Od.** i. 1; iii. 30; iv. 8.

2. The **first Asclepiadēan strophe**, in which the **Glyconic verse (292, 7)** alternates with the **minor Asclepiadēan (293, 1)**. **Od. i. 3, 13, 19, 36;** iii. 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28; iv. 1, 3.

3. The **second Asclepiadēan strophe**, consisting of three **minor Asclepiadēan** verses followed by a **Glyconic**. **Od.** i. 6, 15, 24, 33; ii. 12; iii. 10, 16; iv. 5, 12.

4. The **third Asclepiadēan strophe**, consisting of two **minor Asclepiadēan** verses, a **Pherecratēan (292, 6)**, and a **Glyconic**. **Od.** i. 5, 14, 21, 23; iii. 7, 13; iv. 13.

5. The **greater Asclepiadēan system**, consisting of **four greater Asclepiadēan verses** (**293, 2**). **Od.** i. 11, 18; iv. 10.

6. The **Sapphic strophe**, consisting of three **minor Sapphic verses (292, 1)** and one **Adonic** verse (**289, 3**). Horace has a **caesura** generally in the dactyl.

Od. i. 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38; ii. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16; iii. 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27; iv. 2, 6, 11; **Carmen Saeculare.**

7. The **greater Sapphic strophe**; an **Aristophanic verse (291, 3)** followed by a **greater Sapphic (292, 2)**. **Od.** i. 8.

8. The **Alcaic strophe** consists of the **Alcaic hendecasyllabic verse** (**292, 4**) twice repeated, an **Alcaic enneasyllabic (292, 5)**, and an **Alcaic decasyllabic verse (291, 2)**. Horace has a **diaeresis** after the second trochee in the first three lines.

Note.—No one who feels the beauty of the **refrain** in the fourth verse of the Alcaic strophe, can fail to recognize the dactylic ending of the hendecasyllable and the trochaic ending of the enneasyllable. Observe, too, that the third verse is the doubling of the first half (after the anacrusis) of the first and second verses.

This is often called the **Horatian stanza,** Horace using it more frequently than any other. **Od.** i. 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37; ii. 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20; iii. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29; iv. 4, 9, 14, 15.

9. The **first Archilochian strophe,** in which the **dactylic hexameter** alternates with the **minor Archilochian** verse (**289, 4**). (**Od.** iv. 7.)

10. The **second Archilochian strophe,** in which the **dactylic hexameter** alternates with an **iambilegic** verse (**299, 1**); so that in this strophe an iambic dimeter is interposed between the two members of the first Archilochian strophe. **Ep.** 13.

11. The **third Archilochian strophe; iambic trimeters** alternating with **elegiambic verses** (**299, 2**). **Ep.** 11.

12. The **fourth Archilochian strophe,** in which the **greater Archilochian** verse (**291, 1**) alternates with the **iambic trimeter catalectic,** or, as it may be better considered, a **trochaic pentapody with anacrusis. Od.** i. 4.

13. The **Alcmanian strophe: dactylic hexameters** alternating with **dactylic tetrameters catalectic** (**289, 2**). **Od.** i. 7, 28.

14. The **Iambic trimeter. Ep.** 17.

15. The **Iambic strophe: iambic trimeters** alternating with **iambic dimeters.** The first ten **Epodes.**

16. The **first Pythiambic strophe: dactylic hexameters** alternating with **iambic dimeters. Ep.** 14, 15.

17. The **second Pythiambic strophe: dactylic hexameters** alternating with **iambic trimeters. Ep.** 16.

18. The **Trochaic strophe** or the **Hipponactēan: trochaic dimeters catalectic** alternating with **iambic dimeters catalectic. Od.** ii. 18.

19. The **Ionic a minori** (**298, 2**). **Od.** iii. 12.

302. *EARLY DRAMATIC VERSE.*

In early dramatic verse the quantity of syllables was not so definitely fixed or observed as in the later dactylic and other verse. The principal cases of deviation may be classified as follows:

1. Final syllables, afterwards short, were sometimes used with their original long quantity: as, **famā** (nom. sing.), **sorōr, patēr; amēt, sciāt, ponebāt, percipīt, vendidīt; amēr, loquār; milēs.**

2. Final syllables with long vowels were sometimes used as short: as, **domŏ** (abl. sing.), **probĕ** (adv.), **tacĕ, manŭ, virĭ; conrigĭ, bonăs, forăs, dolŏs, ovĕs, manŭs** (acc. plur.), **bonĭs, habĕnt.** This is almost confined to iambic words.

3. Syllables containing a vowel followed by two consonants were sometimes used as short. Such are:

Syllables in the later language written with doubled consonants: as, **ĭmmo, ĭlle, simĭllimae, Philĭppus, ĕsse, ŏcculto;**

Some syllables with two different consonants: as, **ĭnter, ĭnterim, ĭntus, ĭnde, ĭste, ŭnde, nĕmpe, ŏmnis, ĕcquis.** So also (according to some) **volŭptas, magĭstratus, minĭstrabit, venŭstas, senĕctus** (or perhaps **volptas, magstratus**); **ĕxpediant, ĕxigere, ŭxorem.**

4. Final syllables ending in a consonant were sometimes not lengthened, though the next word began with a consonant: as, (in Terence) **enĭm vero, auctŭs sit, sorŏr dictast, dabĭt nēmo, simŭl conficiam, tamĕn suspicor; apud** is frequently so used: even **studĕnt facere.** This license is most frequent when the final consonant is **m, s, r,** or **t**; and is due to the tendency of the early language to drop the final consonant, and to shorten the final vowel.

5. Synizēsis is freely used: as, **tvos** for **tuos, svos** for **suus, scjo** for **scio, pver** for **puer, fvit** for **fuit, djes** for **dies, filjo** for **filio, otjum** for **otium.**

6. Long initial syllables were slurred into short quantity when they followed monosyllables or elided pyrrichs; sometimes also at the beginning of a verse.

7. Spondees, dactyls, anapaests, and even proceleusmatics, were freely used for iambs or trochees, except in the last foot of the verse. (Roby, in part.)

303. *METRICAL READING.*

1. Verse should be read with a certain metrical **expression,** which a delicate taste will suggest, but for which no formal rules can be given. Some **ictuses** will be observed more strongly than others. The meaning of the words, and their rhetorical character as spirited or quiet, glad or plaintive, etc., will have its influence.

2. While students will need some exercises at first in simply marking off the feet, and indicating the place of ictus, caesura, or diaeresis, before they become initiated in the mysteries of metre, good **metrical reading,** as in English verse, preserves the words intact, and gives to the ear at once the sense and the melody.

3. Some kinds of verse admit of more than one way of scanning, and metrists differ in their preferences. But as the rhythm depends upon the alternations of long and short syllables—undisputed facts in any verse, unless sometimes in the final syllable—there is not room for so much difference in the actual reading as there is in regard to the theory of the structure of the verse.

Appendix.

Grammatical and Rhetorical Terms.

304. *GRAMMATICAL TERMS AND FIGURES.*

Amphĭbŏlia, *ambiguity;* e. g., **aio te Romanos vincere posse,** "Pyrrhus the Romans shall, I say, subdue;" where **te** may be subject and **Romanos** object, and *vice versa.*

Anăcŏlūthŏn, *non-sequence,* where a sentence is begun in one way and finished in another way, with a changed construction; e. g., **Deos verisimile est ut alios indulgentius tractent** for **deos . . . alios tractare** or **Di . . . ut . . . tractent.**

Anastrŏphē, *inversion;* e. g., **male quod vult** for **quod male vult; tecum** for **cum te; transtra per et remos** for **per transtra,** etc.

Aphaerĕsĭs, *omission* of a letter or syllable at the beginning of a word; e. g., **lis** for **stlis, natus** for **gnatus.**

Apŏcŏpē, *cutting off,* i. e., omission of a letter or syllable at the end of a word; e. g., **ille** for **illus, me** for **med, vigil** for **vigilis.**

Apŏdŏsĭs, *reply,* applied especially to the consequent clause of a conditional sentence.

Archaism, use of an *old* or obsolete form, word, or expression; e. g., **olli** in Vergil for **illi; duellum** in Horace for **bellum; animai; in cassum magnum** (Lucr.).

Assimilation, when of two consonants the former is either made the same as the latter, or changed into another consonant of like kind: as, **cessi** for **cedsi; scriptus** for **scribtus; defensum** for **defendtum** (where the **t** of the suffix is changed to **s,** and the final **d** of the stem assimilated to it; **s** being often written for double **s**).

Asyndĕtŏn, *omission of conjunctions;* e. g., **usus fructus; sarta tecta; inde ventis remis in patriam properavi** (Cic.); **abiit, excessit, evasit, erupit.**

Attraction, when a word, by the influence of another, is diverted from the

usual construction to a less usual one; e. g., **hic est quem quaero hominem; urbem quam statuo vestra est.**

Barbarism, using a faulty *non-Latin* word, especially a word faultily formed; e. g., **gladia** for **gladii, scala** for **scalae.** Distinguished by relating to a single word from **solecism** which relates to false syntax of several words or a phrase.

Brachўlŏgy, *shortening of expression.*

Crāsĭs, *union* of two or more vowel sounds; e. g., **cors** for **cŏhors, prorsus** for **prōversus.**

Diaerĕsĭs, *separation* of one vowel sound into two; e. g., **Orphĕŭs** for **Orpheus**: also the treatment of a usually consonantal **v** as a vowel; e. g., **sĭlŭae** for **silvae.** In **verse**, it means also the coincidence of the **end of a word** with the **end of a foot.**

Ecthlīpsĭs, *crushing out,* in verse of a syllable ending in **m** before an ensuing vowel.

Ellīpsĭs, *omission* of one or more words which would be used if complete fulness of expression were necessary.

Enallăgē, *change;* i. e. putting of one part of speech, number, case, tense, etc., for another; e. g., **vivere nostrum** for **vita nostra; nos** for **ego; mox navigo** for **navigabo.**

Epenthĕsĭs, *insertion;* e. g., of **u** in **Alcŭmēna** for **Alcmena; p** in **sumpsi, sumptum.**

Graecism or **Hellenism**; use of a Greek form or construction, not properly Latin also; e. g., **amplexi habent** for **amplexi sunt.**

Hendĭădўs, *one by two;* use of two nouns with a conjunction, instead of a single noun with a modifier; e. g., **paterae et aurum** for **aureae paterae.**

Hўpallăgē, *exchange;* applied to such deviations from ordinary expression or construction as **Tyrrhenus tubae clangor** for **Tyrrhenae tubae clangor; arma dei Volcania** for **arma a deo Volcano facta.**

Hўperbăton, *transgression;* i. e. when a considerable clause or expression is interpolated between two parts of a sentence mutually connected in meaning; e. g., **hyperboreo septem subjecta trioni; animadverti omnem accusatoris orationem in duas divisam esse partes.**

Hўphen, *union* of two words, as if by composition; e. g., **non-sūtor,** *one who is not a tailor,* **ignari ante-malorum,** *ignorant of the ills before.*

Mĕtăthĕsĭs, *change of position;* transposition of two or more letters in a word; e. g., **crētus** for **certus.**

Părăgōgē, *addition;* applied e. g., (according to a probably false theory) to the formation of **dicier** from **dici** by the addition of **er.**

Părenthĕsĭs, *insertion* of a clause into the midst of another; e. g., **si nos, id quod maxime debet, nostra patria delectat** (Cic.). The term is generally applied to an ordinary insertion; if unusual either from its character or length, it is sometimes called **hyperbaton.**

Pleŏnasm, *saying too much,* an unnecessary fulness of expression; e. g.,

erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent (Caes.); **suo sibi gladio hunc jugulo,** *I slay him with his own sword to him;* **praesensi prius; nemo unus.**

Prŏlēpsis, *anticipation,* applied to such use of an adjective as **laceras aries ballistave concutit arces,** where the towers are **lacerae** from the effects of **concutit.**

Prŏtăsĭs, *proposal,* applied to the relative or especially to the conditional clause.

Syllepsĭs, *taking together,* applied to the relation of an adjective to two or more nouns of different genders; e. g., **pater et mater et filia capti sunt.**

Synaerĕsĭs, *contraction* of two vowels into one sound: e. g., treating **deinde, quoad** as monosyllables; **aureo, eidem** as dissyllables; **ariete, tenuia** as trisyllables. Other terms are **synecphōnēsis** and **synīzēsis.** All three are variously distinguished and applied, but most frequently used of those contractions which are regarded as exceptional and not expressed in writing; while **crasis** applies to such contractions as **auceps** for **aviceps, cōgo** for **co-ago.**

Sy̆năloepha, *coalescing* of two vowels, applied to the elision in verse of the vowel at the end of one word before a vowel beginning the next.

Syncŏpē, *striking together,* applied to the omission of a letter or syllable in the middle of a word; e. g., **saeclum** for **saecŭlum, puertia** for **puerĭtia, lūna** for **lucna, pergo** for **perrego.**

Synecphōnēsis, *pronouncing together,* see **Synaerĕsis.**

Sy̆nĕsĭs, where the construction is adapted to the *sense* of the word rather than to the *form;* e. g., **turba ruunt; turba circumfusi fremabant** (Liv.); **concursus populi mirantium** (Liv.).

Sy̆nīzēsĭs, *settlement together,* see **Synaeresis.**

Tmēsĭs, *cutting* of a compound word into two, separated by other words; e. g., **septem subjecta trioni** for **septemtrioni; per mihi gratum feceris** for **pergratum; quae me cunque vocant** for **quaecunque me;** and **saxo cere comminuit brum** which Ennius wrote, probably mistaking **cerebrum** for a compound.

Zeugma, *joining,* where a verb grammatically belonging to two or more nouns is in sense appropriate to one only (or to less than all); e. g., **te greges centum Siculaeque circum mugiunt vaccae** (Hor.); where *lowing* does not properly suit **greges** sc. **ovium. Magonem alii naufragio** (sc. **perisse**), **alii a servis ipsius interfectum, scriptum reliquerunt** (Nep.).

305. *RHETORICAL TERMS, OR FIGURES OF SPEECH.*

Allegory, a continued description of one thing in terms and in images properly belonging to another; e. g., **at jam tempus equum fumantia solvere colla** (Verg.), of concluding a book. A more detailed allegory is seen in Horace's description (**Od. i. 14**) of the *State* in political diffi-

culties under the name of a **ship tossed by waves**. Essentially, allegory is a chain of metaphors.

Alliteration, the use in the same sentence of several words beginning with the *same letter;* e. g., **O Tite, tute Tati, tibi tanta, tyranne, tulisti** (Enn.).

Anăphŏra, *repetition* of the same word or grammatical form at the beginning of several clauses; e. g., **in his templis atque tectis dux Lentulus erat constitutus meis consiliis, meis laboribus, mei capitis periculis, sine tumultu, sine delectu, sine armis** (Cic.).

Antĭthĕsĭs, *contrast;* e. g., **ego projector, quod tu peccas; tu delinquis, ego arguor; pro malefactis Helena redeat, virgo pereat innocens** (Enn.).

Antŏnŏmăsia, *substituting* a description *for a name;* e. g., **Tydīdes** for **Diomēdes; eversor Karthaginis** for **Scipio; Saturnia** for **Juno.**

Apŏsiōpēsĭs, *breaking into silence;* an abrupt pause after a sentence or subject has been begun; e. g., **Quos ego—sed motos praestat componere fluctus.**

Apostrŏphē, *turning away* to address some person, or thing, who is absent or at least not the proper object of address at the time; e. g., **o leges Porciae legesque Semproniae** (Cic.); **citae Mettum in diversa quadrigae distulerant: at tu dictis, Albane, maneres** (Verg.); **Quid non mortalia pectora cogis, auri sacra fames?**

Cătăchrēsĭs, a *wrong use* of a term, either to supply the place of a non-existing word, e. g., **parricida** for the murderer of a brother; or to put a different aspect on a case; e. g., **virtus** for **temeritas, liberalitas** for **luxuria.**

Chiasm, *making a X* (**Chi**), i. e., *crossing*, where a second and corresponding set of words are stated in inverse order to that of the first set; e. g., **multa quae nostra causa non facimus, facimus causa amicorum** (Cic.). See § **260, 6.**

Clīmax (or **gradātio**), *ladder*, a series of words or expressions each stronger than the preceding: e. g., **nihil agis, nihil moliris, nihil cogitas, quod ego non modo audiam, sed etiam videam planeque sentiam** (Cic.).

Enallăgē, *change*, i. e., the use of a more general word for a specific word; e. g., **Poenus** for **Hannibal, urbs** for **Roma; vos, o Calliope.**

Epexēgēsĭs, *additional explanation*, applied to such usages as **habere** in **loricam donat habere viro** (Verg.), or to the subordinate clause in **pacem amicitiamque hortatus est, ut cum rege in gratiam rediret** (Nep.).

Euphemism, the use of *softened language* to express what is disagreeable or distressing.

Hŏmœŏtĕleutŏn, *like ending* of several clauses; e. g., **in muros statim curritur, exercitus a sociis accersitur, dilectus juventuti denuntiatur; neminem alteri posse dare in matrimonium nisi penes quem sit patrimonium.**

Hŏmōnȳmia, applicability of the *same word* to different things; such words are called **hŏmōnȳmă**; e. g., **taurus** may be an animal, a mountain, a constellation, name of a man, or root of a tree.

Hȳperbŏlē, *exaggeration;* e. g., **gemini minantur in caelum scopuli** (Verg.); or the description of Camilla's swiftness (Aen. vii. 808–811).

Hystĕrŏn prŏtĕrŏn, *putting the former later*, when that which naturally comes first is mentioned last; e. g., **moriamur et in media arma ruamus** (Verg.).

Irony, *dissimulation*, says one thing and means another, but so as to let the real meaning be understood; e. g., **in balneis delituerunt: testis egregios! dein temere prosiluerunt; homines temperantis!** (Cic. Caec. 26); **meque timoris argue tu, Drance, quando tot stragis acervos Teucrorum tua dextra dedit!** (Verg.)

Lītŏtēs, *plainness*, states less than is actually meant; e. g., **non nego** instead of **aio**; **non indoctus** for **doctus**; **non laudo** for **culpo.**

Mĕtăphŏr (or **translātio**), *transference* of a term from its proper subject to another, on account of some resemblance or analogy between their meanings; frequently the application of a physical or concrete term to a mental or abstract subject; e. g., **sitiunt segetes**; **asper homo** (rough, i. e., ill-tempered); **incensus ira**, *on fire with rage;* **eloquentiae fulmina.** It differs from allegory only by being less sustained, and by being worked into the discourse instead of being an independent fable. Almost all language is metaphor, more or less vivid and conscious.

Mĕtōnȳmy, *change of name*, applied to such expressions as **Neptunus** for *sea;* **Vulcanus** for *fire;* **Ceres** for *corn;* **bene moratae urbes** for **bene morati urbis cives**; **Graecia** for **Graeci**; **Vergilius** for **carmina Vergili**; **proximus ardet Ucalĕgon**, where **Ucalegon** is for *Ucalĕgon's house.* Among the substitutions of names made by Metonymy are that of the **cause** for the **effect**; the **container** for **what is contained**; the **property** for the **substance**; the **sign** for the **thing signified**: and *vice versa:* also, the **parts of the body** for **certain affections**; the **possessor** for the **thing possessed**; the **place** and **time** for the **persons** and **things** which they comprise.

Onŏmătŏpœĭa, *name making*, in modern writers applied only to making names from the sounds which they are to denote; e. g., **ŭlŭla**, *howler;* **murmur**; **clangor**; **hirrire** (of a dog snarling).

Oxȳmōrŏn, *keen*, though apparently *foolish*, applied to such expressions, uniting seeming contraries, as **insaniens sapientia**; **strenua inertia**; **splendidē mendax**: **et absentes adsunt et egentes abundant et imbecilli valent et, quod difficilius dictu est, mortui vivunt** (Cic. *Lael.* 7).

Părŏnŏmăsia (**adnōminātio**), *playing upon the sound of words; punning;* e. g., **consul ipse parvo animo et pravo, facie magis quam facetiis ridiculus** (Cic.). **Inceptio est amentium haud amantium** (Ter.). **Praetor iste vel potius praedo sociorum. Cui quod libet, hoc licet. Hunc ăvium dulcedo ducit ad āvium.**

Pĕrĭphrăsĭs, *roundabout expression, circumlocution;* e. g., **fac discas** for

disce; **vos oratos volo** for **vos oro**; **Scipionis providentia Karthaginis opes fregit** for **Scipio Karthaginem fregit.**

Prŏsōpŏpœia, *personification*, representing inanimate things as living and acting; e. g., **crudelitatis mater avaritia'st, pater furor. Si patria mea loquatur, "M. Tulli, quid agis?"** (Cic.). **Extemplo Libyae magnas it Fama per urbes** (Verg.).

Sĭmĭle or **Părăbŏlē**, an apt *comparison* illustrating a statement; e. g., **per urbes Hannibal Italos ceu flamma per taedas vel Eurus per Siculas equitavit undas** (Hor.).

Solecism, a grammatical *blunder* in matters of syntax; "Quintilian instances **non feceris** for **ne feceris**; **hic aut ille** for **hic an ille**; **eo intus** and **intro sum** for **eo intro** and **intus sum.**"

Sȳnĕcdŏchē, when **the whole** is *understood along with* (i. e., under the name of) **a part**; e. g., **puppis** for **navis**; **tectum** for **domus**; **mucro** or **ferrum** for **gladius**; **caput** for **homo.**

Sȳnōnȳmia, *using different words or expressions for the same meaning;* e. g., **non feram, non patiar, non sinam** (Cic.). Words of the same or like meaning are called **sȳnōnȳmă**; e. g., **gladius** with **ensis**; **scutum** with **clipeus**; **mare** with **pontus.**

Tautŏlŏgy, *repetition of the same thing;* sometimes used as identical with **synonymia**; sometimes applied to repetitions of the same word; e. g., **non solum igitur illud judicium judicii simile, judices, non fuit** (Cic.). **Nam cujus rationis ratio non exstat, ei rationi non est fidem habere** (Cornif.).

Whether the use of any of these figures is legitimate or proper depends on the **context** and the **occasion**, and on general considerations of intelligibility, good sense, vigorous expression, propriety, habit of speakers and writers, and the like. A **name** confers no **license**, and a grammatical or rhetorical figure is a name of a **fact**, not of a **law**. (Roby, in part.)

MONEY, WEIGHTS, AND MEASURES.

306. *VALUE OF COINS.*

1. From 451 to 269 B. C.:	
The **as libralis**, of copper	about 10 cents.
2. From 269 to 217 B. C.:	
The **as sextantarius**, of copper	" 2 cents.
The **sestertius**, of silver	" 5 cents.
The **denarius**, of silver	" 19 cents.
3. From 217 to 30 B. C.:	
The **sestertius**, of silver	" 4 cents.
The **denarius**, of silver	" 16⅔ cents.
The **aureus**, of gold (25 denarii, or 100 sestertii)	" $4.17.
Hence **mille sestertiūm**	" $41.67.
decies sestertium (a million sestertii)	" $41,667.00.

307. *THE NAMING OF SUMS OF MONEY.*

1. The ordinary unit of reckoning was the **sestertius** or **nummus**; in full, **sestertius nummus**. Up to two thousand, the nouns **sestertii** or **nummi** are used: as, **decem sestertii**, *ten sesterces;* **ducenti nummi**, *two hundred sesterces;* **quini sestertii**, *five sesterces each.* For higher numbers, in thousands up to a million, a neuter noun in the plural number, **sestertia**, was used: as, **septem sestertia**, *seven thousand sesterces,* instead of **septem millia sestertiūm**; or both **millia** and **sestertia** are found: as, **dena millia sestertia**, *ten thousand sesterces;* or, again, in poetry **millia** is used with an ellipsis of **sestertiūm**: as, **mullum sex millibus emit**, *he bought a mullet for six thousand sesterces.* Horace has **bis dena sestertia nummūm**, *twenty thousand sesterces.*

2. In sums of a million and upwards, **numeral adverbs** are employed: as, **decies centum** (or **centena**) **millia sestertiūm**. Usually the **numeral adverb** and **sestertium** are put alone: as, **decies sestertium**, *a million sesterces;* or, when the context is clear, the **adverb** is used **alone**, as simply **decies**; we find also, for the same sum of a million sesterces, **decies centena millia** or **decies centena**. In such expressions, **sestertium** was taken to be a neuter noun, in the singular number: as, (nominative) **sestertium quadragies relinquitur**, *four million sesterces are left;* (accusative) **sestertium quadragies accepi**, *I have received four million sesterces;* (ablative) **sestertio decies fundum emi**, *I have bought an estate for a million sesterces;* **in sestertio vicies egere**, *to be poor in the possession of two million sesterces.*

Abbreviations are used: as, HS. DC. = 600 *sesterces;* HS. $\overline{\text{DC}}$. = 600,000 *sesterces* (or 600 *sestertia*); HS. $|\overline{\text{DC}}|$ = 60,000,000 *sesterces.* See § **55, 13**; § **317, 8**.

308. *INTEREST.*

The **as** and its fractional parts were used in designating rates of interest. Thus, the interest being paid monthly at the rate of so much per 100 asses,

unciae usūrae	= $\frac{1}{12}$	per cent.	per month	= 1	per cent.	per annum;
sextantes usurae	= $\frac{1}{6}$	"	"	= 2	"	"
quadrantes usurae	= $\frac{1}{4}$	"	"	= 3	"	"
and so on;						
asses usurae	= 1	"	"	= 12	"	"

Asses usurae were also called **centesimae**; **binae centesimae** = 2 per cent. per month = 24 per cent.; **quaternae centesimae** = 48 per cent. per annum. Horace says, **quinas hic capiti mercedes exsecat** (i. e., quinas centesimas), *this man slices off* 60 *per cent. from the capital,* because in lending money he deducts interest at the rate of five per cent. per month.

Unciarum faenus, the yearly interest legalized by the Twelve Tables, was probably one uncia per as, or $8\frac{1}{3}$ per cent., for the old year of **ten months**.

309. *WEIGHTS.*

1. The **unit** or **as** of **weight** was the **libra**, or Roman *pound*, the supposed weight which a man could support on his hand horizontally extended. It was duodecimally divided, the **uncia**, or *ounce*, being its 12th part, the **scriptulum** or **scrupulum**, *scruple*, its 288th part. Its weight was about 5050 grains English, or about ⅞ pound Troy.

2. The **Greek** system also was used in the imperial times, the unit being a **denarius**, called from the Greek **drachma**, of which the **libra** contained until Nero's time 84; afterwards 96. This latter **drachma** contained three **scriptula**, the **scriptulum** two **oboli**, the **obolus** three **siliquae.**

310. *MEASURES OF LENGTH.*

1. The **unit** or **as** of **length** was **pes**, *the foot;* **digitus** was *a finger-breadth;* **palmus**, *a hand-breadth*, was **four digits**; **pes**, *a foot*, was **four palms** or **sixteen digits.**

2. In the **duodecimal division** of the foot, **uncia**, the twelfth part, was *an inch*. Three **unciae** made a **palmus. Two feet** are sometimes called **dupondius**; **two and a half feet, sestertius**, also **gradus**, or *step;* **one and a half feet, sesquipes**, called also **cubitus**, the *fore-arm.*

Ulna, *an ell*, is sometimes a synonym of **cubitus**; but it sometimes means the full span of a man's arms, or *six feet.*

3. **Land** was measured out by the **pertica** or **decempeda**, a rod of **ten feet**. The **actus** (i. e., the *furrow* made at one drawing (*driving*) of the plough-oxen) measured twelve rods.

4. The unit of **distance** was the **passus**, *pace*, consisting of two **gradus** or *steps*, hence of **five feet**. It represents the distance from the point where, in walking, the same foot is taken up to the point where it is put down. **Mille passus** (or **millia passuum** or **millia**) was the Roman **mile**, 4850 English feet, or **.919** English mile. The **pes** was **11.6** English inches.

The **stadium**, or *furlong*, was ⅛ of a Roman mile.

311. *MEASURES OF SURFACE.*

1. The **as** of superficial measure was the **jugerum**. It contained 2 **square actus**, or 28,800 *square feet;* each **actus** 144 *square rods* or **perticae.** The square rod was called a **scrupulum**, or **decempeda quadrata. Two jugera** made an **heredium**; 100 **heredia** formed a **centuria**; 4 **centuriae** a **saltus.**

2. The **pes quadratus** was .94 English square foot; the **jugerum** almost ⅝ of an English acre; an **heredium** nearly an acre and a quarter.

312. *MEASURES OF CAPACITY.*

1. The unit of **liquid** measure was the **quadrantal**, a vessel of a *cubit foot* in content, after Cicero's time called the **amphora.** The **amphora** =

two **urnae**; the **urna** = four **congii**; the **congius** = six **sextarii**; the **sextarius** = two **hemīnae**; the **hemīna** = two **quartarii**; the **quartarius** = two **acetabula**. Twenty **amphorae** made a **culeus**. The amphora was about 5¾ gallons English.

2. The duodecimal system was applied to the **sextarius**, which was a little less than an English **pint** (.96). Its twelfth, or **uncia**, was a **cyathus**, not quite half an ordinary wine-glass. The **triens** was 4 **cyathi**; the **quadrans**, 3 **cyathi**; the **sextans**, 2 **cyathi**; and so on.

3. The unit of **dry** measure was the **modius**, nearly one *peck*, or ¼ bushel, English. It held two **semodii** or 16 **sextarii**. The divisions of the **sextarius** (sometimes called **librarius**) were the same as in liquid measure.

Computation of Time.

313. 1. The Romans' **civil day**, as recognized in law, was from midnight to midnight; a **natural day**, from sunrise to sunset. The natural day was divided into **twelfths**, called **horae**, which were therefore of different absolute lengths according to the time of year. From December 23d, when the day at Rome was, according to modern reckoning, 8 hours 54 minutes long, and the Roman **hour** was **44½ minutes**, the length increased up to the 25th of June, when the day was 15 hours 6 minutes, and the Roman **hour 75½ minutes**. At the equinoxes, 23d. March, 25th. September, the Roman hour was of the same length as our own. The civil day is sometimes spoken of as divided into twenty-four hours.

2. The night was for military purposes divided into four *watches* (**vigilia prima**, etc.) of equal length. And a similar division of the day into four parts is also implied by Varro's account of the praetor's marshal crying the third hour, noon, and the ninth hour.

3. The division of time into **weeks** of seven days with distinct names was not used by the Romans before the introduction of Christianity. The **months** were distinguished by the names adopted by us from the Romans, excepting that, before the time of the Emperor Augustus, **Julius** and **Augustus** had the names of **Quinctīlis** and **Sextīlis** (i. e., **fifth** and **sixth** month, March being the first). The days of the month were computed from three leading days in each, which were called respectively **Calendae (Kal.)**, **Nonae (Non.)**, and **Idus (Id.)**; to these the name of the month was appended as an **adjective**. The **Calendae** was the **first** day of every month; the **Nonae** and **Idus** the **fifth** and **thirteenth**, except in the months of **March**, **May**, **July**, and **October**, in which they were the **seventh** and **fifteenth** respectively.* From these days they **counted backwards**, the days between the 1st and the Nones being reckoned as so many days before

* In March, July, October, May,
The Ides were on the fifteenth day,
The Nones upon the seventh, we say.
(For other months, take two away.)

the Nones: the days between the Nones and Ides as so many days before the Ides; and the remaining days of the month as so many days before the Kalends of the *next* month. The day **immediately preceding** any of these reckoning points was called **pridie** Nonas, etc.; the day **next but one** before was the **third day before** (in consequence of the Nones, etc., being **themselves included in the reckoning**), and so on.

4. There are two abbreviated modes of denoting the date; e. g., the 27th of March might be marked as **vi Kal. Apr.**, or **a. d. vi Kal. Apr.** The first is for **sexto (die ante) Kalendas Apriles**; the second for **ante diem sextum Kalendas Apriles.** The latter expression appears to have originally signified *before* (*on the sixth day*) *the Kalends of April;* the exact day being thrown in parenthetically, and attracted from the ablative into the accusative case in consequence of following **ante.** Similarly we find the date sometimes denoted by the number of days preceding a festival: as, **a. d. v. Terminalia**, i. e., 19th Feb. (the festival of the god of boundaries being on the 23d Feb.). This expression was considered as one word, before which **in** or **ex** may stand: as, **Ex ante diem iii Nonas Junias usque ad pridie Kalendas Septembres,** *from the 3d June to the 31st August;* **differre aliquid in ante diem xv Kalendas Novembres,** *to put off something to the 18th October.*

5. The readiest **way of reckoning the day** is,

1. If the date lie between the Kalends and Nones, or between the Nones and Ides, to subtract the number of the day mentioned from the number of the day on which the Nones or Ides fall, and add *one* (for the inclusive reckoning).

2. If the date lie between the Ides and the Kalends, to subtract the number of the day mentioned from the number of the days in the month, and add *two* (i. e., one for the inclusive reckoning, and one because the Kalends are not the last of the month in which the date lies, but the first of the following month).

6. In **leap year** the intercalated day was counted between **a. d. vi Kal. Mart.** and **a. d. vii Kal. Mart.**, and called **a. d. bissextum Kal. Mart.** (Hence the name of leap year, **annus bissextīlis.**)

7. Before the **reformation of the Calendar** by Julius Caesar, B. C. 45, the number of days in the months was in March, May, July, and October, 31; in February 28; in all the rest 29. As these four months were two days longer, the Nones and Ides were two days later. This should be remembered in reading **Cicero's letters**, many of which were written before 45 B. C. After that year the number of days in each month was the same as now.

8. The **year** was designated by the names of the consuls for that year. Thus, Vergil was born **M. Licinio Crasso et Cn. Pompeio Magno consulibus** (abl. absol.), *in the consulship of Crassus and Pompey.* Sometimes events are dated in their year **after the founding of the city** (A. U. C., U. C., or A.).

9. The following **Table** supposes the date to be **subsequent to B. C. 45**. The usual abbreviated form is given.

It must be remembered that **Kalendae, Nonae,** and **Idus** are feminine, and the months *adjectives;* that the dates **Kalendis, Nonis,** and **Idibus** (*on the first, fifth,* etc.) are in the ablative; and that **a. d. vi Non. Mart.,** etc., is for **ante diem sextum Nonas Martias.**

Day of English month.	JANUARIUS, AUGUSTUS, DECEMBER.		APRILIS, JUNIUS, SEPTEMBER, NOVEMBER.		MARTIUS, MAIUS, JULIUS, OCTOBER.		FEBRUARIUS.	
1.	KALENDIS.	Jan., Aug., Dec.	KALENDIS.	Apr., Jun., Sept., Nov.	KALENDIS.	Mart., Mai., Jul., Oct.	KALENDIS.	Feb.
2.	a. d. iv. Non.		a. d. iv. Non.		a. d. vi. Non.		a. d. iv. Non.	
3.	a. d. iii. Non.		a. d. iii. Non.		a. d. v. Non.		a. d. iii. Non.	
4.	Prid. Non.		Prid. Non.		a. d. iv. Non.		Prid. Non.	
5.	NONIS.		NONIS.		a. d. iii. Non.		NONIS.	
6.	a. d. viii. Id.		a. d. viii. Id.		Prid. Non.		a. d. viii. Id.	
7.	a. d. vii. Id.		a. d. vii. Id.		NONIS.		a. d. vii. Id.	
8.	a. d. vi. Id.		a. d. vi. Id.		a. d. viii. Id.		a. d. vi. Id.	
9.	a. d. v. Id.		a. d. v. Id.		a. d. vii. Id.		a. d. v. Id.	
10.	a. d. iv. Id.		a. d. iv. Id.		a. d. vi. Id.		a. d. iv. Id.	
11.	a. d. iii. Id.		a. d. iii. Id.		a. d. v. Id.		a. d. iii. Id.	
12.	Prid. Id.		Prid. Id.		a. d. iv. Id.		Prid. Id.	
13.	IDIBUS.		IDIBUS.		a. d. iii. Id.		IDIBUS.	
14.	a. d. xix. Kal.	Feb., Sept., Jan.	a. d. xviii. Kal.	Mai., Jul., Oct., Dec.	Prid. Id.		a. d. xvi. Kal.	Mart.
15.	a. d. xviii. Kal.		a. d. xvii. Kal.		IDIBUS.		a. d. xv. Kal.	
16.	a. d. xvii. Kal.		a. d. xvi. Kal.		a. d. xvii. Kal.	Apr., Jun., Aug., Nov.	a. d. xiv. Kal.	
17.	a. d. xvi. Kal.		a. d. xv. Kal.		a. d. xvi. Kal.		a. d. xiii. Kal.	
18.	a. d. xv. Kal.		a. d. xiv. Kal.		a. d. xv. Kal.		a. d. xii. Kal.	
19.	a. d. xiv. Kal.		a. d. xiii. Kal.		a. d. xiv. Kal.		a. d. xi. Kal.	
20.	a. d. xiii. Kal.		a. d. xii. Kal.		a. d. xiii. Kal.		a. d. x. Kal.	
21.	a. d. xii. Kal.		a. d. xi. Kal.		a. d. xii. Kal.		a. d. ix. Kal.	
22.	a. d. xi. Kal.		a. d. x. Kal.		a. d. xi. Kal.		a. d. viii. Kal.	
23.	a. d. x. Kal.		a. d. ix. Kal.		a. d. x. Kal.		a. d. vii. Kal.	
24.	a. d. ix. Kal.		a. d. viii. Kal.		a. d. ix. Kal.		a. d. vi. Kal.	
25.	a. d. viii. Kal.		a. d. vii. Kal.		a. d. viii. Kal.		a. d. v. Kal.*	
26.	a. d. vii. Kal.		a. d. vi. Kal.		a. d. vii. Kal.		a. d. iv. Kal.	
27.	a. d. vi. Kal.		a. d. v. Kal.		a. d. vi. Kal.		a. d. iii. Kal.	
28.	a. d. v. Kal.		a. d. iv. Kal.		a. d. v. Kal.		Prid. Kal.	
29.	a. d. iv. Kal.		a. d. iii. Kal.		a. d. iv. Kal.			
30.	a. d. iii. Kal.		Prid. Kal.		a. d. iii. Kal.			
31.	Prid. Kal.				Prid. Kal.			

* In leap year, the 24th Feb. was called **a. d. bis sextum Kal. Mart.**; the 25th, **a. d. vi. Kal. Mart.**; the 26th, **a. d. v. Kal. Mart.**; the 27th, **a. d. iv. Kal. Mart.**; the 28th, **a. d. iii. Kal. Mart.**; the 29th, **Prid. Kal. Mart.** The first twenty-three days were designated as in other years.

Principal Extant Latin Authors.

314. *PRAE-CICERONIAN AGE.*

Cn. Naevius, a Latin of Campania, d. 199 B. C. Dramatic and epic poems; only fragments extant.

T. Maccius Plautus, b. 254 B. C., at Sassina in Umbria, d. 184 B. C. Comedies, 20 of which are extant, many being written 201–189 B. C.

Q. Ennius, b. 239 B. C., at Rudiae in Calabria, d. 169 B. C. Poems epic and dramatic; only fragments extant.

M. Porcius Cato (Censorinus), b. 234 B. C., at Tusculum, d. 149 B. C. History, speeches, and treatise on farming; this treatise and fragments extant.

P. Tĕrentius, b. 185 B. C., at Carthage, d. 159 B. C. Six comedies; all preserved.

L. Attius (or **Accius**), b. 170 B. C., d. circa 104 B. C. Tragedies and other poems; fragments only extant.

C. Lūcīlius, b. 148 B. C., at Suessa Aurunca in Campania, d. 103 B. C. Satires; only fragments extant.

315. *GOLDEN AGE.*

1. **Ciceronian:**

Cornĭfĭcius, probable name of the author of a treatise on rhetoric addressed to C. Herennius and printed with Cicero's works. Possibly Q. Cornificius trib. pl. 69 B. C.

M. Terentius Varro, b. 116 B. C., at Reate, d. 27 B. C. Antiquarian and grammatical writings; satires, partly in verse; a treatise on farming. Extant: part of a work on the Latin language (written cir. 43 B. C.), and the treatise **de re rustica** (written 37 B. C.): fragments only of others.

M. Tullius Cĭcĕro, b. 106 B. C., at Tusculum, d. 43 B. C. Speeches, treatises on rhetoric and philosophy, and private letters. 58 speeches (some mutilated), most of the treatises, and many letters, are extant. Speeches from 81 B. C.; treatises from 55 B. C., except a work on rhetoric written in his youth; letters from 68 B. C.: all reaching nearly to his death. Fragments only of his poems extant.

Q. Tullius Cicero, b. 102 B. C., d. 43 B. C. A short political essay **de petitione consulatus**: extant (with his brother's writings).

C. Jūlius Caesar, b. 100 B. C., d. 44 B. C. Speeches, history, treatises on astronomy and grammar; only histories (or rather notes for history) of his own campaigns extant.

A. Hirtius, d. 43 B. C., wrote 8th book of Caesar **de Bello Gallico**, and **Bellum Alexandrinum**: both extant, printed with Caesar.

Cornēlius Nĕpos, b. 104 to 94 B. C., near the Po, d. after 32 B. C. History in the form of biographies: some extant.

T. Lŭcrētius Cārus, b. 90 B. C., d. 55 B. C. Philosophical poem: extant.

C. Vălĕrius Cătullus, b. 87 B. C. at Verona, d. 54 B. C. Poems, of varied character; epic, lyric, occasional: extant.

Publilius Syrus of Antioch, cir. 45 B. C. Mimes. Extant a collection of proverbial lines extracted from them.

C. Sallustius Crispus, b. 87 B. C., at Amiternum, d. 34 B. C. History. Extant: histories of wars with Catiline and with Jugurtha, and some speeches from the other histories.

M. Caelius M. F. Rūfus, b. 85–82 B. C., d. cir. 48 B. C. Speeches. Some lively letters to Cicero are extant, forming Book viii. of Cic. ad **Familiares.**

Among other correspondents of Cicero, several of whose letters have come to us with Cicero's, are **L. Munatius Plancus** (Cic. *ad Fam.* Book x.); **C. Asinius Pollio** (same Book); **D. Brutus** (Book xi.); **C. Cassius** (Book xii.); **P. Lentulus** (ibid.); **M. Junius Brutus** (Cic. *Epist. ad M. Brutum*). One or two letters also occur from **C. Jul. Caesar, Cn. Pompeius, M. Porcius Cato, M. Antonius, M. Lepidus, Q. Metellus Nepos, Matius, Caecina, Cicero filius.**

2. **Augustan:**

P. Vergĭlius Măro, b. 70 B. C., at Andes, near Mantua, d. 19 B. C. Rural and epic poems, viz., **Bucolĭca** (B. C. 41–38); **Georgĭca** (B. C. 37–30); **Aenēis** (begun cir. B. C. 26; left unfinished at his death): all extant. Some other smaller poems, partly satirical, which have been ascribed to him, are extant.

Q. Hŏrātius Flaccus, b. 65 B. C., at Venusia, d. 8 B. C. Poems lyrical and satirical or didactic; partly in the form of epistles; all extant.

T. Līvius, b. 59 B. C., at Patavium, d. 16 A. D. History of Rome from the foundation of the city to the death of Drusus (9 B. C.), in 142 books, of which 35 books (viz., i.–x., xx.–xlv.) only are extant.

Albius Tĭbullus, b. cir. 54 B. C., d. 19 B. C. Poems chiefly amatory. Other poems are printed with Tibullus', especially those of

Lygdămus, b. cir. 43 B. C. Amatory poems.

Sextus Prŏpertius, b. cir. 49 B. C., in Umbria, d. after 16 B. C. Poems chiefly amatory; all extant.

L. Annaeus Sĕnĕca (the father), b. cir. 54 B. C., at Corduba, d. cir. 38 A. D. Wrote in old age reminiscences and specimens of the exercises of rhetorical schools, called **Suasoriae** and **Controversiae**; partly extant. (Often called Seneca Rhetor to distinguish him from his son.)

Vitruvius Pollio, cir. 14 B. C. Wrote a work on Architecture, still extant.

P. Ovĭdius Nāso, b. 43 B. C., at Sulmo, d. 17 A. D. Poems amatory (B. C. 14–1 A. D.), mythological and antiquarian (A. D. 2–8), and elegiac (A. D. 9–16); all extant. A tragedy which he wrote is not extant.

Grātius. Poem on hunting; extant probably only in part.

Mānīlius. Poem on astronomy written about the end of Augustus's reign; extant.

316. *SILVER AGE.*

1. **Early:**

T. Claudius Caesar Germānĭcus, b. 15 B. C., d. 18 A. D. Translation in hexameters of Aratus's poem on the constellations.

M. Vellēius Pătercŭlus, a soldier before 1 A. D., died after 30 A. D. Roman history; a short work, mainly extant.

Vălĕrius Maxĭmus, cir. 30 A. D. Wrote a collection of anecdotes, all or almost all extant.

A. Cornēlius Celsus, time of Tiberius. Practical treatises on various arts; work on medicine extant.

Phaedrus (freedman of Augustus). Fables in verse; mainly extant.

L. Annaeus Sĕnĕca (the son), b. cir. 4 B. C., d. 65 A. D. Philosophy and tragedies; both largely extant.

Q. Curtius Rūfus, time of Claudius. History of Alexander the Great; not wholly extant.

L. Jūnius Mŏdĕrātus Cŏlŭmella, of Gades, time between Celsus and Plinius major. Treatise on farming, in twelve books (one in verse); all extant.

Q. Ascōnius Pĕdiānus, cir. 3–88 A. D. Notes on Cicero's speeches, partly preserved.

Pompōnius Mĕla, of Tingentera, in Spain, time of Claudius. Geography; extant.

A. Persius Flaccus, b. at Volaterra 34 A. D., d. 62 A. D. Satirical poetry; extant.

M. Annaeus Lūcānus, b. 39 A. D., d. 65 A. D. Poem on the war between Pompey and Caesar, called **Pharsalia;** extant.

Petrōnius Arbĭter, time of Nero. Romance; extant in large fragments, chiefly in prose, but partly in verse.

Calpurnius, time of Nero. Bucolic poetry; extant.

2. **Age of Quintilian:**

C. Plīnius Sĕcundus (the elder), b. 23 A. D., d. 79 A. D. History, Grammar, Natural History; extant only the Natural History, in 37 books.

C. Vălĕrius Flaccus, d. before 90 A. D. Epic poems on the Argonautic expedition; extant.

C. Sīlius Itălĭcus, b. 25 A. D., d. 101 A. D. Epic poem on the second Punic War. Extant.

P. Papinius Stātius, b. at Naples, cir. 45 A. D., d. 96 A. D. Poems, epic and occasional. Extant: **Thēbāis** cir. 80–92 A. D.; **Achillēis** (unfinished), and **Silvae,** written in the last years of his life.

M. Vălĕrius Martiālis, b. at Bilbilis, in Spain, cir. 42 A. D., d. cir. 102 A. D. Epigrams in verse; extant.

M. Făbius Quintĭliānus, b. at Calagurris, in Spain, cir. 35 A. D., d. cir. 95 A. D. Treatise on rhetoric; extant.

Sex Jūlius Frontīnus, b. cir. 40 A. D., d. cir. 103 A. D. Military and engineering works. Extant: treatise on Roman aqueducts, and anecdotes of military tactics, and fragments.

3. **Age of Tacitus:**

Cornēlius Tăcĭtus, b. cir. 54 A. D., d. cir. 119 A. D. Rhetoric and later Roman history. Extant: a considerable part of the history, a life of Julius Agricola, and a description of Germany. A dialogue **de oratoribus** is attributed to him, but its very different style from that of the other works of Tacitus makes this attribution doubtful.

C. Plīnius Caecĭlius Sĕcundus (the younger), b. at Comum 62 A. D., d. 113 A. D. Letters (published by himself) and a panegyrical speech. Extant.

D. Jūnius Jŭvĕnālis, b. at Aquīnum, cir. 67 A. D., d. cir. 147 A. D. (So according to Friedländer. Usually put ten or twelve years earlier.) Satires; extant.

Velius Longus, time of Trajan. Grammatical treatises, one of which is extant.

Hygīnus, time of Trajan. Land surveying; partly extant.

C. Suētōnius Tranquillus, b. cir. 75 A. D., d. cir. 160 A. D. Biographical, antiquarian, and grammatical writings. Partly extant, principally the Lives of the Caesars, written cir. 120 A. D.—ROBY.

317. *ABBREVIATIONS.*

1. *First names* (**Praenomina**)

A.	**Aulus.**	Mam.	**Mamercus.**
App.	**Appius.**	N. *or* Num.	**Numerius.**
C.	**Gaius.**	P.	**Publius.**
Cn.	**Gnaeus.**	Q.	**Quintus.**
D.	**Decimus.**	S. *or* Sex.	**Sextus.**
K.	**Kaeso.**	Ser.	**Servius.**
L.	**Lucius.**	S. *or* Sp.	**Spurius.**
M.	**Marcus.**	T.	**Titus.**
ꟽ. *or* M'.	**Manius.**	Ti.	**Tiberius.**

Women's names are expressed by inverted characters: as, Ɔ for Gaia.

2. *Titles of Persons, etc.*

CES. *or* CENS.	**Censor** *or* **Censores.**	D.	**Divus.**
COS.*	**Consul** *or* **Consules.**	DES.	**Designatus.**
COSS.	**Consules.**		

* "Not until the 3d cent. after Christ was cons. used; in Diocletian's time began the custom of doubling the **s** (e. g., **conss.**) to denote the plural."

F.	**Filius.**	RESP.	**Respublica.**
III. V. R. C.	**Triumvir Reipublicae constituendae.**	R. P. P. R. Q.	**Respublica Populi Romani Quiritium.**
IMP.	**Imperator.**	S.	**Servus.**
LEG.	**Legatus.**	S. P. Q. R.	**Senatus Populusque Romanus.**
L. *or* LIB.	**Libertus, Liberta.**		
MAG.	**Magister.**	S. P. P. Q. R.	**Senatus Populus Plebesque Romana.**
N.	**Nepos.**		
P. C.	**Patres Conscripti.**	TR. MIL.	**Tribunus Militum.**
P. M.	**Pontifex Maximus.**	TR. PL.	**Tribunus Plebis.**
PR.	**Praetor, *or* Praetores.**	TR. POT.	**Tribuniciā Potestate.**
PROC. *or* PRO. COS.	**Pro consule, i. e., Proconsul.**	X. V.	**Decemvir.**
PRO. PR.	**Propraetor.**	X. VIR. STL. JUDIK.	**Decemvir stlitibus (i. e., litibus) judicandis.**
PROQ.	**Proquaestor.**		
P. R.	**Populus Romanus.**	XV. V. S. F.	**Quindecimviri sacris faciundis.**
Q.	**Quaestor.**		
QUIR.	**Quirites.**		

The name of the tribe to which a person belonged is sometimes added to the name in an abbreviated form: thus, **Pup.** for **Pupiniā**; **Qui.** or **Quir.** for **Quirinā**; **Esq.** for **Esquilinā**.

3. *Sepulchral.*

D. M. S.	**Dis Manibus Sacrum.**	H. S. E.	**Hic situs est.**
D. S. P.	**De sua pecunia.**	OB.	**Obiit.**
F. C.	**Faciendum curavit.**	P. C.	**Ponendum curavit.**
H. C. E.	**Hic conditus est.**	V.	**Vixit.**

4. *In voting on trials.*

A.	**Absolvo.**
C.	**Condemno.**
N. L.	**Non liquet.**

5. *In voting on laws.*

A. P.	**Antiquam (legem) probo.**
V. R.	**Uti rogas.**

6. *Epistolary.*

D.	**Data (est epistola).**
S. D.	**Salutem dicit.**
S. P. D.	**Salutem plurimam dicit.**
S.	**Salutem (dicit).**
S. V. B. E. E. V.	**Si vales, bene est: ego valeo.**
S. T. E. Q. V. B. E. E. Q. V.	**Si tu exercitusque valetis bene est: ego quoque valeo.**
S. V. G. V.	**Si vales gaudeo. Valeo.**

7. *In decrees of the Senate.*

D. E. R. I. C. De ea re ita censuerunt.
I. N. Intercessit nemo.
S. C. Senatus consultum.
Scr. arf. Scribendo arfuerunt (i. e., adfuerunt).
V. F. Verba fecit.

8. *Miscellaneous.*

A. U. C. Anno urbis conditae.
D. D. Dono dedit.
DD. Dederunt.
D. D. D. Dat, dicat, dedicat.
F. F. F. Felix, faustum, fortunatum.
HS (for IIS, i. e., duo + semis) sestertius.
ITER. Iterum.
L. Libertas.
M. P. Mille passuum.
Q. B. F. F. Q. S. Quod bonum felix faustumque sit.

9. *Modern Latin.*

A. C. Anno Christi.
A. D. Anno Domini.
A. M. Anno mundi.
a. C. n. ante Christum natum.
p. C. n. post Christum natum.
c. caput, capitis, etc. (*chapter*).
cet. cetera.
cf. confer *or* conferatur.
cir. circa (*about*).
Cod., Codd. Codex, Codĭces.
coll. collato *or* collatis.
C. P. P. C. collatis pecuniis ponendum curaverunt.
comp. *or* cp. compara *or* comparetur.
del. dele *or* deleàtur.
D. O. M. Deo optimo maximo.
ed., edd. editio, editiones.
e. g. exempli gratiā.
etc. *or* &c. et cetera.
h. e. hoc est.
I. C. Jesus Christus.
I. H. S. Jesus Hominum Salvator.
Ictus. Juris consultus.
ibid. ibidem.
id. idem.
i. e. id est.
i. q. id quod.
L. *or* Lib., Libb. Liber, Libri.
L. B. Lectori Benevolo.
l. c. loco citato.
l. l. loco laudato.
leg. lege *or* legatur.
L. S. Locus Sigilli.
MS., MSS. Manuscriptum (*or* Manuscriptus, sc. liber), Manuscripta, *or* manuscripti.
N. B. Nota bene.
N. F. Novum Foedus.
N. T. Novum Testamentum.
obs. observa *or* observetur.
P. S. Postscriptum.
q. v. quem (*or* quod) vide.
sc. scilicet.
sq., sqq. sequenti, sequentibus.
s. v. sub voce.
vid. vide.
viz. videlicet.
v. versus, versum, etc.
v. c. verbi·causā.
V. cel. Vir celeberrimus.
V. cl. Vir clarissimus.
V. F. Vetus Foedus.
V. T. Vetus Testamentum.

10. *Academic.*

A. B. **Artium Baccalaureus,** *Bachelor of Arts.*
A. M. **Artium Magister,** *Master of Arts.*
D. **Doctor.**
LL. B. **Legum Baccalaureus,** *Bachelor of Law.*
LL. D. **Legum Doctor,** *Doctor of Laws.*
LTT. D., *or* L. H. D., **Litterarum Humaniorum Doctor,** *Doctor of Literature.*
M. D. **Medicinae Doctor,** *Doctor of Medicine.*
Mus. D. **Musicae Doctor,** *Doctor of Music.*
Ph. D. **Philosophiae Doctor,** *Doctor of Philosophy.*
S. T. D. **Sanctae Theologiae Doctor,** *Doctor of Divinity.*
S. T. P. **Sanctae Theologiae Professor,** *Professor of Divinity.*
S. B. **Scientiae Baccalaureus,** *Bachelor of Science.*
S. D. **Scientiae Doctor,** *Doctor of Science.*

⁂ *Other Academical Degrees are represented by similar initials.*

INDEX

Abbreviations: w., *with;* compd., *compound* or *compounded.* The figures denote the sections.

27

THE END.

